70002-0298-00
06/2009

PowerLogic™ ION Enterprise™ 6.0

Power management software

User guide

Schneider Electric

Notices

This section describes the symbols used in this guide.

Danger

This alerts you to things that may cause serious injury to a person. Only qualified, properly trained personnel should perform these procedures.

Caution

This alerts you to things that may cause loss of data, damage to your computer or your device.

Note

A note provides you with additional information that you might want to consider.

Tip

This draws your attention to information that can help you perform a task more quickly or easily.

Documentation Conventions

This section describes the terms used to describe common methods or procedures used throughout this guide.

Clear	Place the mouse cursor over the check box, then click the mouse button[1] to remove the check mark from the box.
Click	Place the mouse cursor over a button or item, then press and release the mouse button.
Double-click	Place the mouse cursor over a button or item, then press and release the mouse button twice.
Drag	Hold down the mouse button while moving the mouse cursor to highlight the selection or move the selected item, then release the button.
Enter	Type the information, then press ENTER on the keyboard.
Hover	Move the mouse cursor over an object (i.e., a button) and pause over the object.
Point	Position the mouse cursor over an item such as a menu command.
Press	Press the specified key or combination of keys (for example, CTRL+ALT+DEL) on your keyboard.
Right-click	Place the mouse cursor over an item, then press and release the right mouse button.
Select	Place the mouse pointer over an option or check box, then click the mouse button to mark your selection.
Type	Type the information in the space or box. DO NOT press the ENTER key.

[1] "Mouse button" means the primary mouse button (left, by default), while "right mouse button" means the secondary mouse button. This configuration can be switched for accessibility.

Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction 13

- **ION Enterprise Software Components 14**
  - Monitoring Applications 14
  - Management Applications 14
  - Programming Applications 15
- **ION Enterprise Services 16**
- **ION Enterprise Databases 18**
- **Getting Started 19**
  - Starting a Component of ION Enterprise 19
  - Logging into a Component of ION Enterprise 19
  - Ending a Session 19
- **Additional Information 21**
- **Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays 22**
  - Adjusting the Display of a Window or Dialog Box 22
  - Grid Table Controls 23

Chapter 2 Management Console 27

- **The Management Console Interface 28**
- **Management Console Network Components 31**
- **Setting Up Your Network in Management Console 33**
  - Adding a Server 33
  - Setting Up Devices for Direct Serial Communications 34
  - Setting Up Devices for Ethernet Gateway Communications 34
  - Adding an Ethernet Device 35
  - Setting Up Devices for OPC Communications 35
  - Adding a Modem 36
  - Editing a Network Component 36
  - Deleting a Network Component 37
- **Accessing Meters with Advanced Security 38**
- **Configuring Connection Schedules 39**
- **System Log Events 41**
- **Setting Up Large Systems 43**
  - The Duplicate and Configure Interface 43
  - Creating Multiple Copies of a Device 45
  - Configuring Multiple Devices 48
  - Editing Duplicated Device Information 50

Chapter 3 Management Console Tools 53

- **Introduction** 54
- **User Manager** 55
  - Users 56
  - Groups 58
- **License Manager** 60
- **Reporting Configuration Manager** 61
- **Event Watcher Manager** 62
  - Creating a Template 63
  - Adding an Event Watcher 64
- **Diagnostics Viewer** 66
  - Starting Diagnostics Viewer 66
  - Service Diagnostics 67
  - Communications Diagnostics 68
  - Additional Commands 70
- **Device Upgrader** 71
  - Using Device Upgrader 71
  - Firmware Upgrade Error Codes 73
- **Remote Modem Setup** 74
  - Using Remote Modem Setup 74
- **Virtual Processor Setup** 75
  - Configuring the Virtual Processor's Modbus Service 75
  - Modifying the Global Parameters 79
- **Time of Use Editor** 80
  - Adding or Editing a Schedule 81
  - Adding or Editing a Sub-Schedule 82
  - Configuring Seasons 83
  - Adding Special Days 85
  - Configuring Day Groups 86
  - Configuring TOU Names and TOU Periods 87

Chapter 4 Vista 89

- **The Vista Interface** 90
- **Vista User Diagrams** 93
- **Monitoring Your System in Vista** 96
- **Viewing Real-Time Data** 98
  - Viewing Data with Numeric Objects 98
  - Viewing Data with Status Objects 99
- **Viewing Logged Data** 100
  - Using a Data Log Viewer 100

Using the Event and Global Event Log Viewers 102
Displaying the Global Event Log Viewer 103
Acknowledging Alarms 105

◆ **Controlling System Functions 107**

◆ **Plotting Logged Data 108**
Plotting Logged Data 108

◆ **The Log View Plotter Interface 109**
Viewing the Plot Display Tab 112
Viewing the Harmonics Analysis Tab 115
Viewing the Phasor Diagram Tab 116
Plotting Waveforms from Devices with High Sampling Rates 118
Adding Parameters to a Log View Plotter 119
Customizing the Log View Plotter Display 121
Overlaying Curves in the Log View Plotter 125

◆ **Creating and Customizing a User Diagram 127**

◆ **Editing a User Diagram 128**
The Enable Undo Option 128
Adding a Diagram Object to a User Diagram 128
Cutting, Copying, and Pasting a Diagram Object 129
Copying a Group of Diagram Objects to a Framework 130
Adjusting Diagram Object Layout and Size 131

◆ **Customizing a Diagram Object 133**
Caption Options 134
Text Options 134
Edit Text Options 135
Link Options 135
Query Server Options 136
Display Options 136
Action Options 142
Box Options 143
Annunciation Options 144
Alarming Options 144

◆ **Linking a Diagram Object to a Data Source 146**

◆ **Querying the Database 148**
Using the Query Options 148
Using the Query Wizard 150

◆ **Customizing a Diagram Window 155**
Default Font 155
Background Color 155
Configuring Window Properties 156

Chapter 5 WebReach 161

- **WebReach Support 162**
  - WebReach Installation After ION Enterprise is Installed 162
  - Preliminary Setup 163
  - Displaying Vista User Diagrams Online 163
  - Viewing Historical (Trend) Data 164
  - Viewing Meter Events 166
  - Adding a Global Event Log Viewer 166
  - Stale Data or Error Indicators 167
- **Advanced WebReach Configuration 168**
  - Custom Network Diagram Setup 168
  - WebReach Registry Settings 169
- **Troubleshooting 170**

Chapter 6 Web Reporter 171

- **Introduction 172**
  - Reporting Configuration 172
- **Web Reporter Interface 173**
- **Report Definitions 175**
  - Default Report Definitions 175
  - Creating a New Definition from a Default Report Definition 179
- **Generating and Viewing a Report 180**
  - Report Ownership and Access 180
  - Entering Report Inputs 180
  - Saving a Report with its Inputs Defined 184
  - Generating a Report 184
  - Viewing a Report 184
  - Printing a Report 185
  - Saving a Report 185
  - Exporting a Report 186
- **Report Administration 187**
  - Managing a Report 187
  - Sharing a Report 187
  - Creating Report Subscriptions 188
- **Installing a Report Definition or a Report Pack 191**
- **Custom Report Definitions 192**
- **Running the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service Manually 193**

Chapter 7 Designer 195

◆ Getting Started with Designer 196

◆ Node Diagrams and the Designer Interface 197
The Designer Interface 197
The Node Diagram 198
Display Mode versus Edit Mode 200
Designer Shortcuts 200
Designer Icons 201
Designer Windows 206

◆ ION Module Overview 207

◆ Using ION Modules 209
Adding a New ION Module 210
Deleting or Cutting an ION Module 211
Viewing a Node or Module as Text 213
Creating a Shortcut to an ION Module 214
Adding a Text Box to a Node Diagram 215

◆ Linking ION Modules 217
Linking ION Modules Graphically 217
Linking ION Modules on the Same Node 218
Linking ION Modules Across Different Nodes 219
Linking ION Modules Using the ION Tree 220
Deleting Links 222

◆ Configuring ION Modules 224

◆ Copying and Pasting ION Modules 230

◆ Viewing Output Registers, Setup Registers, and Inputs 239
Viewing Output Register Information 239
Viewing Setup Register Information 240
Viewing Input Information 240

◆ Time of Use (TOU) Program Management 241
Advanced TOU Schedule Configuration 241

◆ Virtual Processor Service 244
Using the Virtual Processor 244
Distributed Control 245
Modbus Communications 248
Common Virtual Processor Applications 250
Setting Global Parameters 252

Chapter 8 Database Manager 255

◆ Database Manager Interface 256

◆ Common Database Management Procedures 258
Detaching then Re-attaching Databases 258

Attaching a Database Using Database Manager 258
Restoring an ION Database from a Backup 259

◆ **Manual Tasks 260**
Alarm Configuration 260
Archive 261
Attach 262
Backup 262
Defragment 262
Detach 262
Export Registry Setting 263
Modify Login 263
New ION Databases 264
Restore 264
SQL Editor 265
Trim 265
Update Statistics 266
Upgrade Database 266

◆ **Scheduled Jobs 267**
Scheduled Archive 268
Scheduled Maintenance 270
Scheduled Trim 270
Scheduled Backup 271

◆ **Optimizing Database Query Time 273**

◆ **Log Inserter 274**

◆ **Accessing the ION Database with 3rd-Party Applications 275**

Chapter 9 Modbus Device Importer 277

◆ **Introduction 278**

◆ **ION Object Descriptions 281**
Managers 281
Modules 281
Registers 281

◆ **Main Console Screen 283**

◆ **Main Toolbar 284**
File Menu 284
Edit Menu 284
View Menu 286
Tools Menu 287
Settings Menu 290
Help Menu 290
Configure Logging and Calculation Button 290

◆ **Editing a Register 291**
Register Properties Defined 291

◆ **Shortcut Keys** **296**
General Key Shortcuts 296
Register Quick Edit Mode 296
ION Map Information Pane 297
Modbus Register Information Pane 298

◆ **Additional Information** **299**
Data Formats 299

◆ **Configuring Logging and Calculation** **301**
Screen Overview 301
Configuring Register Logging 302
Configuring Low, High and Mean Calculation and Logging 303
Configuring Stale Data Settings 303
Configuring Downstream Device Functionality 304
Saving and Exiting 305

Chapter 10 ION Alert Monitor 307

◆ **ION Alert Monitor** **308**
Setting Up the ION Alert Monitor 309
Starting the ION Alert Monitor 312

Chapter 11 Downstream Device Assistant 313

◆ **Detecting Downstream Devices** **314**

◆ **Downstream Device Assistant Basics** **315**
Starting the Downstream Device Assistant 315
Basic View versus Advanced View 315
Displaying Physical Sources 318
Sorting Data 318
Downstream Device Assistant Options 318

◆ **Downstream Device Assistant Functions** **321**
Renaming the Assigned Source 321
Cancelling Changes 322
Changing the Measurement Mapping 322
Adding a New Downstream Device Mapping 322
Updating the Historical Data at a Later Time 323
Activity Log 323

◆ **Downstream Device Assistant Commands** **324**

Appendix A Reporter 325

◆ **Introduction** **326**

◆ **Creating a Report** **327**
Generating a Report 330
Modifying the Finished Report 330

◆ **Types of Default Reports** **331**
Creating a Report Without a Template 335
◆ **Automatic Report Generation** **336**
◆ **Using Reporter on Secondary Server or Client** **337**
◆ **Troubleshooting** **338**

Chapter 1

Introduction

PowerLogic™ ION Enterprise™ software is a complete power management solution for energy suppliers and consumers. It allows you to manage energy information from metering and control devices installed in your facility or other remote locations. ION Enterprise offers control capabilities and comprehensive power quality and reliability analysis to help you reduce energy-related costs.

ION Enterprise supports multiple communications standards and protocols available on various intelligent metering devices. You can also connect to existing power monitoring systems through industry standard protocols such as Modbus, OPC, DNP and XML.

ION Enterprise uses Microsoft SQL Server for efficient and secure data management. You can install the SQL Server 2005 Express Edition that comes with ION Enterprise (4 GB maximum database size) or, for larger database needs, you can use an existing SQL Server instance (Standard edition or better) to host the ION Enterprise databases.

In This Section

- "ION Enterprise Software Components" on page 14
- "ION Enterprise Services" on page 16
- "ION Enterprise Databases" on page 18
- "Starting a Component of ION Enterprise" on page 19
- "Logging into a Component of ION Enterprise" on page 19
- "Ending a Session" on page 19
- "Additional Information" on page 21
- "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Enterprise Software Components

This section outlines the ION Enterprise software components, and how they are used to build, monitor, maintain and customize your ION Enterprise system.

Monitoring Applications

These ION Enterprise programs are most commonly used in day-to-day power management tasks:

Vista

The "Vista" component of ION Enterprise displays graphical representations of your power monitoring system. Vista displays real-time and historical information, visual objects that indicate the current status of your system, and interactive objects that you can use to perform certain actions such as acknowledging alarms.

NOTE

In this document, "Vista" refers to the Vista component of ION Enterprise. The Microsoft Windows Vista operating system is referred to as "Windows Vista".

WebReach

The "WebReach" component of ION Enterprise displays Vista user diagrams in a web browser.

Web Reporter

The "Web Reporter" component of ION Enterprise is the tool you use to create and generate common energy, demand or power quality reports.

Management Applications

The following ION Enterprise programs help you set up and maintain your power management system.

Management Console

Use the "Management Console" component of ION Enterprise to add and configure network components such as servers, sites (communication links) and devices. Management Console also provides access to system and database applications, and utilities to manage items such as user accounts and software licenses. These are described in the following topics:

- "Database Manager" on page 255
- "User Manager" on page 55

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- "License Manager" on page 60
- "Reporting Configuration Manager" on page 61
- "Event Watcher Manager" on page 62
- "Designer" on page 195
- "Diagnostics Viewer" on page 66
- "Device Upgrader" on page 71
- "Remote Modem Setup" on page 74
- "Virtual Processor Setup" on page 75
- "Modbus Device Importer" on page 277
- "Time of Use Editor" on page 80

Optional Components

The following optional components are also available if they have been ordered and then activated via License Manager:

OPC Server Assistant

This component checks the network for new sources of common or typical measurements to be exposed to the OPC Server. This is only available with the optional OPC Server license.

PQDIF Exporter

This component lets you export data to Power Quality Data Interchange Format (PQDIF) and set scheduled exports with notification. This is only available with the optional PQDIF Exporter license.

Programming Applications

These ION Enterprise applications help you customize elements in your system and configure third-party devices so the system can recognize and utilize them:

Designer

Use the "Designer" component of ION Enterprise to perform a wide range of functions, from configuring setup registers of ION devices on your network to creating complex frameworks using a combination of ION modules from hardware or software nodes.

Modbus Device Importer

Use the "Modbus Device Importer" component of ION Enterprise to integrate third-party Modbus devices into your ION Enterprise network.

Large System Setup Using Management Console

Use the Duplicate and Configure dialog box to set up large systems efficiently. See "Setting Up Large Systems" on page 43 for more information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Enterprise Services

Many of ION Enterprise's core components run as Windows Services. This allows your servers to continue monitoring your power management system when no users are logged on. In the event of a power outage, your system automatically resumes power monitoring when the power is restored. The table below outlines the ION Enterprise Services and whether the service is configured to start automatically or manually, by default.

NOTE

ION Network Router Service has many dependent ION Enterprise services. For example, the Virtual Processor, ION Log Inserter Service, ION Site Service, and DDE services cannot start and operate without it running.

Service Name	Description	Manual/ Automatic
ION Alert Monitor	Checks the ION Enterprise computer's communications ports continuously for high priority events occurring at remote modem sites. When this happens, Alert Monitor initiates a communications connection to the remote modem site.	Manual
ION Component Identifier Service	Locates local and remote ION Enterprise components.	Manual
ION Connection Management Service	Determines the connection status of sites and devices in the ION Enterprise system, and handles allocation of resources such as modems. This service manages the state of site and device connectivity for the ION Enterprise system. In order to establish the most appropriate state for the system, each connection and disconnection request is evaluated against the overall state of the system and availability of communications channels.	Automatic
ION DDE Service[1]	Provides Dynamic Data Exchange (DDE) connectivity between devices and DDE compatible applications, such as Microsoft Excel.	Disabled
ION Event Watcher Service	Monitors system events for conditions specified in Event Watcher Manager (see "Event Watcher Manager" on page 62).	Automatic
ION Log Inserter Service	Provides historical data collection and storage for your power-monitoring system. See "Log Inserter" on page 274.	Automatic
ION Network Router Service	Routes all information between ION Enterprise software components, such as client workstations and the Log Inserter. The service dynamically detects changes to the network configuration, including the addition of new servers; it can also recognize new software nodes, such as Vista, that are added to an existing server.	Automatic
ION OPC Data Access Server	Manages and is responsible for supplying OPC data to client applications.	Manual
ION Power Quality Aggregation Service	Periodically processes and aggregates new Power Quality event data.	Automatic
ION PQDIF Exporter Service	Translates data from ION Enterprise databases to PQDIF file format and manages scheduled PQDIF exports.	Manual
ION Query Service	Provides historical data retrieval for your power-monitoring system. See "Linking a Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer" on page 147 for more information regarding this service.	Automatic
ION Real Time Data Service	Manages and provides access to real time data from the power management system.	Automatic
ION Report Subscription Service	This service manages Web Reporter report subscriptions.	Automatic

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Service Name	Description	Manual/ Automatic
ION Site Service	Manages communication links to and from ION Enterprise. ION Site Service is responsible for handling packet communications to system devices and controlling direct device communications. The service reacts to changes in network configuration: for example, often changes to certain channels, gates, ports, or device parameters can interrupt a connection. You can add, delete, or change channels, gates, ports, and devices without restarting the ION Site Service, ION Network Router Service, and ION Connection Management Service.	Automatic
ION Virtual Processor Service	Provides coordinated data collection, data processing, and control functions for groups of meters. For more information on the Virtual Processor and its functionality, see "Virtual Processor Setup" on page 75.	Automatic
ION XML Subscription Service	Manages subscriptions to XML data for Vista user diagrams. This service is used only by WebReach. When you open a Vista user diagram in a web browser, the ION XML Subscription Service creates a subscription and delivers the real-time data in XML format.	Automatic
ION XML Subscription Store Service	Stores XML data subscriptions for the power monitoring devices on the network. This service is used only by WebReach.	Automatic

[1] This service may not be available on all operating systems.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Enterprise Databases

The ION Enterprise databases are typically installed on the Primary Server and run in the background of your ION Enterprise system. To connect to these databases, ION Enterprise uses the SQL Server instance you created when you installed ION Enterprise or configured SQL Server.

For information on managing these databases in ION Enterprise, see "Database Manager" on page 255.

Microsoft SQL Server Database

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Express Edition ("SQL Server Express") comes with ION Enterprise by default. SQL Server is the database engine that manages the ION Enterprise databases: the ION database (ION_Data), the Network Configuration database (ION_Network), and the System Events database (ION_SystemLog). To connect to the databases, ION Enterprise uses a SQL Server instance called **ION**, which is created when ION Enterprise is installed, unless a pre-existing instance is specified when ION Enterprise is installed.

The Network Configuration Database

The Network Configuration database ("ION_Network") stores information about your network topology — the network connections, computers and every connected device, including dialout modems. This information is used by the communications services (e.g., ION Network Router Service, ION Site Service) and other software components to manage data and control requests to and from the devices and the other ION Enterprise components (i.e., Vista, Designer).

The System Events Database

The System Events database ("ION_SystemLog") stores data about events that occur during the operation of ION Enterprise components. For example, the event details about the communication service's interactions with devices, details about controls initiated through Vista, and general or alarm level events that occur in the Virtual Processor are all inserted into the System Events database. These can then be viewed when you click the System Log Events icon in Management Console or through access to the ION_Data database using Vista (Event Log Viewer).

ION_SystemLog is not backed up. Some contents of the System Log — System Events with a priority of **192** or greater — are automatically inserted into the ION_Data database on a regular basis and can be viewed in Vista.

The ION Database

The ION database ("ION_Data") contains all the information collected from devices that have the ability to record data and from ION Enterprise components. This database uses the ION Log Inserter Service to gather data from all of the available sources, and then makes the data available to ION Enterprise components like Vista (through the ION Query Service) or Web Reporter (through direct database queries).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Getting Started

This section describes how to start, log on to and exit most components of ION Enterprise.

Starting a Component of ION Enterprise

Use one of the following methods to start the main components of ION Enterprise (i.e., Management Console, Vista or Web Reporter):

- Open the ION Enterprise Tools folder on your desktop and double-click the icon of the program you want to start.
- Double-click the ION Enterprise icon to open the ION Enterprise Taskpad, then click on one of the links.
- Click **Start > Programs > Schneider Electric > ION Enterprise Tools** and select the program you want to start or click **Start > Programs > ION Enterprise** to launch the ION Enterprise Taskpad.

Logging into a Component of ION Enterprise

Most ION Enterprise programs require you to log in before you can access them.

At the logon prompt, type your user name and password in the appropriate box, then click **OK**. Some actions are restricted to certain users or groups, depending on how their login permissions were set up. See "User Manager" on page 55 for details. If you do not have a user name and password, log on in View Only mode for limited access.

The default user name is "guest". The default password is "0" (zero). The password field is case-sensitive. For information on setting up user accounts and changing passwords, see "User Manager" on page 55.

After you log on, the program interface appears.

Ending a Session

There are two ways to end a session in a component of ION Enterprise:

- **Log off** if you want to end the current user session but keep the program running, or
- **Exit** if you want to close the program completely.

Some components offer both options; some only offer the Exit option.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Logging Off

1. Select **File > Logoff**.

   A message appears, prompting you to confirm your intention to log off.

2. Click **Yes** to log off or **No** to return to the program.

   If you attempt to log off without saving your work, the program prompts you to save your changes. Click **Yes** to save your changes, **No** to discard them, or **Cancel** to return to the program.

   After you log off, the ION Enterprise Logon screen appears.

Exiting

1. Select **File > Exit**.

   A message appears, prompting you to confirm your intention to exit the application.

2. Click **Yes** to exit or **No** to return to the program.

   If you attempt to exit without saving your work, the program prompts you to save your changes. Click **Yes** to save your changes, **No** to discard them, or **Cancel** to return to the program.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Additional Information

For more information about ION Enterprise components, using devices with ION Enterprise, and ION architecture, see the following documents:

- *ION Enterprise 6.0 Commissioning Guide*
- *ION Enterprise 6.0 System Requirements*
- *Additional Device Support in ION Enterprise 6.0*
- *OPC Server Assistant*
- *PQDIF Exporter*
- *Multilingual Support in ION Enterprise 6.0*
- *ION System Security*
- *Troubleshooting Serial Communications in PowerLogic ION Meters*
- *Troubleshooting Meter Wiring*
- *Upgrading ION Device Firmware*
- *ION Reference*

Visit www.powerlogic.com for more information and to obtain documentation.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays

The following sections describe ways to customize and navigate display windows, dialog boxes and tables in components of ION Enterprise.

Navigating Tree Structures

Information in ION Enterprise is often displayed in a tree. Click "+" to expand items in the tree or "-" to collapse them.

Selecting Multiple Items in Tables, Tree Structures, Diagrams and Folder Structures

To select adjacent items, select the first item, hold down the SHIFT key then click the last item.

To select non-adjacent items, hold down the CTRL key then click to select the items.

To select adjacent items in Vista or Designer diagrams, drag a selection box around the items. All items in the box are selected.

Adjusting the Display of a Window or Dialog Box

The following sections describe how to resize and hide or reveal panes.

Resizing Panes

To resize panes in a window, point the mouse at the border where the two sections meet. When the resize handle appears, drag to move the border.

Dock (Pin) or Hide (Unpin) Pane

Some interfaces in ION Enterprise have panes that can be hidden (visible temporarily) or docked (visible all the time).

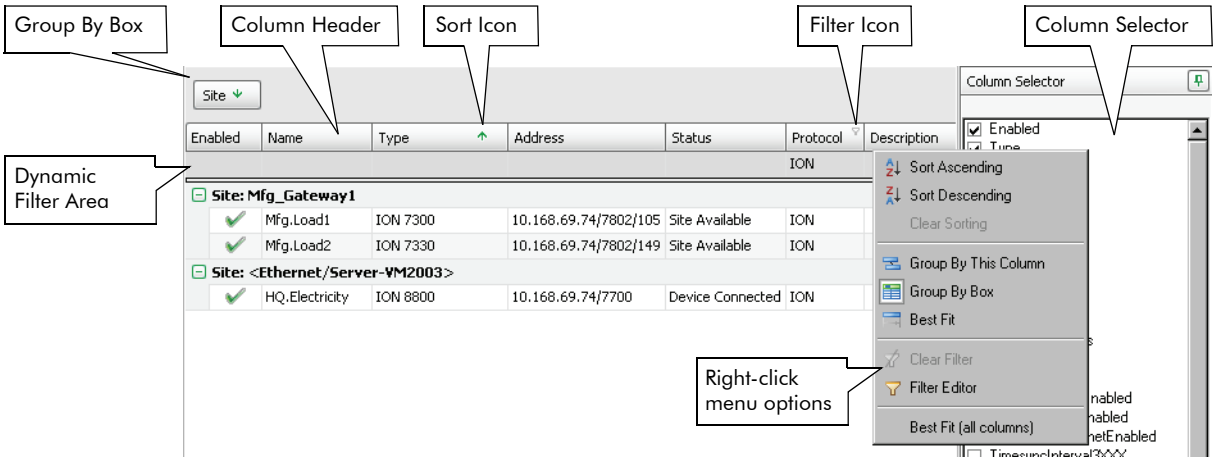
To hide or dock a pane, click the Pin/Unpin button on the pane. When a pane is hidden, it is minimized to a button at the edge of the workspace.

To temporarily show a hidden pane, hover the mouse over the button for that pane. Move the mouse away to hide the pane again.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Grid Table Controls

Certain windows and utilities in ION Enterprise display information in "grid" tables. These tables have unique table and information display commands.



Select Columns/Column Selector

Some tables allow you to select which columns to include in the table.

1. In Management Console, hover over the column selector tab on the right side of the display window. In other interfaces, click the "Select Columns" link.
2. Select the boxes for the columns you want to include in the table. Clear the boxes for the columns you do not want to include in the table.

Adjust Column Width

To change the width of a column, point the mouse to the right edge of the column header. When the resize handle (double-arrow pointer) appears, click and drag to adjust the width. To adjust the width for best fit, point to the right edge of the column header, then double-click when the resize handle appears.

Best Fit

To adjust a column width to the best fit with the least amount of white space:

- For one column, right-click a column header and select **Best Fit**.
- For all columns, right-click on the column title area and select **Best Fit (all columns)**.

Arrange Columns

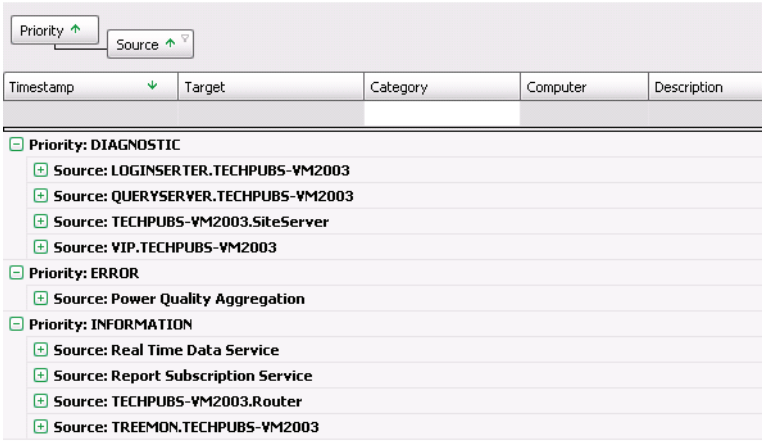
To change the order of the columns, drag a column header to the left or right of its original position.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Group by Column

To group data according to the contents of a particular column, drag the column header to the area above it (marked "Drag a column header here to group by that column"). To expand or collapse the groups, click the "**+**" or "**-**" button. To expand or collapse all groups, right-click the column header in the group by box and select **Full Expand** or **Full Collapse**, respectively.

You can also group by multiple columns in a specific order, with sorting and filtering applied.



To ungroup, drag the column header back to its original position (or right-click the column header and select **Ungroup**).

To show or hide the Group By box, right-click the column header and select or clear Group By Box.

Sorting Data in a Column

Click a column header to sort table rows according to data in that column. You can sort in ascending or descending order (indicated by an up or down arrow, respectively). To cancel sorting and return the column to its default state, right-click the column and select **Clear Sorting**.

Filtering Data in a Column

The following sections describe the available filtering options.

Using the Simple Column Filter

When the mouse is positioned over a column header, the Filter icon appears in the top right corner of the header. Click it to select one of the listed filter conditions and apply it to the data in that column. Select **(Custom)** to apply one or two logic conditions to filter the data. To cancel filtering and return the column to its default state, right-click the column and select **Clear Filter**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using the Dynamic Column Filter

Some tables have a row between the column header and the table data. This is the dynamic filter area.

To use the dynamic filter area, start typing the entry you want to filter on in the space above the applicable column. You can use an asterisk (*) at the beginning of the filter as a wildcard. Once you achieve the filter results you want, you can stop typing. For example, to filter out "DST" from "disturbance" in System Log Events, you only need to type "di".

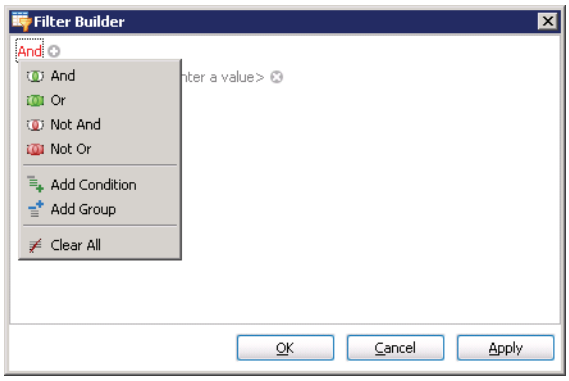
Using the Filter Builder

The Filter Builder is an advanced data filtering tool. Use it to create filters with multiple conditions across multiple columns. To use the Filter Builder:

1. Right-click a column header and select **Filter Editor**. The **Filter Builder** dialog box appears.
2. Specify the filter conditions.

   The elements of the filter builder are: <Column Header> <Condition> <Value>

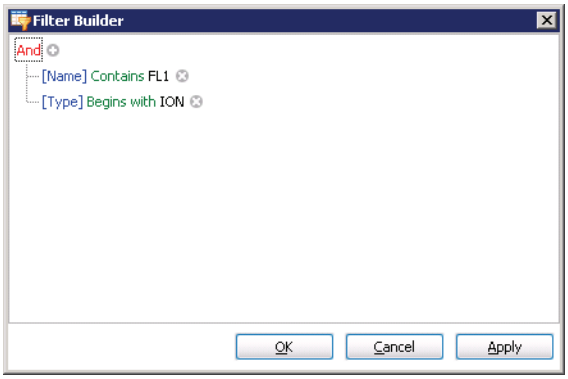
   Click an element to display the options available, then select the option you want to use.



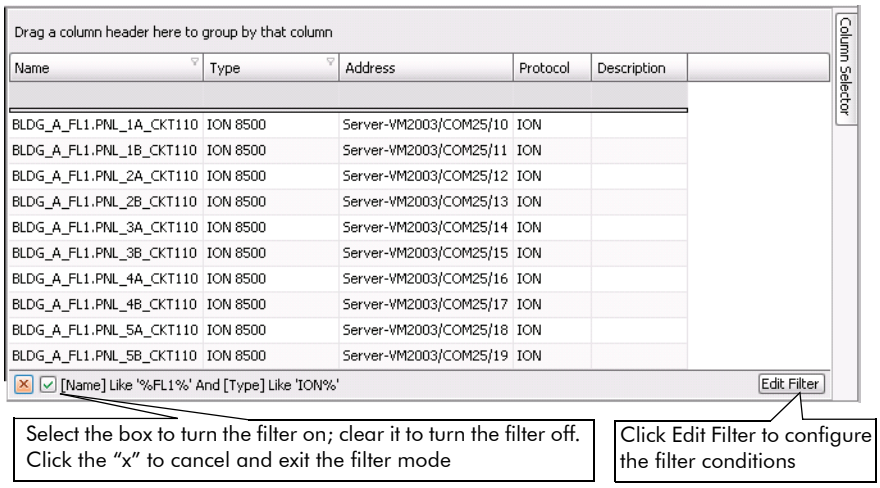
3. Select the <Column Header> and the <Condition> you want to apply. Type the <Value> to test for.
4. To add another filter, click the "**+**" button on the top.
5. Select a logic to apply to this new filter (in relationship to the current filter).
6. Repeat step 3.
7. To remove a filter, click the delete ("**x**") button beside it.

In the following example, the filter finds all devices whose names contain "FL1" **and** whose types begin with "ION".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



The rows returned are as follows:


Drag a column header here to group by that column
Name
Type
Address
Protocol
Description
Column Selector
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_1A_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/10 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_1B_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/11 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_2A_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/12 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_2B_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/13 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_3A_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/14 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_3B_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/15 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_4A_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/16 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_4B_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/17 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_5A_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/18 ION
BLDG_A_FL1.PNL_5B_CKT110 ION 8500 Server-VM2003/COM25/19 ION
[Name] Like '%FL1%' And [Type] Like 'ION%'
Edit Filter
Select the box to turn the filter on; clear it to turn the filter off. Click the "x" to cancel and exit the filter mode
Click Edit Filter to configure the filter conditions

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter 2

Management Console

Use Management Console to add, remove or configure components, such as metering devices, in your ION Enterprise power management system. You can set up different types of sites (communication links such as Ethernet or serial), and set up connection schedules for these sites.

In addition, the Management Console **Tools** menu provides access to device and system configuration, maintenance and programming tools. See "Management Console Tools" on page 53 for details.

⚠ CAUTION

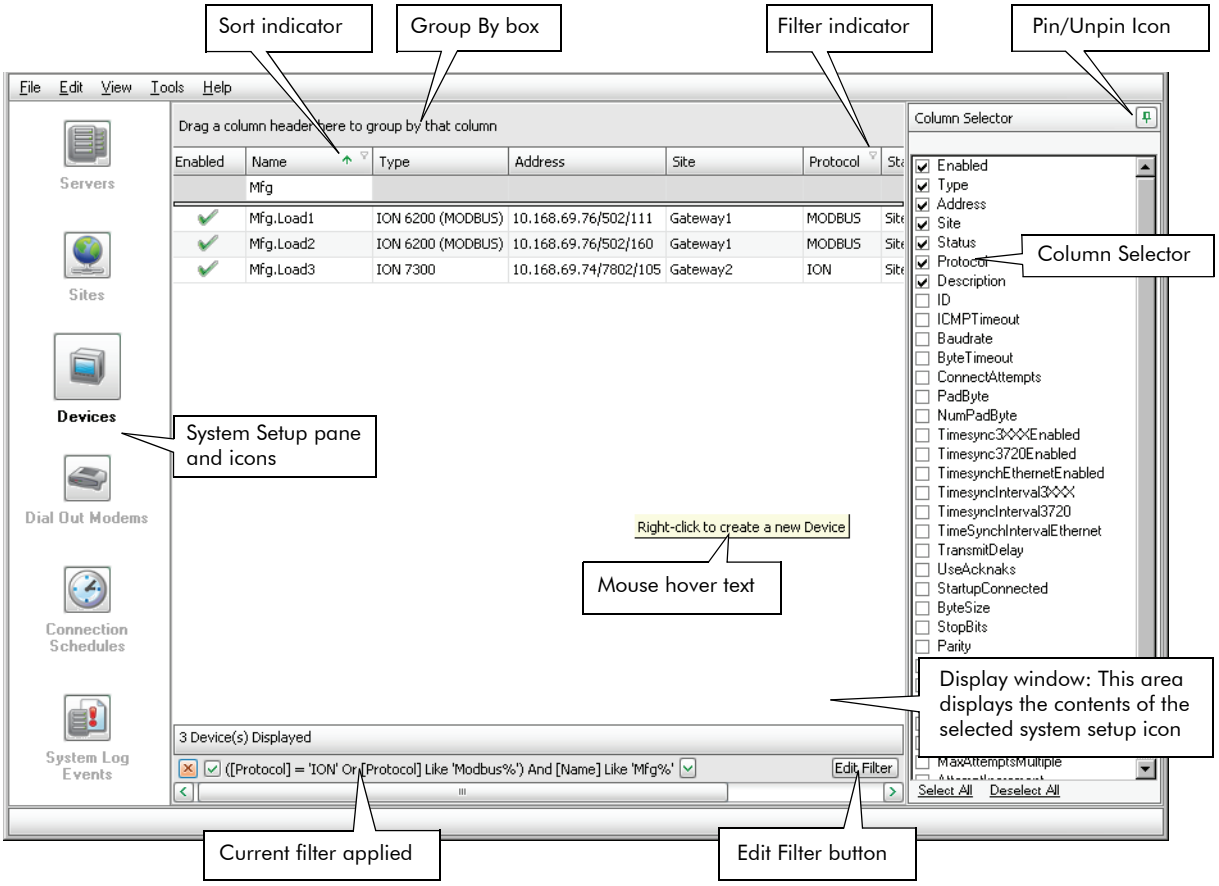
Unauthorized changes to network configuration can result in an unstable or unusable network, therefore only users with Operator- or Supervisor-level access can make changes in Management Console.

In This Section

- "The Management Console Interface" on page 28
- "Management Console Network Components" on page 31
- "Setting Up Your Network in Management Console" on page 33
- "Accessing Meters with Advanced Security" on page 38
- "Configuring Connection Schedules" on page 39
- "System Log Events" on page 41
- "Setting Up Large Systems" on page 43

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Management Console Interface



Window Title

The window title displays the name of the software program and the current user.

System Setup Pane

The icons in the System Setup pane represent categories of items you can add, remove, set up, and view. Click an icon to go to the associated display window.

Display Window

The Display window shows the contents of the item currently selected in the System Setup pane.

Refresh

To manually refresh Management Console and reload its contents, select **View > Refresh** (or press F5).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Options

Select **Tools > Options** to open the Options dialog box. Use this dialog box to change display settings for the System Log Events display window.

Highlighting

Highlighting controls how Error events are displayed in the System Log Events display window. Select or clear the Enable Highlighting check box to turn highlighting on or off. Click **Set Highlight Color** to change the highlight color for Critical or Error events in the System Log Events display window.

Events

The Events section of the dialog box lets you control how many records appear in the System Log Events display window and how date and time are displayed.

Customizing the Management Console Interface

You can customize what is displayed in the Management Console interface and the tables within the display windows:

- Select which columns appear in tables.
- Filter, sort and group data in tables.

For instructions on using these features, see "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22.

Display Window Shortcut Menus

To access shortcut menus in the Display Window, first click the icon of the System Setup item you are interested in. Then right-click in the display window area or on a network component to display the shortcut menu. The menu items available vary depending on the network component selected.

- **New** displays the options available for adding new network items.
- **Duplicate** creates one or more copies of a selected item.

NOTE

For the **Duplicate** command, each one of the duplicates needs to be opened individually in order to configure them. **Duplicate and Configure** allows you to create and configure multiple devices at the same time.

- **Duplicate and Configure** lets you perform batch cloning of devices. When multiple devices are selected, this right-click shortcut becomes **Configure Selected Devices** which lets you perform setup functions such as batch renaming of devices.
- **Delete** removes the selected items.
- **Connect** and **Disconnect** let you manually connect to or disconnect from the selected site.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

You cannot connect or disconnect an individual serial device in a site; you can only connect or disconnect the site for that serial device.

- **Connect Ethernet** and **Disconnect Ethernet** let you manually connect to or disconnect from the selected Ethernet device.
- **Security** accesses the Meter Security Settings dialog box. This is used by the software to gain access to security-enabled devices (e.g., ION8600 or ION7650); it is only available from the shortcut menu for the Devices display pane.
- **Configure <Network Component>** opens the <Network Component> Configuration dialog box (where <network component> is the component selected). Use this dialog box to make changes to the properties for the selected network component.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Management Console Network Components

This section describes the different components in Management Console: Servers, Sites, Devices, Dial-Out Modems, Connection Schedules, and System Log Events.

See "Setting Up Your Network in Management Console" on page 33 for information on adding these components to your network.

Servers

A server is a computer in the ION Enterprise system that runs administrative software to control access to the network and its resources, such as metering devices.

Sites

A site is a group of devices in the ION Enterprise system that share a common communications link. A site can be a direct site, a modem site, an Ethernet gateway site, or an OPC site.

Direct Site

In a direct site, serial communications occur between a computer and one or more meters. The standards most commonly used on computers are RS-232 (for connecting one device) and RS-485 (for connecting a loop of up to 32 devices). When connecting to more than one serial device, use an RS-232 to RS-485 converter.

Modem Site

In a modem site, communications occur between a remote modem (at the Modem Site) and a local modem (on the server).

NOTE

Remote sites that use radio modems or leased-line modems are configured as Direct (Serial) Sites, not as Modem Sites.

Modem sites can include traditional hardware modems (those that are configured and controlled by ION Enterprise) or WinModems (Windows modems). If multiple modems are set up in the modem site, ION Enterprise selects the first available modem to establish communications (this is referred to as "modem pooling").

Ethernet Gateway Site

An Ethernet gateway site (for example, EtherGate or Modbus gateway) consists of an RS-485 chain of devices that communicates with an Ethernet network via an Ethernet device. The Ethernet device acts as a gateway that transfers data between an Ethernet network and the devices connected to it via RS-485. The gateway device converts RS-232/RS-485 communications to and from Ethernet.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

OPC Site

An OPC site consists of an OPC server that communicates with OPC-compliant devices on the network.

Devices

A device is a meter or other component that communicates and gathers data, and is installed on a network.

Serial Devices

Serial devices belong to direct sites, modem sites, or Ethernet gateway sites — they communicate through a modem, RS-232, RS-485, or Ethernet-to-Serial gateway connection. You must have the appropriate sites configured first before you can add serial devices.

Ethernet Devices

Ethernet devices are those that are directly connected to the network via Ethernet. You can manually connect or disconnect your Ethernet device through the Management Console.

OPC Devices

OPC devices provide data in OPC format. You must have an OPC site configured to add an OPC device.

Dial-Out Modems

A dial-out modem is one that a server computer uses to communicate with a remote modem at a modem site. The modem implemented can be a traditional hardware-based modem or it can be a software-based modem that uses the computer's processor to emulate a traditional hardware-based modem.

When a modem site needs to establish communications, it selects a modem from the list of modems configured in the modem site. You can add hardware modems or WinModems to the modem list.

NOTE

A WinModem is a modem that is directly controlled by the computer's operating system.

Connection Schedules

Connection schedules are programmed routines for a server to regularly connect to and disconnect from sites (and their associated devices) and Ethernet devices. See "Configuring Connection Schedules" on page 39 for more information.

System Log Events

System Log Events lists events for the network. You can select what timeframe and components you want to view events for. See "System Log Events" on page 41 for more information.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Setting Up Your Network in Management Console

The Primary Server contains all the ION Enterprise programs and it controls the overall operation of your energy management system. The primary server is displayed on the Server screen when you first start Management Console.

To start building your system, add and configure your sites and devices.

Adding Network Components

For details on adding various components, see the following sections.

Follow the procedure below to add a new network component:

1. In the System Setup pane, select the icon for the type of item that you want to add (i.e., Site, Device, or Dial Out Modem).
2. Right-click in the display window, select **New**, and then select the specific type of network component from the shortcut menu. The options differ depending on which system setup icon you selected.

   The **Configuration** dialog box appears.
3. Use the fields and drop-down menus to configure properties. Mandatory items are highlighted in red. To configure advanced properties, right-click in the dialog box and select **Advanced Properties**. For more shortcut menu options, see "Configuration Dialog Box Shortcut Menus", below.
4. Click **OK** to add the component.

Configuration Dialog Box Shortcut Menus

Right-click the Configuration dialog box to access the following shortcut menu options:

- **Property Details**: This opens a window that contains information on the selected property, including minimum and maximum allowable values, if applicable.
- **Advanced Properties**: This exposes all the property fields that are hidden in the default (basic) view.
- **Reset All To Default**: Resets all properties to their original values.

Adding a Server

Click the Servers icon, right-click in the display window and select **New > Computer**. Fill in the mandatory **Name** field.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Setting Up Devices for Direct Serial Communications

To set up devices for RS-232 or RS-485 communications on a direct serial loop, first add a direct site in Management Console and specify a serial communications port on the computer.

Step1: Adding a Direct Site

Click the Sites icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > Direct Site**. Fill in the **Name** and **Serial Port** fields. Configure the other fields as you require.

Step 2: Adding a Device to the Direct Site

Click the Devices icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > Serial Device on Direct Site**. Fill in these fields:

- **Group**: Type a name for the group or select an existing group from the list.
- **Name**: Type the name you want to give the device.
- **Device Type**: Select the type of the device.
- **Unit ID**: Type the Unit ID of the device; the range is 1-9999 for ION devices or 1-247 for Modbus RTU devices.
- **Site**: Select the direct site you previously set up.

Configure the other fields as you require.

Setting Up Devices for Ethernet Gateway Communications

To set up devices for Ethernet gateway communications, first add and configure an Ethernet gateway site. Ethernet gateways that can be used include those that are simple Ethernet-to-Serial converters, or any gateway or data concentrator that provides ModbusTCP communications.

Step 1: Adding an Ethernet Gateway Site

Click the Sites icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > Ethernet Gateway Site**.

Fill in the **Name**, **TCP/IP Address** and **TCP/IP Port** fields. The TCP/IP Port identifies which communications port is used to connect to the serial devices. The port you use depends on the type of Ethernet gateway you want to set up (i.e., use 7801 for an EtherGate gateway via COM1 or use port 502 for a Modbus gateway).

Configure the other fields as you require.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Step 2: Adding a Device to the Ethernet Gateway Site

Click the Devices icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > Serial Device on Ethernet Gateway Site**. Fill in these fields:

- **Group**: Type a name for the group or select an existing group from the list.
- **Name**: Type the name you want to give the device.
- **Device Type**: Select the type of device.
- **Unit ID**: Type the Unit ID of the device; the range is 1-9999 for ION devices or 1-247 for Modbus devices.
- **Site**: Select the Ethernet gateway site you previously set up.

Configure the other fields as you require.

Adding an Ethernet Device

Click the Devices icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > Ethernet Device**. Fill in the **Group**, **Name**, **Device Type** and **TCP/IP Address** fields. Configure the other fields as you require.

NOTE

When you configure Ethernet or Ethernet gateway devices, you can specify either a hostname or an IP address in the TCP/IP Address field.

Setting Up Devices for OPC Communications

To set up devices for OPC communications, first add an OPC site.

Step 1: Adding an OPC Site

Click the Sites icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > OPC Site**. Fill in the **Name** and **Address** fields. Configure the other fields as you require.

Make sure you follow the correct syntax when typing in the address for the OPC site. Select the **Address** field to see an example address in the Property Description section (near the bottom of the **OPC Site Configuration** dialog box).

Step 2: Adding a Device to the OPC Site

NOTE

At least one OPC Device Type needs to be preconfigured before an OPC Device can be created in Management Console. Contact Technical Support for assistance.

Click the Devices icon. Right-click in the display window and select **New > OPC Device**. Fill in the **Group**, **Name**, **Device Type** and **Site** (select the OPC site you previously set up). Configure the other fields as you require.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Modem

1. Click the Dial-Out Modems icon, right-click in the display window and select **New**, then select either **Serial Modem** (hardware modem) or **WinModem** (Windows modem).
2. Fill in the values for the mandatory fields:
   - For **Serial modem**, select the Modem Type from the list. If your modem is not in this list, select "Generic ION Modem - Other". Select the **Serial Port** where your modem is connected.
   - For **WinModems**, select the Modem Name from the list.

   Configure the other fields as you require.
3. Click **OK**.

WinModem Installation Notes

Before you can use a WinModem, you must first install it on your computer (follow the instructions that came with the WinModem product). After you restart the computer, set up the WinModem:

1. In Microsoft Windows, click **Start > Settings > Control Panel**, then double-click **Phone and Modem Options**.
2. Click the Modems tab, select your WinModem, then click **Properties**.
3. Click the Advanced tab, then click **Change Default Preference**.
4. Set **Port speed** to match the baud rate that is used between the meter and the modem on the remote end of the connection (i.e., both modems must be set to the same baud rate).
5. Set **Flow Control** to "None".
6. Click **OK** to save your changes.

NOTE

You may need to restart your computer for the settings to take effect.

Editing a Network Component

1. Click the icon in the System Setup pane for the type of component you want to edit.
2. In the display window, right-click the network component you want to edit and select **Configure <Network Component>** (with <Network Component> being the type of component you want to edit).
3. Make the required changes. To display all configurable fields, right-click in the **Configuration** dialog box and select **Advanced Properties**.
4. Click **OK** when you are finished to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

If you rename a group or device in Management Console, you will not be able to access the data that is already stored in the database using the previous group or device name. New data will be added to the database using the new name.

Deleting a Network Component

1. Click the System Setup icon for the type of component you want to delete.
2. In the display window, right-click the network component you want to delete and select **Delete** (or select the item and press the DELETE key).
3. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion or **No** to cancel.

NOTE

When you delete a Site or a Server, all devices associated with it are also deleted.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Accessing Meters with Advanced Security

If you have a meter in your network with Advanced Security enabled, use Management Console to allow ION Enterprise Services to access the meter:

1. Right-click the device that has Advanced Security enabled and select **Security**. The **Meter Security Settings** dialog box appears.
2. From the Software Access dropdown list, select the user (configured on the meter using Designer or ION Setup) that has the access settings that you want to give ION Enterprise services and components to the device.
3. Click **Match Password** and type the password for that user in the Password field then re-type it in the Confirm Password field.
4. Select the check box if you want to allow the software to send secure time synchronization signals to the meter. Clear the check box if you do not want to send secure time synchronization signals to the device.
5. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Connection Schedules

You can schedule the times when the server connects to a site or Ethernet device.

Adding a Connection Schedule

Click the Connection Schedules icon, right-click in the display window, then select **New > Connection Schedule**. The **Scheduled Site Connection** dialog box appears. The following sections describe the available tabs and how to configure them.

General Settings Tab

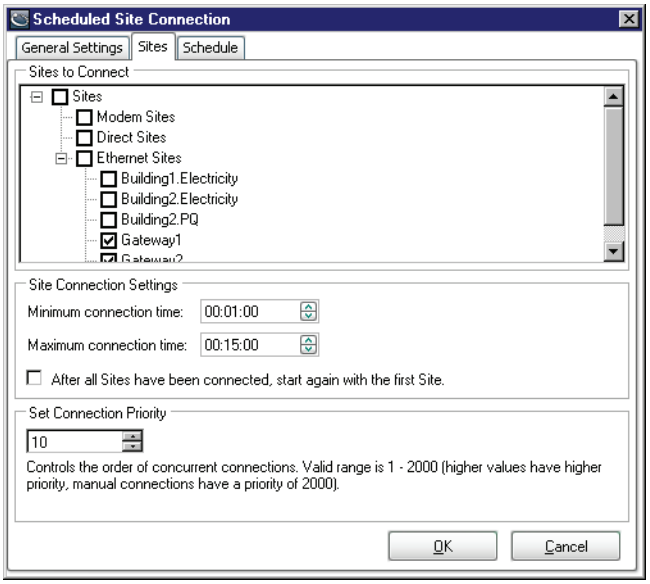
On the **General Settings** tab:

- Type the name of your connection schedule (for example "Daily Reading") in the Name field.
- Type a description of the connection schedule, if required.
- Make sure **Enabled** is selected if you want to enable the schedule.
- Select the date from which the schedule is valid.

Sites Tab

On the **Sites** tab:

- Click the box beside the sites and devices to select those that you want to include in the connection schedule. A check mark appears beside an item to indicate that it is included in the connection schedule.
- Set your Site Connection Settings. To enter the minimum and maximum time to stay connected, type the time in the fields or use the arrows to change the time.
- Set the Connection Priority. The higher the number, the greater the priority given to that schedule if there are concurrent connection requests.

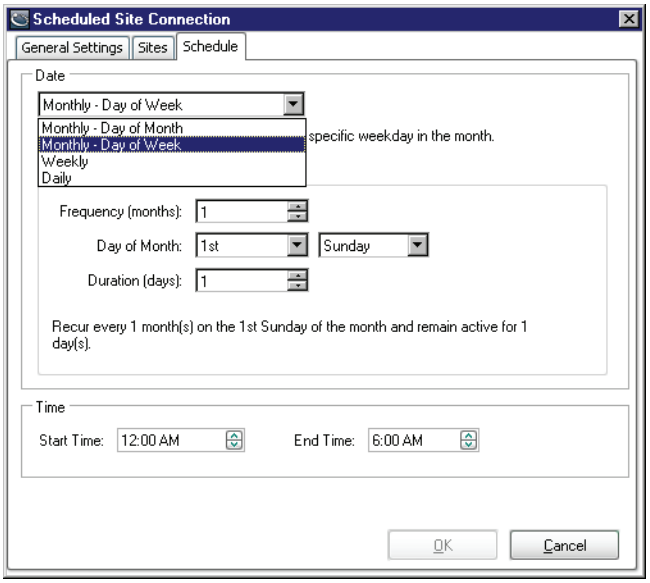


© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Schedule Tab

On the **Schedul**e tab:

- Set up the date schedule for the connection (the default is Daily). Schedule options vary depending on the type of schedule selected.
  - **Daily:** Occurs every day.
  - **Weekly:** Occurs on the selected day at the specified frequency (in number of weeks) and stays active for the specified duration. For example, if you set Frequency to 2, Day of week to Sunday and Active Duration to 2, the connection occurs every second Sunday and stays active for two days.
  - **Monthly - Day of Week:** Occurs at the specified frequency (in months), in the week and on the day specified and for the specified duration. For example, if you set Frequency to 3, Day of Month to 2nd and Sunday, and Duration to 1, the connection occurs every third month on the second Sunday and stays active for 1 day.
  - **Monthly - Day of Month:** Occurs at the specified frequency (in months), on the specified date of the month, and for the duration specified. For example, if you set Frequency to 2, Day of Month to 15th and Duration to 2, the connection occurs on the fifteenth day of every second month and stays active for 2 days.
- Set up the time period for the connection to occur by setting a start and an end time. In the Start Time and End Time fields, type the time or use the arrows to change the time.

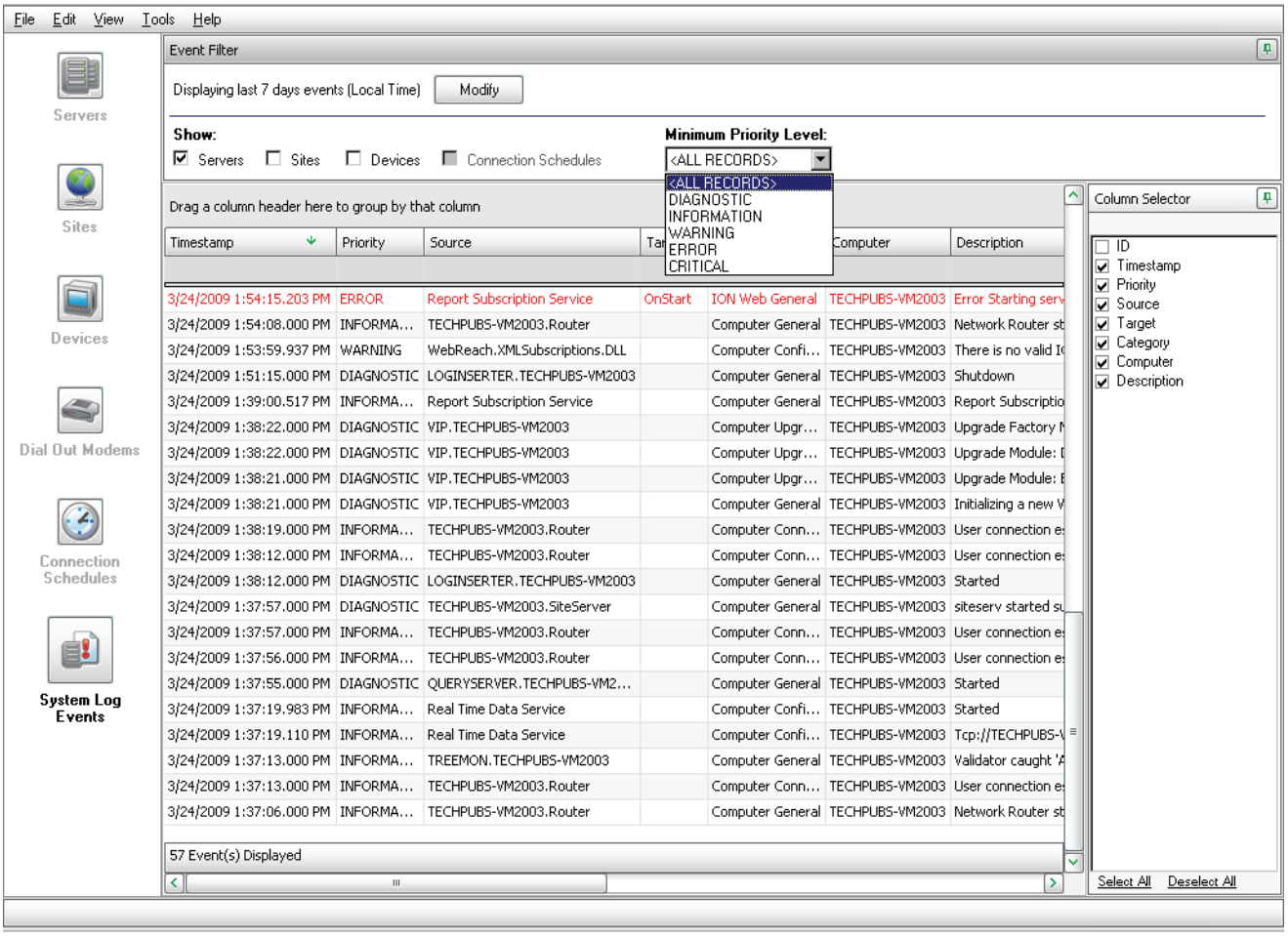


If you configure a full-day (i.e., 24-hour) daily schedule, make sure you allow enough time between the end time and the start of the next connection to avoid connection problems. For example, to add a 2-minute gap to a 24-hour schedule, set the Start Time to 0:00:00 and the EndTime to 23:58:00.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

System Log Events

System Log Events lists events for components in the system. This information comes from the ION_SystemLog database.


File Edit View Tools Help
Servers
Sites
Devices
Dial Out Modems
Connection Schedules
System Log Events
Event Filter
Displaying last 7 days events (Local Time)
Modify
Show:
Servers
Sites
Devices
Connection Schedules
Minimum Priority Level:
<ALL RECORDS>
DIAGNOSTIC
INFORMATION
WARNING
ERROR
CRITICAL
Drag a column header here to group by that column
Timestamp
Priority
Source
Computer
Description
3/24/2009 1:54:15.203 PM ERROR Report Subscription Service OnStart ION Web General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Error Starting serv
3/24/2009 1:54:08.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Network Router st
3/24/2009 1:53:59.937 PM WARNING WebReach.XMLSubscriptions.DLL Computer Confi... TECHPUBS-VM2003 There is no valid I
3/24/2009 1:51:15.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC LOGINSERTER.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Shutdown
3/24/2009 1:39:00.517 PM INFORMA... Report Subscription Service Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Report Subscriptio
3/24/2009 1:38:22.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC VIP.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer Upgr... TECHPUBS-VM2003 Upgrade Factory
3/24/2009 1:38:22.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC VIP.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer Upgr... TECHPUBS-VM2003 Upgrade Module:
3/24/2009 1:38:21.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC VIP.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer Upgr... TECHPUBS-VM2003 Upgrade Module:
3/24/2009 1:38:21.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC VIP.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Initializing a new
3/24/2009 1:38:19.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer Conn... TECHPUBS-VM2003 User connection e
3/24/2009 1:38:12.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer Conn... TECHPUBS-VM2003 User connection e
3/24/2009 1:38:12.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC LOGINSERTER.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Started
3/24/2009 1:37:57.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC TECHPUBS-VM2003.SiteServer Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 siteserv started
3/24/2009 1:37:57.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer Conn... TECHPUBS-VM2003 User connection e
3/24/2009 1:37:56.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer Conn... TECHPUBS-VM2003 User connection e
3/24/2009 1:37:55.000 PM DIAGNOSTIC QUERYSERVER.TECHPUBS-VM2... Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Started
3/24/2009 1:37:19.983 PM INFORMA... Real Time Data Service Computer Confi... TECHPUBS-VM2003 Started
3/24/2009 1:37:19.110 PM INFORMA... Real Time Data Service Computer Confi... TECHPUBS-VM2003 Tcp://TECHPUBS-
3/24/2009 1:37:13.000 PM INFORMA... TREEMON.TECHPUBS-VM2003 Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Validator caught
3/24/2009 1:37:13.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer Conn... TECHPUBS-VM2003 User connection e
3/24/2009 1:37:06.000 PM INFORMA... TECHPUBS-VM2003.Router Computer General TECHPUBS-VM2003 Network Router st
57 Event(s) Displayed
Column Selector
ID
Timestamp
Priority
Source
Target
Category
Computer
Description
Select All
Deselect All

TIP

For instructions on filtering and sorting columns and customizing the display, see "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22.

Viewing System Log Events

To view System Log Events:

1. Select System Log Events from the System Setup pane.
2. Select the system components for which you want to view events (i.e., servers, sites, devices).

   If there are no events for a particular system component, that check box is unavailable.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

3. Select the minimum priority level of events to be displayed (see below for more information on priority levels).
4. Click **Modify** to change the date/time filter applied to the System Events Log display. See "System Log Filter Setup" on page 42.
5. To view details of an event, double-click on the entry in the event log.

Priority

Priority classifies what type of event has occurred. The value corresponds to the severity of the event: the higher the number, the more severe the event.

The priority is contained in the ION_SystemLog database as a number. In the System Events Log display, the priority levels are displayed as text strings. The priority numbers are mapped to the text strings as follows:

Diagnostic 0-5	Warning 21-63	Critical 192-255
Information 6-20	Error 64-191	

By default, the *Cutoff* setup register of Log Inserter's System Log Controller module is set to 192. This means that system events with a priority less than 192 are not transferred to the ION_Data database and therefore cannot be viewed in Vista using the Global Event Log Viewer. If you want to view lower priority events in Vista, use the above priority mapping as a guide to set the *Cutoff* setup register to a lower value (using Designer).

System Log Filter Setup

The System Log Filter Setup dialog box lets you change the date and time filter applied to the System Events Log display.

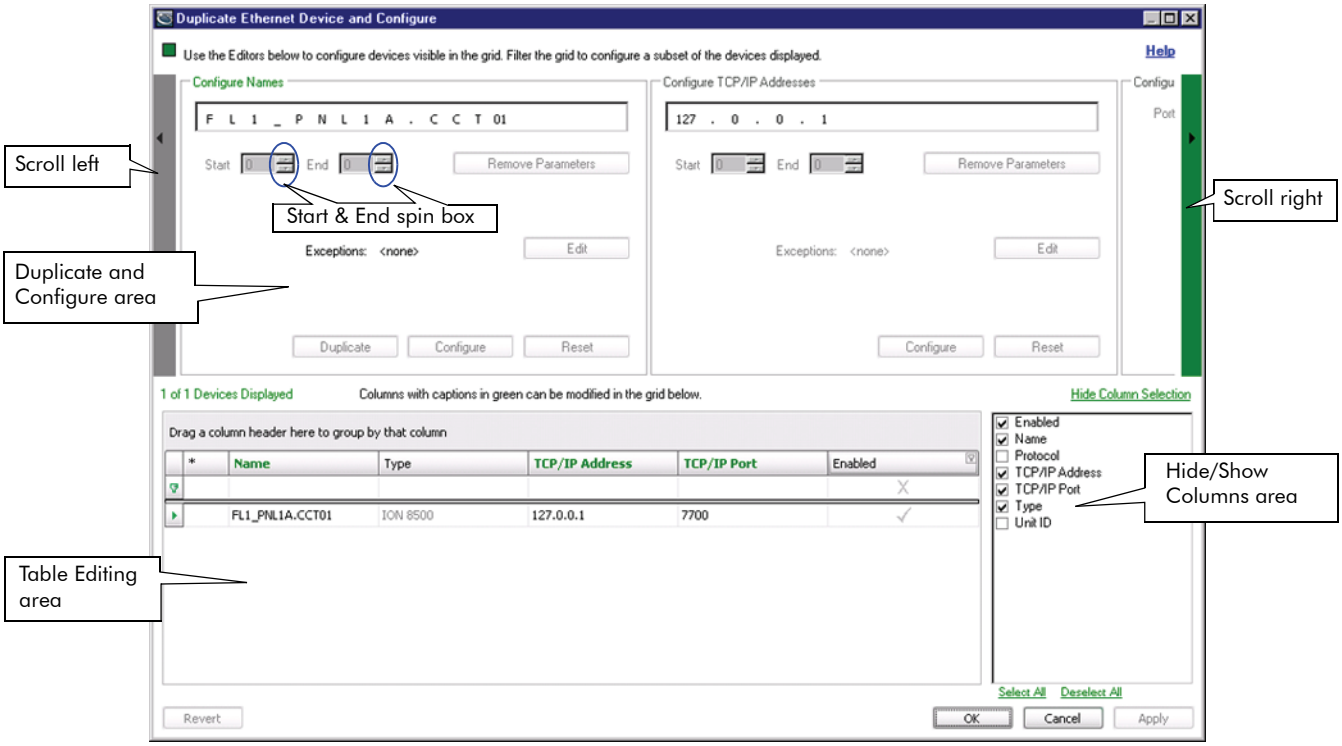
1. Click **Modify** to display the **System Log Filter Setup** dialog box.
2. Select the time range by which you want to filter from the dropdown list. To set up a custom filter, select **Custom Date Range** then use the dropdown lists and arrows in the **Select a Date Range** dialog box to specify the start and end of the range.
3. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Setting Up Large Systems

To perform batch network setup of devices, create the first device in Management Console (see "Adding Network Components" on page 33) using a logical naming scheme. After you create this first device, you can then use it to create multiple duplicate devices and configure their properties.

The Duplicate and Configure Interface



NOTE

When table rows are filtered in the Duplicate and Configure tool, changes done using the configuration editors on the top pane of the window affect only the devices that are visible in the Table Editing area. If you want to apply the changes to all devices, clear the filter first before making the changes.

The Duplicate and Configure Area

The Duplicate and Configure area has different sections depending on the type of device you are duplicating.

Ethernet devices have the following sections:

- **Configure Names**: Use this section to create the duplicates.
- **Configure TCP/IP Addresses**: Use this section to create a sequence of IP addresses to assign to the duplicates after they have been created.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Configure TCP/IP Ports**: The port number used in the original device is automatically assigned to all the duplicates. If required, use this section to select a different port number for all the displayed devices in the Table Editing area (changes made in this area are applied to all devices, including the original).
- **Configure Unit IDs**: This section is disabled by default, since unit IDs do not apply to typical Ethernet devices. (To enable this section, you must first set up the Table Editing area so that the "Unit ID" column is visible).

Serial devices have the following sections:

- **Configure Names**: Use this section to create the duplicates.
- **Configure Unit IDs**: Use this section to create a sequence of unit IDs to assign to the duplicates after they have been created.
- **Configure Serial Sites**: The serial site used in the original device is automatically assigned to all the duplicates. If required, use this section to select a different serial site for all the displayed devices in the Table Editing area (changes made in this area are applied to all devices, including the original).

OPC devices have the following sections:

- **Configure Names**: Use this section to create the duplicates.
- **Configure OPC Address**: Use this section to create a sequence of addresses to assign to the duplicates after they have been created.
- **Configure OPC Sites**: The OPC site used in the original device is automatically assigned to all the duplicates. If required, use this section to select a different OPC site for all the displayed devices in the Table Editing area (changes made in this area are applied to all devices, including the original).

The Table Editing Area

When making configuration changes in the Duplicate and Configure interface, these changes are applied only to the rows that are visible in the Table Editing area.

See "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22 for instructions on filtering and sorting data in the table.

NOTE

To discard your changes since the last saved state, click **Revert**. You can also press CTRL+Z to undo the last action. To redo the last action, press SHIFT+CTRL+Z. You can only undo your last action (one undo).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Creating Multiple Copies of a Device

This section describes how to duplicate and configure devices.

Step 1: Configuring the First Device

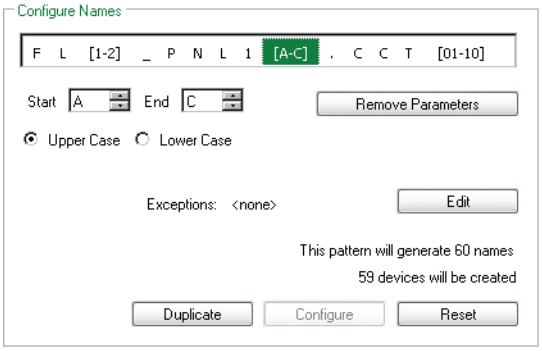
1. Add the first device using your logical naming scheme.

   For example, you can use a scheme like "FL1_PNL1A.CCT01" to name a device that is installed on the "1st Floor" of the building, "electrical panel 1A", and "Circuit breaker #1". Type "FL1_PNL1A" as the group name and "CCT01" as the device name when you configure the first device.

2. Right-click the device you want to duplicate and select **Duplicate and Configure**. The Duplicate and Configure interface appears.

Step 2: Configuring Names

In the Configure Names area, the device name is displayed. Each letter and number is selectable. A group of numbers is treated as a single entity. For example, in the name "MY8600" the entities you can select are "M", "Y" and "8600". Leading zeroes are also supported, so you can set sequences such as "01, 02, 03" or "001, 002, 003".



1. Select a letter or number in the device name. The **Start** box displays the selected number/letter, which is the start value. Use the up or down arrow in the spin box to change the start value, or simply type it in the box.
2. Click the up or down arrow on the **End** box edit the range, or type the end value in the box. To clear the range and start over, click **Remove Parameters**.
3. For letters, select Upper Case or Lower Case, depending on whether you require upper case or lower case letters.
4. Set exceptions for individual values or a range of values, if required. Exceptions reduce the number of names created (i.e., total generated names minus the exceptions). See"Setting Exceptions to Generated Sequences" on page 46.

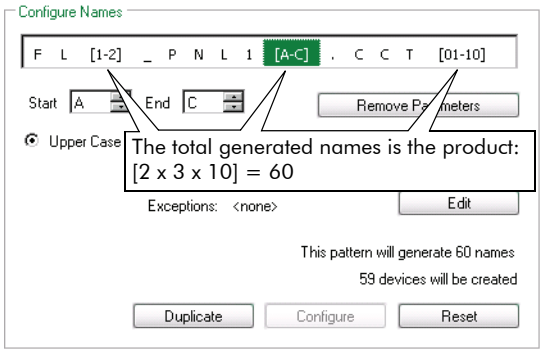
Once you have finished configuring names, you can duplicate the device. See "Step 3: Duplicating the Device", below, for more information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Example

For example, if you select the first "1" from the example naming scheme and set the End spin box to "2", two names are generated (the original, plus one duplicate). If you select a letter and set its Start value to "A" and the End value to "C", three names are generated (the original, plus two duplicates).

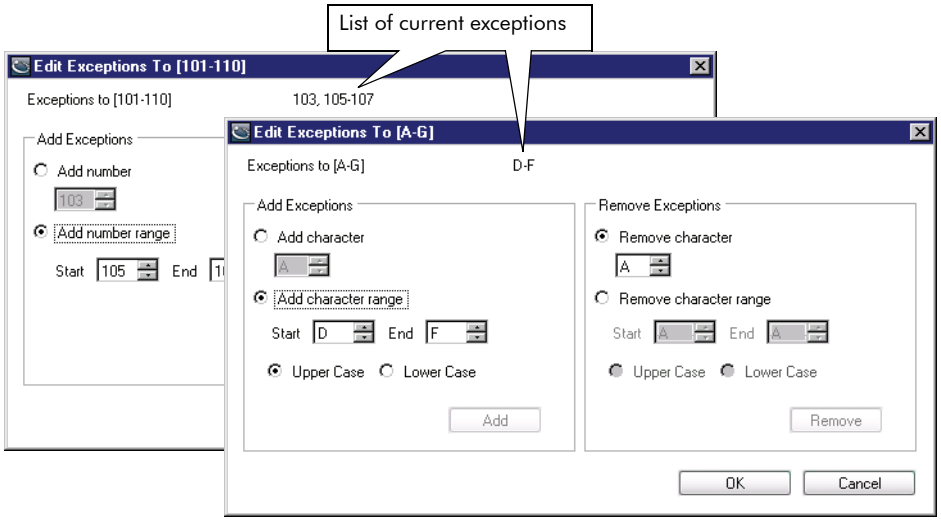
The total number of generated names is the product of the first range multiplied by the next, and so on until the last range, as indicated in the following graphic.


Configure Names
F L [1-2] _ P N L 1 [A-C] . C C T [01-10]
Start A End C
Remove Parameters
Upper Case
The total generated names is the product: [2 x 3 x 10] = 60
Exceptions: <none>
Edit
This pattern will generate 60 names
59 devices will be created
Duplicate
Configure
Reset

Setting Exceptions to Generated Sequences

The **Exceptions** option applies to the **Configure Names** and **Configure TCP/IP Addresses** sections only.

1. To set exceptions to the range of generated values, click **Edit** (this button is unavailable until you change the name or IP value).



2. Use the **Add number** or **Add character** (as applicable) spin box to set a value to exclude from the range you have specified, then click **Add**. Repeat to set additional values to exclude. To set a range of values to exclude, select **Add number range** or **Add character range**, then use the **Start** and **End** spin boxes to set the range to exclude.

   Click **Add**. Repeat to set additional ranges of values to exclude.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

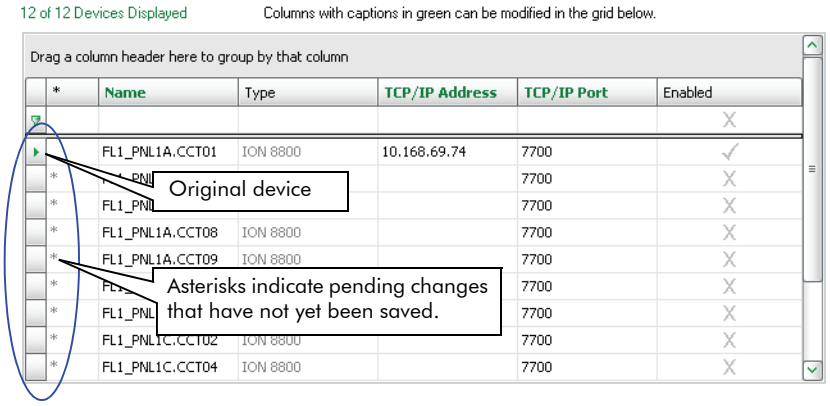
NOTE

You cannot add the same number or letter to the list of exceptions more than once. If the **Add** button is disabled, check that the numbers or letters are not already included in the exceptions list near the top of the window.

3. Use the **Remove number** or **Remove character** spin box to remove the exception that was set for a given value (i.e., put it back in as an acceptable value). Use the **Remove number range** or **Remove character range** spin boxes to remove the exception that was set for a range of values. Click **Remove**.

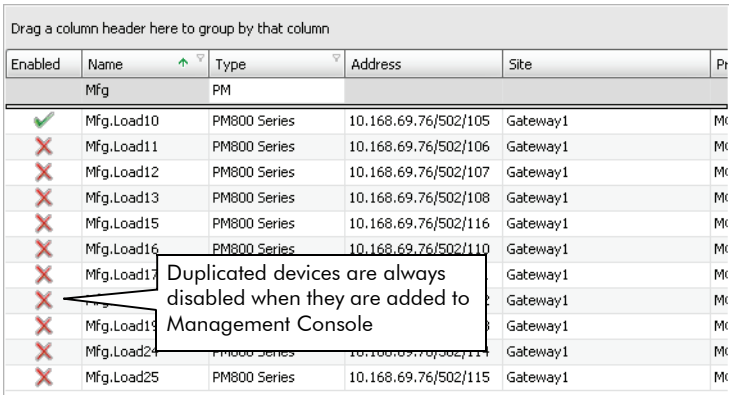
Step 3: Duplicating the Device

Once you have finished configuring names, you are ready to duplicate the device. Click **Duplicate**. The duplicated devices appear in the Table Editing area.



Click **Apply** to save your changes and continue editing devices, click **OK** to save your changes and return to Management Console, or click **Revert** to undo unsaved changes.

Duplicated Devices in Management Console



Step 4: Configuring Duplicated Devices

See the following section, "Configuring Multiple Devices", for instructions on configuring other properties for multiple devices.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Multiple Devices

After you have duplicated the devices, you can select and configure any or all of them.

1. If you have closed the Duplicate and Configure interface, select the devices you want to configure from the Devices display window in Management Console. Right-click and select **Configure Selected Devices** (this option is only available if multiple devices are selected).

   The Configure Selected Devices interface appears. This interface has the same layout and controls as the Duplicate and Configure interface; see "The Duplicate and Configure Interface" on page 43 for information.

NOTE

Devices affected by a configuration change (that has not been saved) are identified by an asterisk in the first column of the Table Editing area.

2. Scroll to the right in the Duplicate and Configure area to view the Configure TCP/IP Addresses, Unit IDs, Ports and Sites sections of the interface (depending on the type of device being configured). Configure these parameters as described in "Configuring Addresses, Ports, Unit IDs and Sites" on page 49 then click **Configure** at the bottom of the applicable interface section.

NOTE

Configuration changes only affect the devices that are currently displayed in the Table Editing area. Use the column sorting and filtering features, described in "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22, to control which devices are displayed in the table. If you want to apply the changes to all devices, clear any filtering before making the changes.

3. Click **Apply** to save your changes and continue working or click **OK** to save your changes and return to Management Console.

NOTE

If you changed the name of one or more devices, a warning displays with a list of devices that will be renamed. If data for those devices already exist in the ION_Data database and you still proceed with the renaming, then the existing data associated with the old device name is lost ("orphaned").

   Click **Continue** to proceed or **Cancel** to go back and edit the device configuration.

4. When you have finished, click **OK** to save your changes and return to Management Console or click **Cancel** to discard your changes.

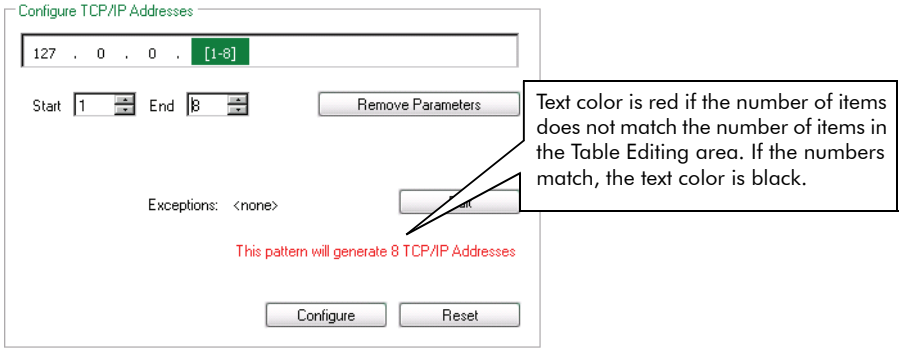
   If you click Cancel, a dialog box prompts you if there are pending (unsaved) changes when you click Cancel. Click **Yes** to discard the changes and return to Management Console, or **No** to return to the configuration window and continue editing.

   If inappropriate values (such as a device that is renamed with the same name as another existing device) are encountered, a message displays with error details. You cannot save the configuration changes until you have corrected the errors.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Addresses, Ports, Unit IDs and Sites

The following sections describe how to configure addresses, ports, and unit IDs.


Configure TCP/IP Addresses
127 . 0 . 0 . [1-8]
Start 1 End 8
Remove Parameters
Exceptions: <none>
This pattern will generate 8 TCP/IP Addresses
Configure
Reset
Text color is red if the number of items does not match the number of items in the Table Editing area. If the numbers match, the text color is black.

Configuring TCP/IP Addresses

1. Select the section of the IP address that you want to configure. The **Start** box displays the selected number/letter, which is the start value. Use the up or down arrow in the spin box to change the start value, or simply type it in the box.
2. Click the up or down arrow on the **End** box edit the range, or type the end value in the box. To clear the range and start over, click **Remove Parameters**.
3. Set exceptions for individual values or a range of values, if required. Exceptions reduce the number of addresses created (i.e., total generated addresses minus the exceptions). See"Setting Exceptions to Generated Sequences" on page 46.
4. Click **Configure** at the bottom of the Configure TCP/IP Addresses section.

Configuring Unit IDs

The following instructions apply to serial devices (and Ethernet devices that require a unit ID).

1. Use the up or down arrow in the **Start** spin box to change the start value, or simply type it in the box.
2. Click the up or down arrow on the **End** box edit the range, or type the end value in the box.
3. Click **Configure** at the bottom of the Configure Unit IDs section.

NOTE

To edit the unit ID of an Ethernet device, you must first add the Unit ID column to the table in the Table Editing area.

Configuring Sites

1. From the dropdown list, select the site you want to use for the selected serial or OPC devices.
2. Click **Configure** at the bottom of the Configure Sites section.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Ports

1. From the dropdown list, select the port you want to use for the selected Ethernet devices.
2. Click **Configure** at the bottom of the Configure Ports section.

Editing Duplicated Device Information

The following sections describe how to quickly edit the properties of duplicated devices in the table editing area.

Copying Device Information from a Spreadsheet

Sometimes device names do not follow any particular naming pattern. In this case, you can use the copy/paste function to apply configuration changes directly to the Table Editing area.

First, you need to add a new device in Management Console, then create as many duplicates of the device as the quantity of items you are pasting.

If you have a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet that contains a list of these devices to add to Management Console, you can use the Configure Names area to create duplicates of that device type, then use the Table Editing area to copy and paste the device properties from the Excel spreadsheet.

Example: Copy and Paste 20 Ethernet Devices from Excel

1. Make sure the names in the Excel spreadsheet conform to the naming convention "[Group].[DeviceName]".
2. Add the first device and set up its properties in Management Console. You can assign it a simple device name such as "A.B1" since it will be overwritten when the values are copied and pasted from Excel. Set the Enabled property to **No** (this makes sure that Management Console does not attempt to connect to the device).
3. Click **OK** to add the device.
4. Right-click the device and select **Duplicate and Configure**.
5. Select the "1" in the Configure Names box, then use the End spin box to set the value to 20.
6. In the Hide/Show Columns area, clear the check box of all non-editable columns to hide those that contain grayed out values. Also hide the columns you do not want to paste over or those that are not included in the Excel spreadsheet.
7. On the Excel spreadsheet, arrange the columns so they match the order of the columns on the Table Editing area. Hide all columns on the Excel spreadsheet except those corresponding to columns on the Table Editing area.
8. Select the cells in Excel and copy them (CTRL+C).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

9. On the Table Editing area, click on the first cell under the Name column to select it, then paste the contents of the clipboard (CTRL+V).
10. Click **Apply** to save your changes or click **OK** save your changes and return to Management Console.

Using Find and Replace to Edit Device Information

Use the Find and Replace feature to modify matching characters in the device names or in any other editable columns on the device table. The Find and Replace feature does not work on read-only columns.

1. Right-click the device table and select **Find and Replace** (or press CTRL+H).
2. Type the characters you want to search for in the **Find** box. Do not use wildcard characters ("*"). Note that the search is case-sensitive.
3. **Find in column** lists all available columns. Select the column you want to search in.
4. In the **Replace** box, type the characters you want to use to replace the characters in the **Find** box. If you want to delete characters from a column value, leave the **Replace** box blank.
5. Click **Preview** to list the search results in the table. The **Replace with** column displays the new name or value resulting from the Find and Replace operation.
6. Use the check box in the **Select** column to select the rows for which you want to change values. Click **Select All** to select all the items or **Clear Selected** to clear all.
7. Click **Apply** to save your changes or **Cancel** to discard your changes
8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog box.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
3

Management Console Tools

Management Console tools are additional programs that help you manage and monitor your ION Enterprise network.

In This Section

- "Introduction" on page 54
- "User Manager" on page 55
- "License Manager" on page 60
- "Reporting Configuration Manager" on page 61
- "Event Watcher Manager" on page 62
- "Diagnostics Viewer" on page 66
- "Device Upgrader" on page 71
- "Remote Modem Setup" on page 74
- "Virtual Processor Setup" on page 75
- "Time of Use Editor" on page 80

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Introduction

The following programs are available in ION Enterprise, and can be started through the Management Console's **Tools** menu:

- **User Manager** allows you to configure ION Enterprise user login names, access levels and passwords.
- **License Manager** allows you to upgrade your software license to provide additional device, client and software support.
- **Reporting Configuration Manager** allows you to set up options for Web Reporter.
- **Database Manager** allows you to perform and schedule maintenance tasks on your ION Enterprise databases. See "Database Manager" on page 255.
- **Designer** allows you to configure devices and add custom functionality to them; see "Designer" on page 195.
- **Diagnostics Viewer** provides detailed records of all system and network events as well as communication states and problems.
- **Device Upgrader** allows you to upload new firmware to network meters or devices.
- **Remote Modem Setup** allows you to configure dialup modems that will be used at remote power management networks.
- **ION Virtual Processor Setup** allows you to configure the ION Virtual Processor Service for user-programmed functionality.
- **Modbus Device Importer** allows you to add Modbus devices to the ION Enterprise network; see "Modbus Device Importer" on page 277.
- **Event Watcher Manager** allows you to set event conditions to report on and link those conditions to devices.
- **Time of Use Editor** allows you to define a time of use schedule that is used by selected reports such as Energy and Demand.

Commands for Optional Components

- The **Update OPC Server** and **PQDIF Exporter** commands appear in the Tools menu if these optional components were purchased with ION Enterprise (or activated later using the appropriate upgrade software license). See the *OPC Server Assistant* and *PQDIF Exporter* documentation for more information on these features.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

User Manager

User Manager allows you to add users and edit user information, such as passwords, access level, and organizational information. You can also use User Manager to define groups of users for use in Web Reporter subscriptions.

You must have supervisor level access to use User Manager, otherwise the menu option is unavailable.

Access Levels

	Access Level				
Type of Operation Allowed by Default	**Observer\ View Only (1)**	**User (2)**	**Controller (3)**	**Operator (4)**	**Supervisor (5)**
View Vista or Designer diagrams	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES
Acknowledge alarms[1]		YES	YES	YES	YES
Trigger events[1]			YES	YES	YES
Connect/disconnect sites or devices			YES	YES	YES
Modify network configuration (using Management Console)				YES	YES
Edit Vista or Designer diagrams					YES
Administer software security (i.e., add users)					YES

[1] Supervisors can configure Vista objects (i.e., control objects or the global event log viewer) to allow different access levels to perform different actions (i.e., trigger events or acknowledge alarms). See "Customizing a Diagram Object" on page 133 for more information on configuring access levels for Vista objects.

Starting User Manager

1. Start Management Console. Log in using an account with supervisor level access.
2. Select **Tools > User Manager**.

TIP

You can customize the User Manager display by filtering and sorting. For instructions on using these features, see "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

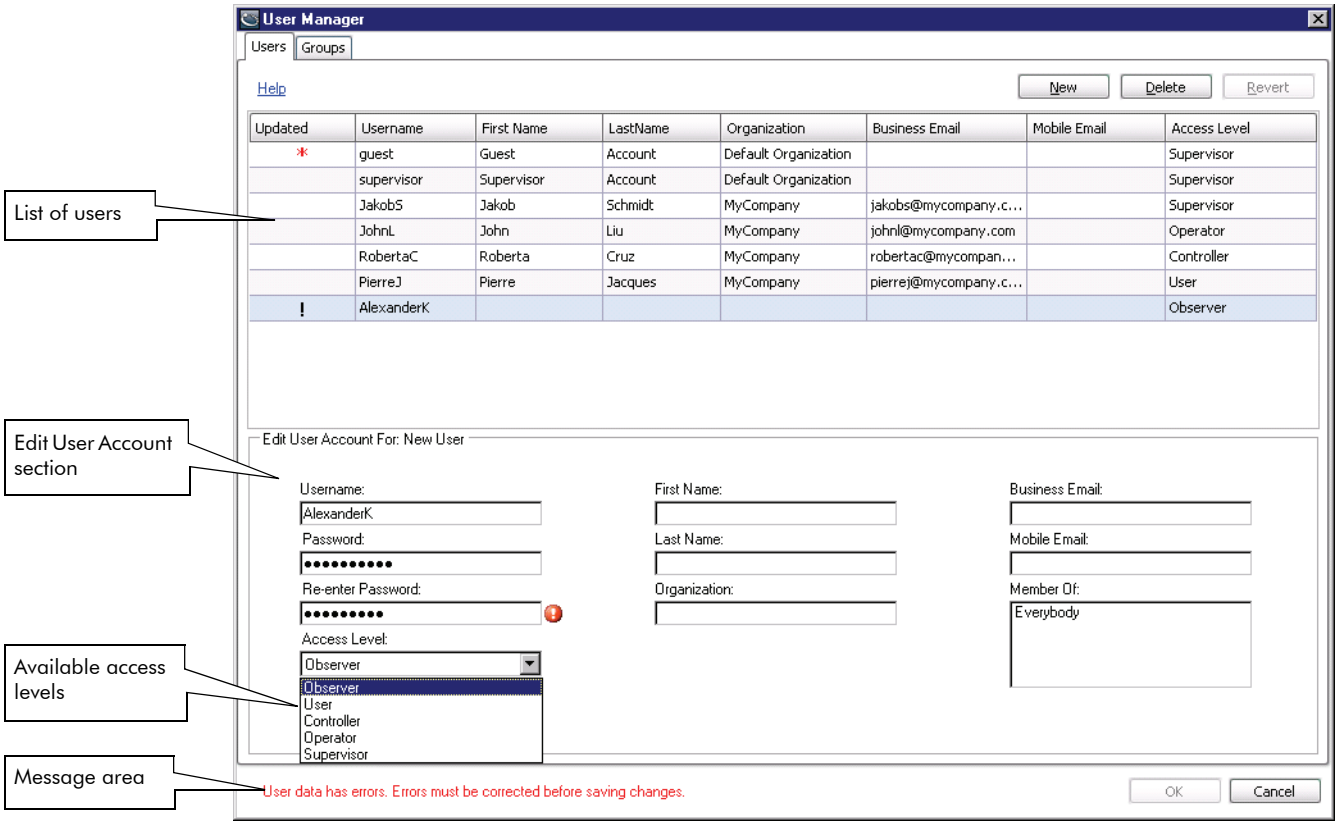
Symbols Used in the Updated Column

The following symbols are used in the Updated column to display the status of information in a row:

*	Information in the row has been modified since it was last saved.
!	There is an error in the information in the row.
+	The row is new since the user or group information was last saved.

Users

Use the Users tab to view, add and edit users and user information. Information that is required but is missing or incorrect is marked by an exclamation mark .



Adding Users

1. Click **New**. A new row appears in the list of users and the fields in the Edit User Account section are empty.
2. Enter the user information (username and password are required; other information is optional):

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Username**: Type a username for the new user (maximum length: 50 characters; no spaces allowed).
- **Password**: Type a password for the new user (maximum length: 50 characters; no spaces allowed).
- **Re-enter Password**: Re-enter the password you typed in the password field. An exclamation mark appears beside this field unless the content of the two password fields matches.
- **Access Level**: Select an access level for the user. See "Access Levels" on page 55 for an outline of the different access levels and their permissions.
- **First Name**: Type the user's given name.
- **Last Name**: Type the user's family name.
- **Organization**: Type the user's organization.
- **Business Email**: Type a business email address for the user.
- **Mobile Email**: Type a mobile email address for the user.

3. Click **Apply** to save the changes or click **OK** to save the changes and exit User Manager.

During the ION Enterprise software installation, two default user names ("guest" and "supervisor") are created, both with a default password of "0" (zero). Since both these user names have supervisor level access, the default password should be changed or the accounts removed **after** you add a new user with supervisor level access.

Changing User Information

1. Select the username associated with the information you want to change.
2. Type the new information in the Edit User Account section of the Users tab. After you edit a user's information, an asterisk appears beside that user in the list of users until you click OK to save the information.
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes or click **OK** to save the changes and exit User Manager.

Deleting a User

1. Select the username of the user you want to delete then click **Delete**. The row disappears from the list of users. You cannot delete the user account you are currently logged in with—the Delete button becomes unavailable.

NOTE

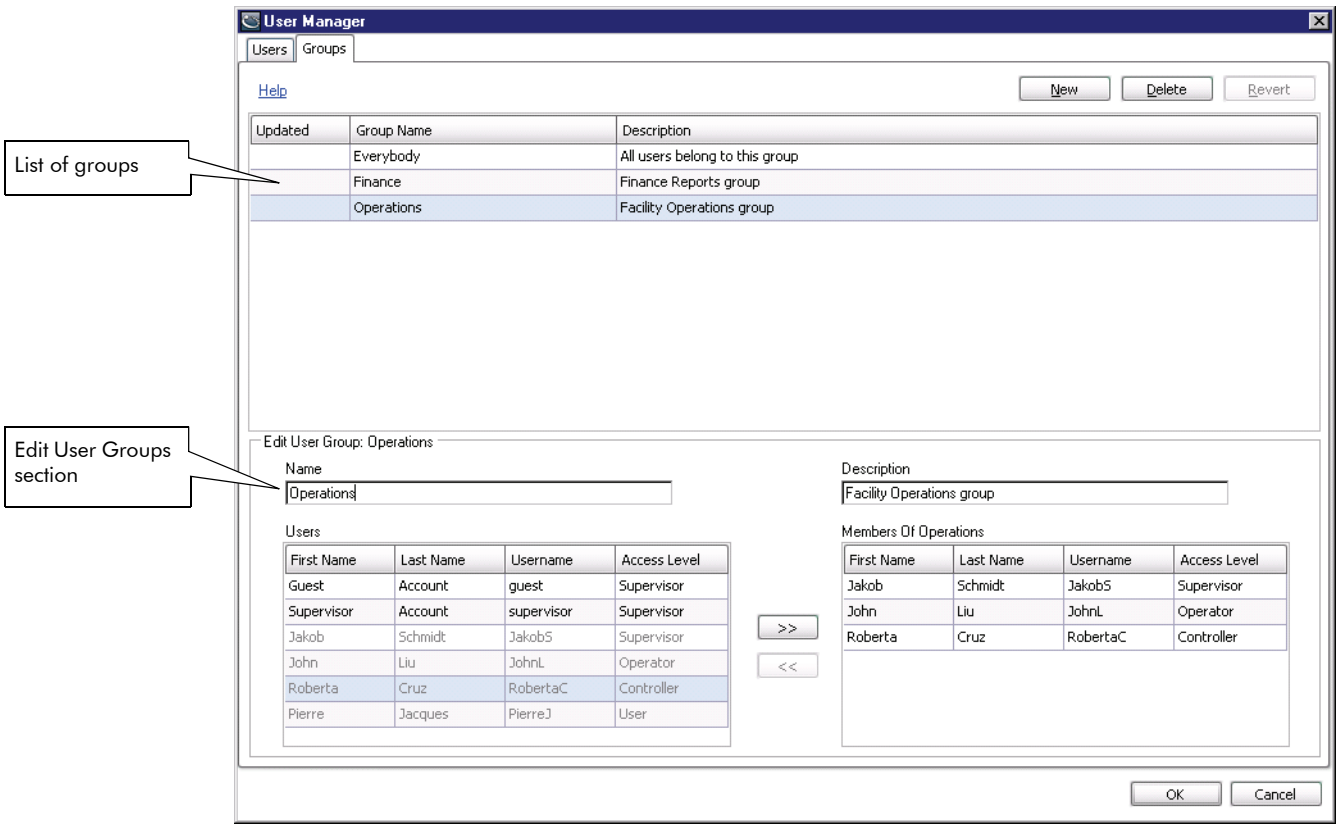
You cannot use the Revert button to undo a deletion. To undo a deletion, click Cancel to exit out of User Manager without saving your changes.

2. Click **OK** to save your changes and exit User Manager.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Groups

Use the Groups tab of User Manager to define groups of users. Groups can be used to determine access to reports in Web Reporter. Information that is required but is missing is marked by an exclamation mark .



Defining Groups

1. On the Groups tab, click **New**. A new row appears in the lists of groups.
2. In the Edit User Group section of the tab, enter the name (required) and description of the group.
3. To add a user to the selected group, select the username from the Users list and click the right arrow button >>.
4. To remove a user from the selected group, select the username from the Members Of list and click the left arrow button <<.
5. Click **Apply** to save your changes or click **OK** to save your changes and exit User Manager.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Changing Group Information

1. Select the group associated with the information you want to change.
2. Type the new information in the Edit User Group section of the Groups tab. Use the right and left arrow buttons to add or remove users from the selected group, as needed. After you edit a group's name or description, an asterisk appears beside that group in the list of groups until you click OK to save the information.
3. Click **Apply** to save your changes or click **OK** to save the changes and exit User Manager.

Deleting Groups

To delete a group, select the group from the list and click **Delete**.

NOTE

You cannot use the **Revert** button to undo a deletion. To undo a deletion, click **Cancel** to exit out of User Manager without saving your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

License Manager

For additional device or client user support (e.g., Vista clients) for your ION Enterprise system, or to add OPC and/or PQDIF options, order the appropriate license from Schneider Electric.

When you receive your new license, use License Manager to upgrade the number of supported devices and client users in your system:

1. Log in to Management Console.
2. Click **Tools > License Manager**. The **License Manager** dialog box appears.

   The current product key number, number of devices in the system, and maximum number of devices supported are listed in the System Info section.
3. Type the new product key in the Product Key field. Click **OK**.

The System Info section lists the updated support information from the newly activated product key. If the new key supports additional features or options, these are made available immediately, without restarting Management Console.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Reporting Configuration Manager

Use the Reporting Configuration Manager option in the **Tools** menu to configure options for Web Reporter such as the database to report on and subscription delivery options.

1. Open Management Console and select **Tools >** Reporting Configuration Manager. The **Reporting Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Reports** tab to configure general reporting options:
   - From the dropdown list in the Reports Database section, select the database on which you want to run reports. Only those databases compatible with Web Reporter are listed.
   - Use the slider in the Report Timeout section to set the time (in seconds) after which Web Reporter stops trying to complete a report generation task.
3. Select the **Subscriptions** tab to configure settings related to report subscriptions:
   - **SMTP Server:** Type the network server name from which the report subscriptions are emailed.
   - **"From" Display Name:** Type the name that you want to appear in the "From" field of an emailed report.
   - **"From" Email Address:** Type the email address that you want to appear in the "From" field of the emailed report.
   - **Default "Overwrite Existing File" Setting:** Select the check box to set the default setting for the "Overwrite Existing File" check box that appears in the Subscriptions dialog box when you select "File share" for the subscription Delivery Mode. If you select this check box, the existing report is overwritten by default. If you clear this check box, the new report is given a unique filename and the existing report is not overwritten.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Event Watcher Manager

The Event Watcher Manager defines events for the "On Event" selection in report subscriptions. See "Creating Report Subscriptions" on page 188 for more information on report subscriptions.

The Event Watcher Manager interface consists of two tabs:

- **Event Watchers**: An event watcher links a device or group of devices to the conditions defined in a template.
- **Templates**: A template defines the conditions that make up an event.

TIP

For instructions on using filtering, sorting, and column selection to customize the Event Watcher Manager interface, see "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22.

Opening Event Watcher Manager

To access Event Watcher Manager, select **Tools > Event Watcher Manager** in Management Console.

Symbols Used in the Updated Column

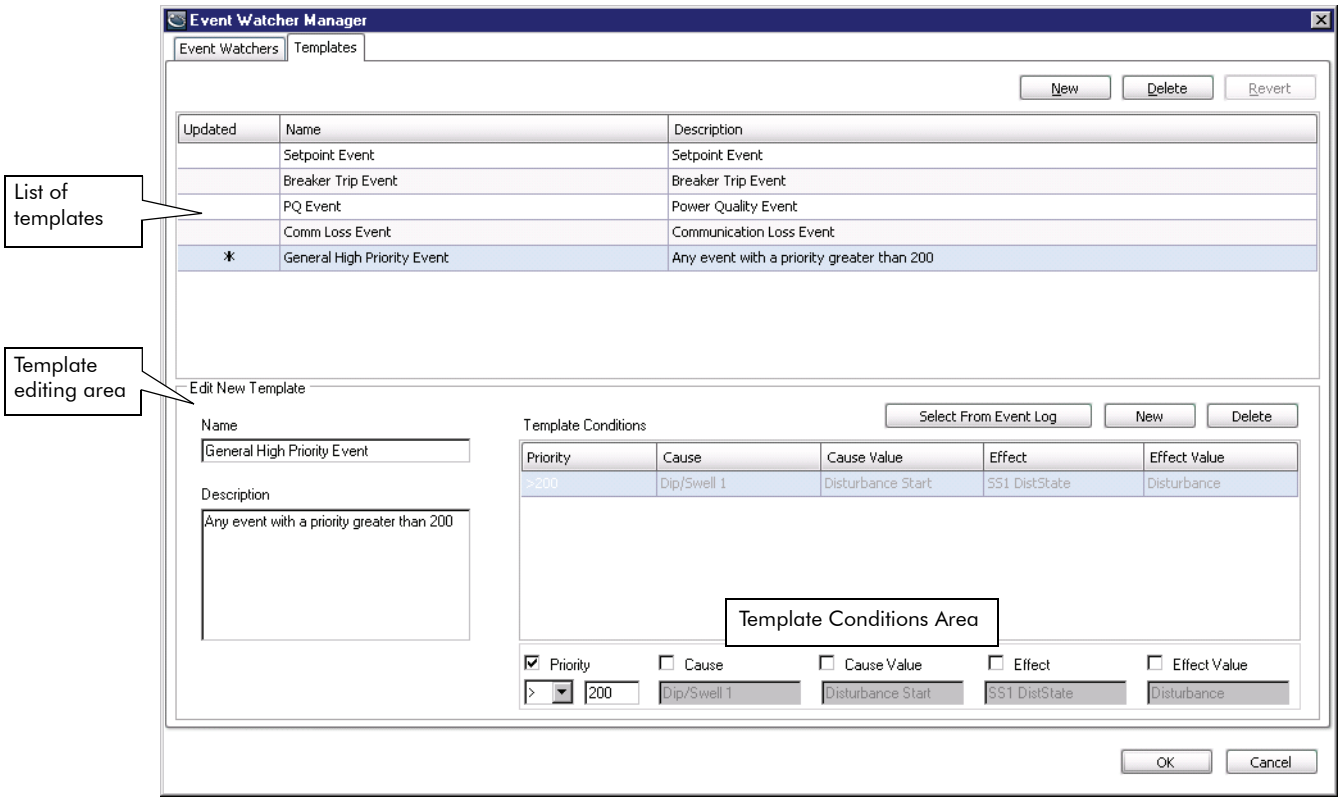
The following symbols are used in the Updated column to display the status of information in a row:

*	Information in the row has been modified since it was last saved.
!	There is an error in the information in the row.
+	The row is new since the event watcher or template information was last saved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Creating a Template

Before adding an event watcher, you must have a template that defines the conditions to be watched. You can use one of the default templates or create your own. Use the Templates tab to define and edit templates.



Event Watcher Manager comes with default templates that cannot be modified. You can create custom templates if the default templates do not provide what you need.

To define a custom template:

1. Click **New** in the top right corner of the tab. A new row appears in the main table for the new template.
2. Type a name for the template. Type a description for the template if desired.
3. Use the Template Conditions section to set the conditions to be watched. See "Using the Template Conditions Section", below.
4. Click **Apply** to save your changes, click **OK** to save your changes and exit Event Watcher Manager, or click the **Event Watchers** tab to set up an event watcher.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using the Template Conditions Section

Use this section of the interface to configure the condition the template watches for.

1. Add a condition:
   - To add a condition from the event log, click **Select from Event Log**. The **Select Event Log Lines** dialog box appears. To select an event, click on the boxes at the left of the table to select a check box. Click on the check box again to clear the check mark. Click **OK** to return to the Templates tab.
   - To add a condition without selecting from the event log, click **New**. A new row appears in the table for the new condition.

NOTE

It is recommended that you use **Select From Event Log** to add conditions. This ensures that the syntax is correct. If the syntax is not correct, the event watcher will not work. Conditions only appear in the Select Event Log Lines dialog box after they have occurred in the system.

2. Select the parameters you want to include in the condition by selecting or clearing the check boxes below the Template Conditions table. The available parameters are: Priority, Cause, Cause Value, Effect, Effect Value. You must include at least one parameter. If you select multiple parameters, the event watcher only activates when all parameters are met.

The Logic of the Template Conditions

The conditions within a row of the Template Conditions table must all be true for the condition to be met. For example, if you have a row with a Priority of greater than 220 and an Effect Value of Disturbance, both of these must be met for the condition to be true. If you have multiple rows in the table, the condition is met if any of the rows are true. For example if you have a row with Priority greater than 220 and a row with an Effect Value of Disturbance, the condition is met if either of these are true.

Deleting and Reverting

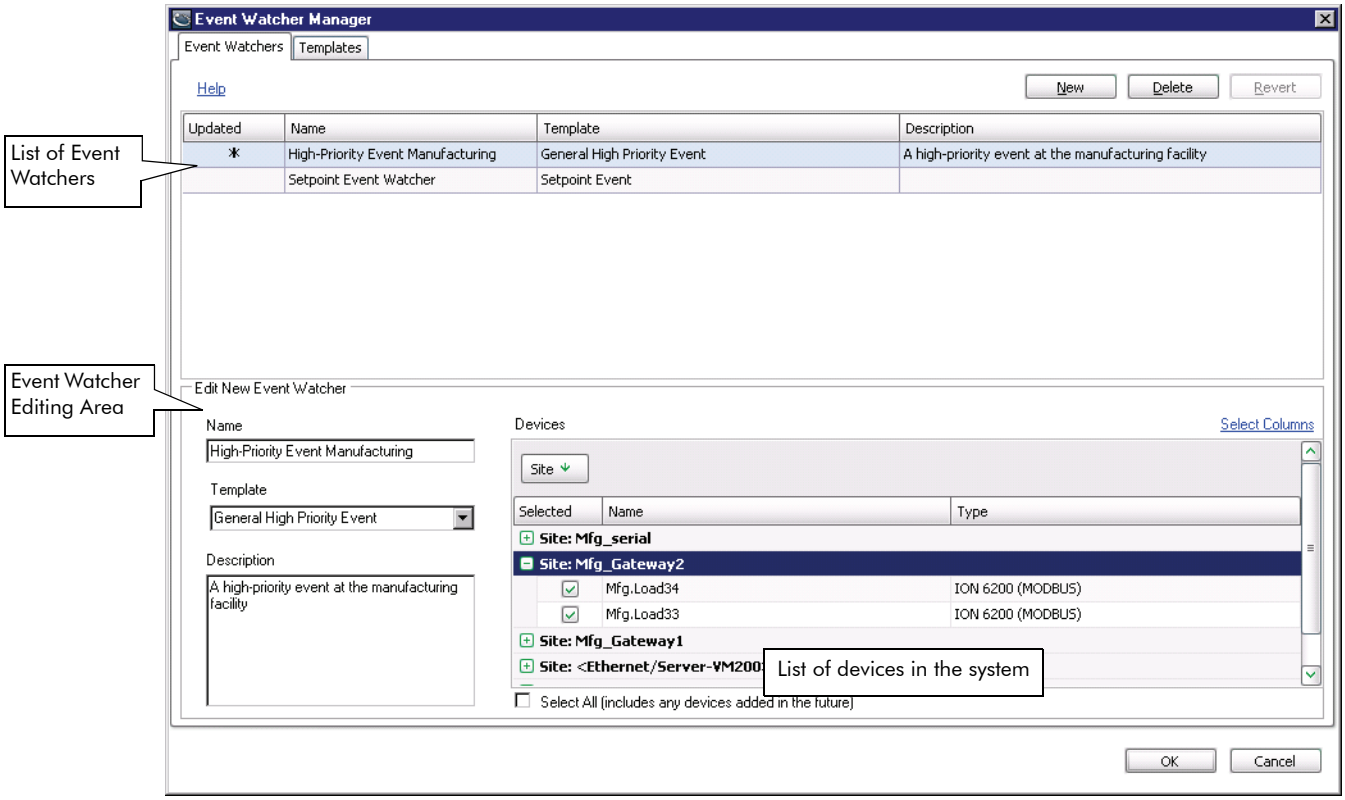
To delete a template condition, select the condition from the Template Condition table and click the **Delete** button in the Edit <Template> section. To delete a template, select the template from the main table and click the **Delete** button in the top right corner of the tab.

To undo changes, click **Revert**.

Adding an Event Watcher

To add an event watcher, you need a template. You can use one of the default templates or define your own (see “Creating a Template” on page 63).

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



1. Click **New** to add a new event watcher. A new row appears in the main table for the new event. Use the Event Watcher Editing Area to define the event watcher.
2. Type a name for the event watcher.
3. Select the template you want to use from the Template dropdown list.
4. Type a description of the event watcher if desired.
5. From the Devices table, select the devices you want to include in the event watcher. Click the check boxes to the left side of the devices to select or clear a device.

NOTE

Checking **Select All** will include any Query Server, Log Inserter or Virtual Processor instances in the system. It also includes any devices or software nodes added in the future.

6. Click **Apply** to save your changes, click **OK** to save your changes and exit Event Watcher Manager, or click the **Templates** tab to edit the templates.

Deleting and Reverting

To delete an event watcher, select the event watcher from the table and click **Delete**.

To undo changes, click **Revert**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Diagnostics Viewer

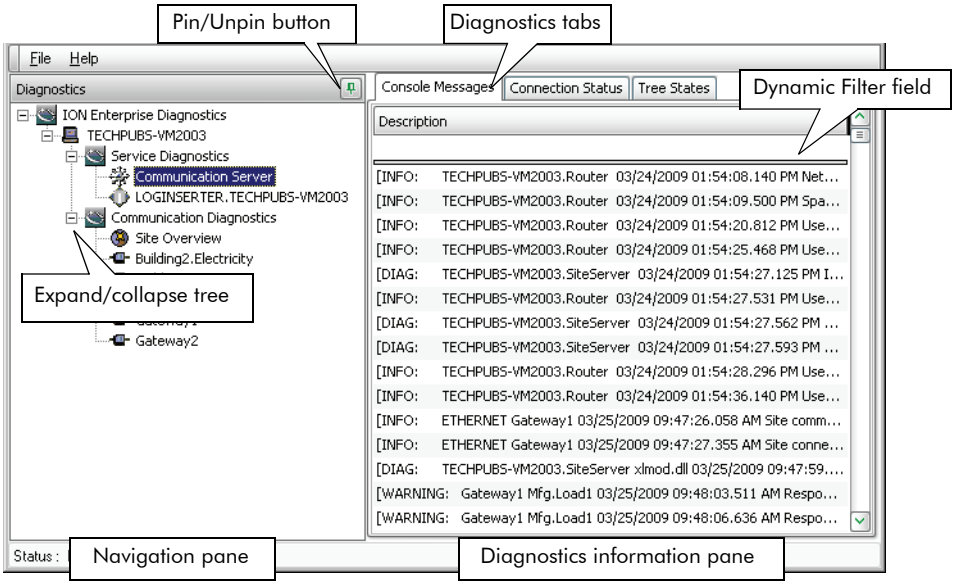
Diagnostics Viewer is the ION Enterprise tool for troubleshooting network communications problems and related network errors.

Starting Diagnostics Viewer

1. Start Management Console and log in.
2. Click **Tools > System > Diagnostics Viewer**.

TIP

For instructions on using filtering, sorting, column selection and pin/unpin to customize the Diagnostics Viewer display, see "Customizing and Navigating Interface Displays" on page 22.



Refresh Tree View

If you add a new device in Management Console while Diagnostics Viewer is open, you can refresh the tree view (to display the new device) by collapsing then expanding the root node of the tree (i.e., "ION Enterprise Diagnostics").

Navigation Pane

Diagnostics information is grouped as follows:

- **Service Diagnostics**: Contains diagnostics information for certain ION Enterprise services (ION Network Router Service, ION Site Service and ION Log Inserter Service).
- **Communication Diagnostics**: Contains diagnostics information for the ION Enterprise sites, hardware devices and software nodes.

Select an item in the navigation pane to display its diagnostics information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Diagnostics Information Pane

The diagnostics information pane displays detailed data about the state of your power monitoring system and devices.

Service Diagnostics

Service Diagnostics records communication problems and similar events occurring with ION Enterprise software components.

Communication Server Diagnostics

Information about the communications server is arranged in these tabs:

- **Console Messages** lists all ION Network Router Service and ION Site Service console messages for the current session.

TIP

The blank area below the **Description** column header is a dynamic filter field. Type the wildcard character (*) in front of the text you want to search (for example, ***warning**). The diagnostics information pane automatically displays only those records that match the text you typed in the box.

- **Connection Status** displays the current status of ION Enterprise software components connected to Network Router.
- **Tree States** displays the ION tree status of all nodes (hardware devices and software nodes).

Log Inserter Diagnostics

The Log Inserter diagnostics information pane is split into two sections. The top section (Select Nodes pane) contains the available nodes, while the bottom section contains the node details.

Select Nodes to Display

In the Select Nodes pane, select the check box beside a node to display its diagnostics information. Clear the check box to hide that node's diagnostics information.

TIP

If there are many nodes and you want to display only a few of them, right-click the Select Nodes area then select **Clear All**. Select only the nodes you want to display. To display all the nodes again, right-click the Select Nodes area and select **Select All**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Node Details

The node details are organized in these tabs:

- **Node Information** displays Log Inserter statistics for the selected node(s).
- **Node Performance** displays aggregate log performance statistics for the selected node(s).
- **Log Performance** displays log performance statistics for each log in the selected node(s).

Communications Diagnostics

Communications Diagnostics provides diagnostics information for sites and devices connected to the workstation.

Site Overview

Diagnostics information for the sites are contained in these tabs:

- **Site Summary** displays communications statistics for each site.
- **NetUser Status** displays the number of ION programs currently in the ION Network Router Service queue (awaiting processing) and the total number of ION programs already processed.

NOTE

Requests and responses transmitted between the ION Enterprise components are referred to as "ION programs".

Site/Device Diagnostics

Diagnostics information for sites and devices are summarized in these tabs:

- **Communication Status** displays error rates and connection statistics for the selected site or device. The following information is available from the Communications Status tab:

Column	Description
Node	The device (or software node) name.
Requests	The number of communications requests transmitted to the meter.
Responses	The number of successful responses received.
Total Errors	The total number of errors.
Total Error Rate	The ratio of Total Errors to Requests.
Sliding Error Rate	The error rate in the last 64 requests. This can indicate a trend in communications performance.
Average Response Time	Average time in seconds for the meter to respond.
Last Response Time	The last response time, in seconds.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Column	Description
Timeouts	The number of timeout errors. A timeout occurs when no data is received in response to a request.
Bad Checksums	The number of bad packets received, i.e., those that failed the error-detection checksum.
Broken Connection Errors	Number of times the connection was lost to the meters on a site.
Incomplete Frames	The number of incomplete packets received, i.e., those that did not have all the expected bytes.
Bad Frames	The number of received packets that had an internal error.
Hardware Errors	Number of errors reported by the computer's communication hardware.
Misc Errors	Number of other errors that do not fit any of the above descriptions.

- **Site Status** displays site statistics such as connection status and totals.
- **Polling Status** displays the number of programs currently in the ION Site Service queue (awaiting processing) and the total number of programs already processed.

Communication Status vs. Site Status

This section explains the difference between the statistics provided on the **Communication Status** tab and those on the **Site Status** tab.

"Total Errors" in the **Communication Status** tab is an ION Site Service derived statistic, while "Bad Responses" in the **Site Status** tab is a client derived statistic.

To explain this difference, consider a situation where a direct site is experiencing timeouts. Communications with the device is attempted according to two parameters: **Connect Attempts** (an advanced site property in the Management Console) and **Maximum Attempts Multiple** (an advanced device property in the Management Console). Multiplying the values of these two properties determines the number of attempts made to re-establish communications with the device.

For instance, if **Connect Attempts** is set to "1" and **Maximum Attempts Multiple** is set to 3, the device will go offline after 3 attempts (i.e., 1 x 3).

The "Total Errors" statistic increases by one every time ION Site Service detects a timeout. However, the "Bad Responses" statistic only reports a problem if the device goes offline (i.e., when **Connect Attempts** and **Maximum Attempts Multiple** are exceeded).

Using the previous example, consider the case where four timeouts occurred and the device went offline. In this case, "Total Errors" increases by four, while "Bad Responses" only increases by one. If only two timeouts occurred, "Total Errors" would increase by two, while "Bad Responses" would not change.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Additional Commands

The following sections describe additional display options and shortcut menus available in Diagnostics Viewer.

Diagnostic Details

In the tabs on the diagnostics information pane, double-click a row to display its **Diagnostic Details** screen. This displays the diagnostic information for the selected item only.

Use the **Previous** and **Next** buttons to view the details of other rows in that tab of the diagnostics information pane.

To copy information to the clipboard, select the rows you want to copy, then press **CTRL+C**.

Diagnostics Information Pane Shortcut Menu Options

Right-click in the diagnostics information pane to display a shortcut menu. The following table lists all the commands available (though not all displays provide all the commands listed):

Right-click Option	Description
Update	Refreshes the information in the diagnostic table.
Reset	Resets the information in the diagnostic table (not available in the Communications Server Diagnostics display).
Copy All	Copies all selected information to the clipboard.
Auto Scroll	Enabled by default, this option is only available in the Console Messages tab of the Communications Server Diagnostics display. This option automatically scrolls and selects the latest console message. Clear this option to disable scrolling (i.e., select and view an older console message without jumping to the latest one when Diagnostics Viewer refreshes).
Options	Displays the Options dialog box where you can change the diagnostics refresh rate. Note that changing this value can affect ION Enterprise performance.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Device Upgrader

Use Device Upgrader to upgrade the firmware on one or more ION meters of the same type in a single session. Supervisor level access is required to upgrade devices.

To reduce the risk of upgrade errors, make sure the computer power option is set to always stay on and screensavers are disabled. If you are using a laptop, plug it into a wall outlet and set the power option to "do nothing" if the lid is closed.

⚠ CAUTION

If you have data in the meter you want to keep, make sure you upload and/or save it before upgrading. Stored data in the meter's memory is completely erased during a firmware upgrade. This data includes waveforms, data recorders, min and max values, and integrator values (e.g., kWh).

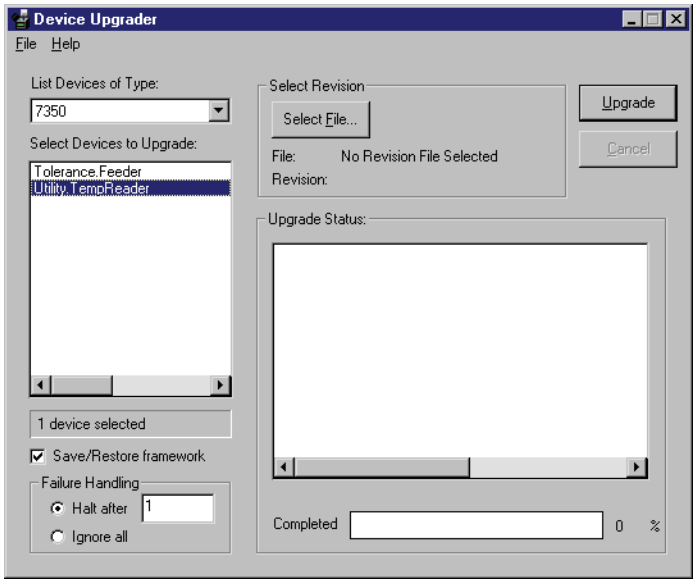
Using Device Upgrader

1. Obtain the applicable upgrade (.upg) files for your device from the website or from Technical Support.
2. Save the files in a folder accessible on the computer.
3. Stop the ION Log Inserter Service and ION Virtual Processor Service.
4. Start Management Console.
5. Click **Tools > System > Device Upgrader**. Type your username and password in the log in prompt. A dialog box displays with recommendations and warnings regarding the upgrade operation. After reading the recommendations and warnings, click **OK**.

   If you need to implement any changes because of the recommendations and warning, close Device Upgrader, make the changes then re-open Device Upgrader and continue.

   The **Device Upgrader** window appears.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



6. Select the device type of the device(s) you want to upgrade from the **List Devices of Type** box.
7. Select the name(s) of the device(s) you want to upgrade in the **Select Devices to Upgrade** box.
8. In the Select Revision section, click **Select File**. Locate and select the upgrade (.upg) file that you saved in step 2, then click **Open**.
9. Select or clear the **Save/Restore framework** check box (selected by default). If selected, this keeps a copy of your current framework template during the upgrade. After the firmware upgrade is complete, Device Upgrader restores your framework template.

NOTE

The Device Upgrader loads new meter firmware that does not contain any framework templates. If you want to preserve customizations you have made to your device framework, make sure "Save/Restore framework" is selected. However, if you intend to replace the existing meter framework with a new one (e.g., a new default meter template that you have downloaded), clear "Save/Restore framework".

10. If you are upgrading multiple devices, specify in the Failure Handling area how the Device Upgrader responds to an unsuccessful upgrade:
    - Select **Halt After**, then enter a number in the box to specify how many attempts Device Upgrader should make before stopping during a failed upgrade. By default, the utility is set to stop after the first failed upgrade.
    - Select **Ignore All** to attempt to upgrade all of the selected devices regardless of the number of devices that fail to upgrade.
11. Click **Upgrade** to upgrade the selected devices.

    The Upgrade Status box shows the stages of the upgrade process. The completed progress bar indicates what percentage of the upgrade is complete. Each completed upgrade is listed in the **Upgrade Status** box.
12. Restart the ION Log Inserter Service and ION Virtual Processor Service.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Firmware Upgrade Error Codes

The following table describes the various error codes that may occur when you upgrade your device's firmware.

Error Code	Description
0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9	Indicates a negative acknowledgment to a request. Contact Technical Support for assistance.
100	Device timed out while downloading firmware. Probable causes: a) poor communication or b) the device stopped functioning.
101, 102, 103, 104, 105	Indicates a bad response to a request. Contact Technical Support for assistance.
106	Device Upgrader was unable to prepare the device to accept new firmware. Try to upgrade the device again. Contact Technical Support for assistance if the problem persists.
107	Device Upgrader was unable to verify the device's new firmware. Try to upgrade the device again. Contact Technical Support for assistance if the error persists.
108	Device Upgrader was unable to download a firmware packet. Try to upgrade the device again. Contact Technical Support for assistance if the error persists.
109	Device Upgrader was unable to retrieve the device framework. Probable causes: a) time out or b) device not functioning.
110	Device Upgrader was unable to retrieve the device's firmware revision. Probable causes: a) time out, b) device not functioning, or c) cannot access the device's firmware revision register.
150	Device Upgrader cannot save the device framework to the file <device_name>.conf. Make sure the ION Enterprise\config\upgrade directory exists and that you have write permissions.
151, 155	The Device Upgrader failed to successfully upgrade a device and left a <device_name>.conf file. Probable cause: you are attempting to upgrade a different device than the one that the Device Upgrader previously failed.
152	The information in the file <device_name>.conf is corrupted or unrecognizable by the Device Upgrader. Contact Technical Support for assistance.
154	Device Upgrader was unable to restore the device setup. Probable causes: a) time out or b) device not functioning.
156	Device Upgrader was unable to restore the device framework completely to the file <device_name>.conf. This error is most likely caused by a full hard drive.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Remote Modem Setup

Use Remote Modem Setup to preconfigure dialup modems that will be connected to meters at remote locations. Hardware-based and software-based (WinModems) modems are supported.

Remote Modem Setup provides access to a database that contains configuration data for a variety of modems you can pick from. Remote Modem Setup also provides direct access to your modem so you can customize settings and troubleshoot its operation.

Preliminary Setup

Follow the instructions in your modem's documentation to set up and connect the modem to one of your computer's serial ports. Select a port that the ION Enterprise Communications Server is not using.

Using Remote Modem Setup

1. Start Management Console.
2. Click **Tools > System > Remote Modem Setup**. The **Remote Modem Setup** dialog box appears.
3. Set the Port to the serial communications port that the computer uses to communicate with (and set up) the modem. Set the Baud Rate to match the modem's baud rate.

NOTE

To reduce possible communication issues, set the computer, modems and meters to the same baud rate.

4. Set the following properties for the remote modem:
   - Select the type of modem from the Type box.
   - Set the Site Baud Rate.
   - To set the modem to answer after a specified number of rings, select **Auto Answer**, then type the appropriate number in the Number of Rings box.
   - To save the modem configuration data in the modem's onboard memory, select **Store Profile**. This feature allows the modem to revert to the saved settings after a power failure. Clear **Store Profile** to disable this feature.
   - To turn on the modem's internal speaker, select **Speaker On**, then select a setting from the Volume list. Clear **Speaker On** to disable this feature.
5. Click **Send** to save the settings to the modem.

   If there are DIP switch settings required for the modem that is being configured, a message displays with instructions on which switches to turn on or off. Set the DIP switches on the modem as instructed.

The modem is now ready to be used at the remote power monitoring site.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Virtual Processor Setup

The Virtual Processor (VIP) is the ION Enterprise service ("ION Virtual Processor Service") that provides coordinated data collection and aggregation, control, and mathematical analysis of power monitoring system data from groups of metering or similar intelligent devices. Use Virtual Processor Setup to configure a Virtual Processor Modbus Service for defining sites and devices in a Modbus network, and to set up the communications port for it. Virtual Processor Setup can also be used to improve the performance of the ION Virtual Processor Service by modifying its global operating parameters.

See "Virtual Processor Service" on page 244 for application examples using the Virtual Processor.

Configuring the Virtual Processor's Modbus Service

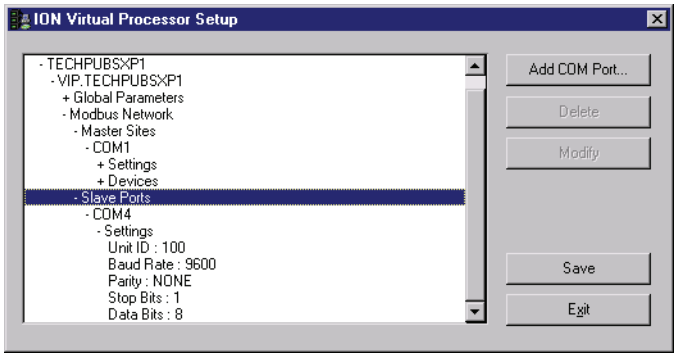
NOTE

This information is provided for the benefit of customers who have legacy implementations of Modbus communications using the Virtual Processor. Users that are setting up new Modbus communications should refer to "Modbus Device Importer" on page 277. Modbus support in the Virtual Processor will be removed in a future version of ION Enterprise.

When setting up your Modbus network, make sure that your Modbus port is different from the port that connects to your ION devices. The Virtual Processor requires a communications port for Modbus separate from any communications port defined as a site in the Management Console.

Setting up a Virtual Processor's Modbus Network

1. Start Management Console.
2. Click **Tools > System > ION Virtual Processor Setup**. The Virtual Processor Setup utility ("VIP.ComputerName" where ComputerName is the name of the workstation) is displayed as an item in the tree view.



   Double-click an item to expand or collapse it.

   The buttons available vary depending on the item selected in the tree.

3. Expand **Modbus Network** to show "Master Sites" and "Slave Ports".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Modbus Master Ethernet Site

1. Select **Master Sites** then click **Add Site**.
2. Select **Ethernet (RTU)** then type the following in the appropriate fields:
   - **TCP/IP Address:** the TCP/IP address of the Master site or gateway
   - **TCP/IP Port:** the TCP/IP port number used to connect to the COM port used by the Modbus network (for example, TCP/IP port 7802 connects to an EtherGate device's COM2 port).
3. Click **OK**.

NOTE

Do not use 502 for the TCP/IP port. Modbus/TCP packets use the TCP/IP protocol and are sent to this registered port number. At this time, the Virtual Processor does not support Modbus/TCP (MBAP).

Adding a Modbus Master Serial Site

1. Select **Master Sites** then click **Add Site**.
2. Select **Serial Site**, then set **COM Port** to the serial port of your computer that you want to assign as your Modbus Master. The Virtual Processor's Modbus Import and Modbus Export modules then use this COM port to communicate to the Modbus slave devices.
3. Click **OK**.

NOTE

The COM port used to define a Master Site must be different from the COM port used for connecting to ION devices.

Configuring the Modbus Master Site Parameters

Select the site and expand the tree until the parameters under **Settings** are displayed. Select the parameter you want to change, and then click **Modify <setting>** (where <setting> is the setting selected).

- **Transmit Delay:** The amount of time the Virtual Processor waits between sending out requests. The supported range is from 10 to 60000 milliseconds.

NOTE

For Ethernet sites, specifying too small a value for Transmit Delay may overload the network.

- **Receive Timeout:** The time period the Virtual Processor allows for establishing communications. The supported range is from 100 to 60000 milliseconds.

NOTE

For Ethernet sites, the protocol used is Modbus RTU which does not identify packets. Therefore, specifying too small a value for Receive Timeout may cause timeout errors, which could result in packet mix-up. Specify a value that avoids timeouts.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Baud Rate (serial sites only):** The Baud rate used for Modbus communications to serial sites. Supported values are 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, 115200.
- **Parity (serial sites only):** This setting specifies whether or not parity is active (and if it is active, the type of parity; i.e., Odd, Even, Mark, or Space). Parity refers to a technique of checking whether data has been lost or overwritten when it is moved from one place in storage to another, or when transmitted between devices and/or computers.
- **Stop Bits (serial sites only):** The number of stop bits supported by the site. Supported values are a minimum of 1, 1.5 and 2. Stop bits signal the end of a unit of transmission on a serial line.
- **Data Bits (serial sites only):** The number of data bits (i.e., bits that contain information or data) supported by the site. Supported values range from a minimum of 4 and a maximum of 8.

Adding Modbus Devices

1. Select the Modbus Master site to which you want to add a Modbus device. Expand the tree to display Settings and Devices. Select **Devices**, then click **Add Device**. The **Add Modbus Device(s)** dialog box appears.
2. Enter the **Name** and **Unit ID** of the Modbus device in the appropriate fields. For Ethernet devices, set Unit ID to **100**. The Name must be unique among all the sites serviced by the Virtual Processor. The Unit ID must be unique inside a given site. Click **Add**.
3. Repeat the previous step to add more Modbus devices to the same site. When you have finished connecting all the Modbus devices to that site, click **OK**.

NOTE

A Modbus device name must start with a letter, followed by letters, numbers and/or underscores. The Modbus device name must not contain spaces. The supported range for a Modbus device Unit ID is 1 to 247. Do not use "0" (zero) as it is reserved for broadcast messages.

Renaming a Modbus Device

1. Select the Modbus device you want to rename. Click **Rename Device.** The **Modbus Device Name** dialog box appears.
2. Type the new name, then click **OK**.

NOTE

If you rename or delete Modbus devices, all Modbus Export or Modbus Import modules that previously referred to that renamed or deleted Modbus device are mapped to "not_a_valid_device" when you restart the Virtual Processor. Designer displays these modules as offline (outlined in red).

Deleting a Modbus Device

1. Select the Modbus device you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete Device** then click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Communications Port for the Modbus Slave

TIP

If you want to use ION data in your Modbus network, you need to convert the data to Modbus. Use Designer to open the Virtual Processor node and create Modbus Slave modules, then set them up to map the registers and apply the proper conversion from ION data to Modbus.

1. Expand **Modbus Network** to display Master Sites and Slave Ports. Select **Slave Ports**, then click **Add COM Port**. The **Modbus Port/Site** dialog box appears.
2. Set the **COM Port** to the port you want to use as a Modbus Slave port (this is the port that the Modbus Master uses to read Modbus data from the Virtual Processor's Modbus Slave modules). Click **OK**.

NOTE

The Modbus Slave port must not be set to the same port as any ION or Modbus Master ports.

3. Expand the COM port you have just added to display Settings.
4. Expand **Settings** to show the items below it.
5. Select **Unit ID** then click **Modify Unit ID**. The **Modbus Slave Unit ID** dialog box appears.
6. Enter the Modbus Slave device unit ID. Click **OK**.
7. If you want to modify the Baud Rate, select Baud Rate then click **Modify Baud Rate**. Select the new baud rate from the dropdown list, then click **OK**.
8. If necessary, configure the Parity, Stop Bits and Data Bits.

Changing Port Assignment for a Modbus Master or Slave

1. Select the port you want to reassign, and then click **Rename Port**. The **Modbus Port/Site** dialog box appears.
2. From the dropdown list, select the port you want to reassign to the Modbus master or slave (see "Adding a Modbus Master Ethernet Site" on page 76 or "Adding a Communications Port for the Modbus Slave" on page 78).

Deleting a Modbus Master Site or Slave Port

NOTE

Deleting a Modbus Master Site also deletes all devices connected to it.

1. Click on the site or port you want to delete, and then click **Delete Port** or **Delete Site** (depending on the item selected).
2. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Final Steps After Saving and Exiting

When you have finished using Virtual Processor Setup, click **Save** to save your changes, then click **Exit** to close the window.

In order for the changes to take effect, you must stop then restart the ION Virtual Processor Service.

Modifying the Global Parameters

Typically you do not need to change the default Virtual Processor's **Global Parameters**. However, the settings in the following table can be modified to try to optimize system performance. To view and select the settings, expand Global Parameters.

Global Parameter	Value Range	Description	Notes
Module Update Period	50 to 1000 ms	The interval at which ION modules inside the Virtual Processor are updated.	Frequent module updates contribute to the workstation's processor load. By increasing the Module Update Period, you reduce the number of times a module executes in a given time period.
Configuration Saver Period	10 to 600 seconds	The interval at which the Virtual Processor writes its configuration data to the workstation's hard disk.	Increasing the Configuration Saver Period significantly reduces the processor load if you have a large Virtual Processor configuration file.
Client Polling Period	500 to 300000 ms	The interval at which the Virtual Processor gets information from other nodes in the network (for example, another Virtual Processor or a device).	You can increase the period for less critical Virtual Processor applications and reduce the period for more critical applications.
Server Polling Period	200 to 1440000 ms	The interval at which the Virtual Processor responds to requests for information from client nodes such as Vista or the Log Inserter.	Reducing this value increases the rate at which these responses are sent; however, this can also increase network traffic.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Time of Use Editor

Time of Use (TOU) schedules created with the Time of Use Editor are designed to be used with Web Reporter. When you use a TOU schedule in a report, the report data is presented according to the information you set up in the schedule. See "Energy Cost" on page 176 for information on the Energy Cost Report.

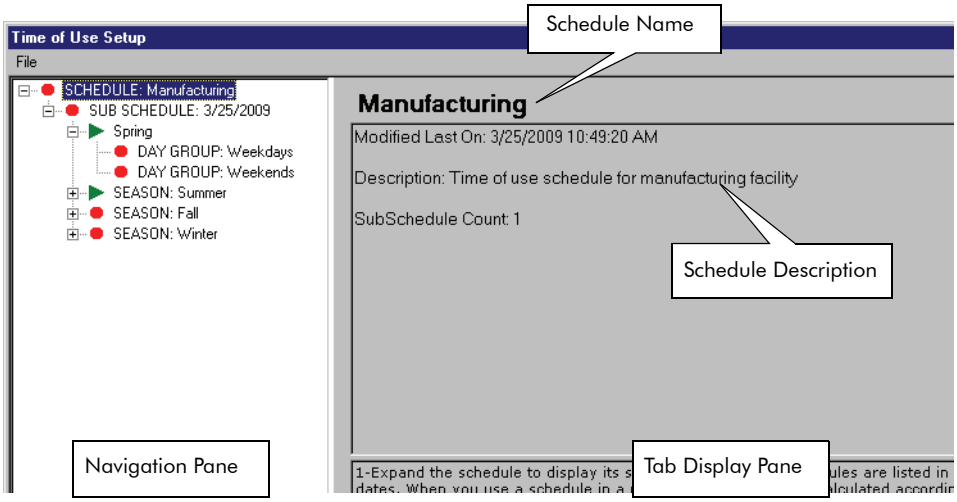
A typical TOU has On Peak, Off Peak and Shoulder periods. Since rate schedules vary not only by day and week, but also by season, the TOU schedules can be set up to match your precise needs.

To configure TOU schedules for use with Designer, see "Time of Use (TOU) Program Management" on page 241.

Opening the Time of Use Editor

To access the Time of Use Editor, select **Tools > System > Time of Use Editor** in Management Console.

Time of Use Editor Interface



Use the navigation pane to navigate through the schedules, access the right-click menus for schedules and sub-schedules, and select an item to display associated tabs in the tab display pane.

Overview: Creating a TOU Schedule

To create a TOU schedule, you need to:

1. Add a schedule. See "Adding or Editing a Schedule" on page 81.
2. Add a sub-schedule, if you need more than one sub-schedule. See "Adding or Editing a Sub-Schedule" on page 82.
3. Add a season, if you need more than one. See "Configuring Seasons" on page 83.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

4. Configure special days (i.e., holidays) to include in your TOU schedule. See "Adding Special Days" on page 85.
5. Add day groups, if you need groups other than the default day groups. See "Configuring Day Groups" on page 86.
6. Add TOU names, if you need names other than the default names. See "Defining TOU Names" on page 87.
7. Assign TOU periods to TOU names. "Defining TOU Periods" on page 88.

To view a sample schedule, right-click in the navigation pane and select **Import Schedule**. Select SampleSchedule.tou from the ..\ION Enterprise\system\etc folder and click **Open**.

Adding or Editing a Schedule

This section describes how to add a blank schedule, and import or copy an existing schedule.

Adding a Blank Schedule

1. Select **File > New Schedule**. The **Add a Schedule** dialog box appears.
2. Type a name and description for the schedule. Click the arrow beside the effective date to bring up a calendar where you can select the effective date of the schedule.
3. Click **OK**. That schedule name appears in the list in the navigation pane.

Copying an Existing Schedule

1. In the navigation pane, right-click the schedule that you want to copy.
2. Select **Save as New Schedule**. The **Save as New Schedule** dialog box appears.
3. Enter a name and description for the new schedule.
4. Click **OK**. The new schedule appears in the navigation pane with the attributes of the copied schedule.

Importing a Schedule

1. Place the schedule that you want to import into a folder that can be accessed from the computer.
2. In the navigation pane, right-click an empty area of the navigation pane then select Import Schedule. The **Open** dialog box appears.
3. Navigate to the folder where you placed the schedule. Select the schedule and click **Open**.

   The schedule is imported with the extension "_imported". For example, a schedule named "ScheduleA" becomes "ScheduleA_imported".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Exporting a Schedule

To export a schedule to use in another TOU installation:

1. Right-click on the schedule you want to export in the navigation pane. Click **Export**. The **Save As** dialog box appears.
2. Select the folder where you want to save the schedule.
3. Enter a schedule name in the File name box.
4. Click **Save**.

   The schedule is saved with the extension ".tou". For example, "ScheduleB" becomes "ScheduleB.tou".

Editing an Existing Schedule

To edit a schedule name or description:

1. From the navigation pane, right-click a schedule name then click **Edit Schedule**. The **Edit a Schedule** dialog box appears.
2. Change the schedule name or description.

   To change the effective date, you must make the change to the sub-schedule(s). See "Editing a Sub-Schedule Effective Date" on page 83.
3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Schedule

To delete a schedule, right-click the schedule name in the navigation pane then select **Delete Schedule**. This deletes the entire schedule, including any sub-schedules.

Adding or Editing a Sub-Schedule

When you add the basic schedule, it contains one sub-schedule, with the effective date (start date) you entered for the schedule. To add additional sub-schedules with alternate effective dates, follow the instructions in the following sections.

Expand a schedule to display its sub-schedule(s). Sub-schedules are listed in order of their effective dates.

TIP

If you want to have more than one sub-schedule with the same seasons, day groups, TOU periods, etc., configure the first sub-schedule then right-click on it and select Save as New SubSchedule.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Blank Sub-Schedule

1. Right-click the schedule name and select **New SubSchedule**. The **New SubSchedule** dialog box appears.
2. Click the arrow beside the effective date to bring up a calendar where you can choose an effective date for the new sub-schedule.
3. Click **OK**.

   The sub-schedule displays in the navigation pane. Continue configuring the sub-schedule by adding seasons and day groups.

To add a new sub-schedule that has the same settings as an existing sub-schedule, see "Copying an Existing Sub-Schedule", below.

Copying an Existing Sub-Schedule

1. Right-click the sub-schedule that you want to copy and select **Save as New SubSchedule**. The **New SubSchedule** dialog box appears.
2. Click the arrow beside the effective date to bring up a calendar where you can choose an effective date for the new sub-schedule.
3. Click **OK**. The new sub-schedule displays in the navigation pane with the same attributes (other than effective date) of the sub-schedule you copied.

Editing a Sub-Schedule Effective Date

1. Right-click the sub-schedule for which you want to change the effective date, then select **Edit Effective Date**. The **Edit SubSchedule Effective Date** dialog box appears.
2. Click the arrow beside the effective date to bring up a calendar where you can choose an effective date for the new sub-schedule.
3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Sub-Schedule

To delete a sub-schedule, right-click the sub-schedule name in the navigation pane and select **Delete**. This also deletes all seasons in that sub-schedule (and any day groups, special days, etc., that they contain).

Configuring Seasons

Use seasons to create timeframes for presenting data in reports. A newly created schedule has a single season, called All Year. Expand a sub-schedule to view its seasons.

If you only need one season (All Year), you can skip the steps below and go to configuring special days.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Seasons

Use the Define a Season tab to set up or edit the time spans for each season.

NOTE

A date can only belong to one season; you cannot overlap dates in one season with dates in another.

1. From the navigation pane, select the sub-schedule to which the season belongs.
2. In the tab display pane, select the **Define a Season** tab.

   After you add a sub-schedule, the tab displays only one season (All Year) that covers the entire year. The season is listed at the top of the tab, and the calendar that shows the days and months that belong to that season is full. To make room to add other seasons, you must edit the All Year season.
3. Select All Year from the **Define a Season** tab and click **Edit**. The **Edit a Season** dialog box appears.
4. In the Season Name field, type the name of one of the seasons you want to define (for example, Summer).
5. Set the Start Date and End Date for the season. You can specify fixed start and end dates (i.e., 12/31) or relative start and end dates (i.e., the last Saturday of October).

   Fixed Date: Click on the month or day portion of the date then either type the new date or use the up and down arrows beside the date to edit it.

   Relative Date: Select the day and month from the dropdown lists.

   For the end date, select the Time of Day the season ends (Start of Day or End of Day). If you select Start of Day, the season ends at 12:00:00 AM on the selected day; if you select End of Day, the season ends at 12:00:00 AM on the next day so there are no gaps in the schedule.

NOTE

If you use relative dates, you can configure a schedule that may become invalid in future years. Be careful when you configure the schedule that there will be no missing or overlapping days in the schedule in future years. For example, rather than scheduling one season to end on the 1st Sunday in June and the next to start on the 1st Monday in June, it is better to schedule the first season to end at Start of Day on the 1st Sunday in June and the next season to start on the 1st Sunday in June.

6. If this is a split season (where there is a gap between two parts of the season), select the Split Season check box and add a second sets of dates. For example, winter is typically a split season because it occurs in the first and last months of the year.
7. Click **OK**.

   The calendar on the **Define a Season** tab now shows one season with the rest of the year unassigned.
8. Click **Add** to create additional seasons. Repeat steps 4 to 6 to name the season and define the start and end dates.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

Do not leave any dates unassigned: unassigned dates are not calculated in the reports.

Editing a Season

1. On the **Define a Season** tab, select the season you want to edit then click **Edit**. The **Edit a Season** dialog box appears.
2. Make the changes you require then click **OK**.

Deleting a Season

To delete a season, select the season in the **Define a Season** tab then click **Delete**. This also deletes the day groups and TOU periods configured for that season.

Adding Special Days

After you define a sub-schedule, you need to set up holidays and other special days. You can define holidays that occur on the same date every year or at some other regular interval (such as the third Thursday in November). You can also define special days, such as inventory days, that might occur regularly and require special treatment in reports.

Use the Define Special Days tab to set up holidays and other special days.

1. In the navigation pane, select the sub-schedule for which you want to define special days.
2. In the tab display pane, select the **Define Special Days** tab.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add a Special Day** dialog box appears.
4. Type a name for the special day in the Name field.
5. Select the frequency of the day:
   - **One time only**: Enter the date for a single day that does not repeat in future years; for example, a special day for your organization that does not repeat every year.
   - **Repeat yearly**: Enter the date; for example, a holiday that occurs on the same date every year.
   - **Repeat on**: Complete the fields in the Repeat On section to define how the day repeats and in which months it occurs. Select whether is occurs on a particular date of the selected month(s) (Day) or a relative day (i.e., Last Saturday) in the selected month(s).
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 to add additional special days.
7. Click **OK** to save your changes and return to the **Define Special Days** tab.

See "Configuring Day Groups" on page 86 for instructions on how to apply special days to a sub-schedule.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Special Day

To delete a special day, select the special day in the **Define a Special Day** tab then click **Delete**.

Configuring Day Groups

Day groups define how days of the week are divided into groups.

Day groups can include:

- days of the week
- special days, such as holidays or other specially designated days (such as inventory days)

Default settings are weekdays (Monday to Friday) and weekends (Saturday and Sunday) but you can add additional groups. There can be a maximum of 47 day groups in any season.

Make sure that all days have been accounted for since unaccounted time is not included in any reports.

Adding a Day Group

Before you add a day group, make sure that you have defined seasons and special days for the sub-schedule.

1. In the navigation pane, select the season for which you want to define day groups. The **Define DayGroups** tab appears in the tab display pane.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a DayGroup** dialog box appears.

   If the Add button is unavailable, there are no free days to add to a day group. A day can only belong to one day group. To add another day group, you must first remove days from an existing day group.
3. Type a name for the day group.
4. Select one of the following options:
   - **Day of week**: Select the check box(es) for the day(s) you want to include. A day can belong to only one day group; if a day is unavailable, it already belongs to an existing group. If all days are unavailable, you can only include special days in this group unless you remove days from another day group.
   - **Special Day(s) Only**: Select the special day in the Include Special Days list then click to select or clear the day. Days with a check mark beside them are included in the day group. You can only include a special day in one day group.
5. Click **OK**. The name is added to the day group list.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Editing a Day Group

1. On the **Define DayGroups** tab, select the day group you want to change, then click **Edit**. The **Edit a Day Group** dialog box appears.
2. Make the changes you require then click **OK**.

Deleting a Day Group

To delete a day group, select the day group in the **Define DayGroups** tab then click **Delete**. When you delete a day group, you also delete the TOU periods configured for that day group. If you add a day group again, you will need to reconfigure the TOU periods.

Configuring TOU Names and TOU Periods

When you run reports, the reports calculate and display data according to the information you enter in the Define TOU Periods and Define TOU Names tabs.

NOTE

You need to define TOU names and periods for each schedule that you create. Be sure to apply a TOU name to every square on the calendar. Unaccounted time causes your reports to display inaccurate information.

Defining TOU Names

A TOU name is a designation that is used to differentiate billing rates. Three TOU Names are already defined: On Peak, Off Peak and Partial Peak. You can edit or delete these names, or add new names.

Defining TOU Names

1. In the navigation pane, select the day group for which you want to define TOU names then select the **Define TOU Names** tab.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a TOU Name** dialog box appears.
3. Type the TOU name you want to add then click **OK**. The TOU name is added to the list of TOU names.

Editing an Existing TOU Name

1. Select the TOU Name in the list on the **Define TOU Names** tab and click **Edit**. The **Edit a TOU Name** dialog box appears.
2. Type the new name in the TOU name field.
3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a TOU Name

Select the TOU name in the list on the **Define TOU Names** tab and click **Delete**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

If you delete a TOU name, the TOU periods assigned to the name are replaced with "Unaccounted". Deleting a TOU name in a particular schedule affects all sub-schedules in that schedule.

Defining TOU Periods

A TOU period is the time span within the 24-hour period to which you apply a TOU name (such as 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. for On Peak). You must have TOU names defined before you can associate TOU periods with those names.

Two TOU names are already defined: On Peak and Off Peak. You can edit or delete these names, or add new names.

Adding TOU Periods

Select a day groups to set up the TOU time periods (on-peak, off-peak, etc.) for that group.

1. In the navigation pane, select the day group for which you want to define a TOU period then select the **Define TOU Periods** tab.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a Time Period** dialog box appears.
3. In the Start Time field, type the time that the period begins, or select the hours and minutes and use the up and down arrows to set the start time.
4. In the Stop Time field, type the time that the period begins, or select the hours and minutes and use the up and down arrows to set the stop time.
5. From the Time of Use Name dropdown list, select the TOU name to associate with the time period.
6. Click **OK**.

To add a split time period (i.e., a time period that spans from 19:00 to 6:00), you must add two separate time periods and associate them with the same time of use name.

If you want to expand a time period into time that already belongs to another period, you must first edit the other time period to clear the time.

Continue adding time periods until the 24 hour period is filled. Unaccounted time blocks cause your reports to display inaccurate information.

Editing TOU Periods

1. Highlight the period you want to edit and click **Edit**. The **Edit a Time Period** dialog box appears.
2. Make the required changes then click **OK**.

Deleting TOU Periods

To delete a period, highlight the period and click **Delete**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
4

Vista

Vista is the ION Enterprise component that displays and controls your power monitoring/management system.

For information on starting and logging on to Vista or ending your Vista session, see "Getting Started" on page 19.

In This Section

- "The Vista Interface" on page 90
- "Vista User Diagrams" on page 93
- "Monitoring Your System in Vista" on page 96
- "Viewing Real-Time Data" on page 98
- "Viewing Logged Data" on page 100
- "Adding a Global Event Log Viewer" on page 104
- "Acknowledging Alarms" on page 105
- "Controlling System Functions" on page 107
- "Plotting Logged Data" on page 108
- "The Log View Plotter Interface" on page 109
- "Customizing the Log View Plotter Display" on page 121
- "Overlaying Curves in the Log View Plotter" on page 125
- "Creating and Customizing a User Diagram" on page 127
- "Adding a Diagram Object to a User Diagram" on page 128
- "Customizing a Diagram Object" on page 133
- "Linking a Diagram Object to a Data Source" on page 146
- "Querying the Database" on page 148
- "Customizing a Diagram Window" on page 155

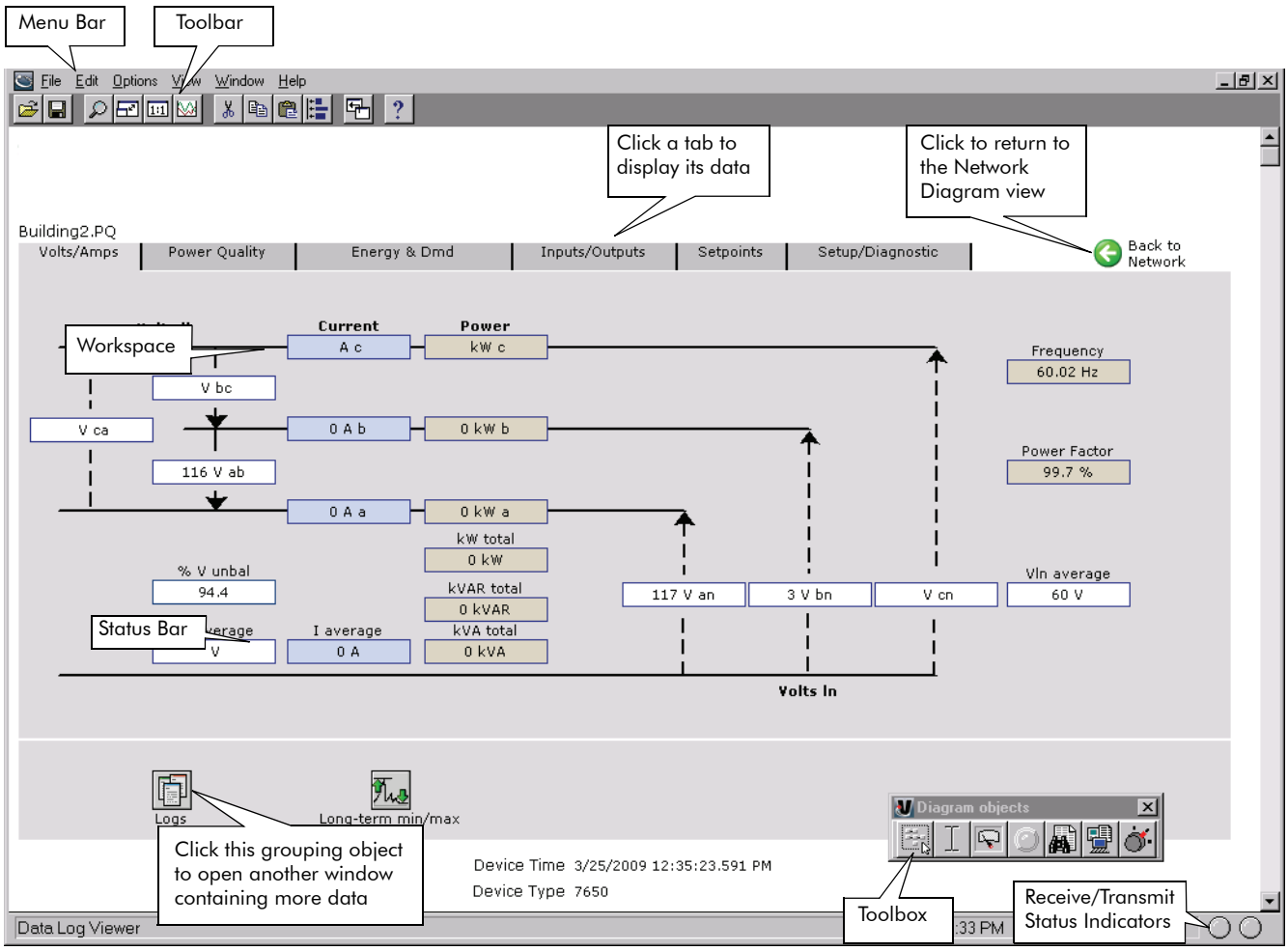
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Vista Interface

The Vista interface consists of a main screen with a title bar, a menu bar, a toolbar, a workspace, a status bar and (in Edit mode) a toolbox.

For information on opening or generating a Vista, see "Generating, Opening and Closing a User Diagram" on page 94.

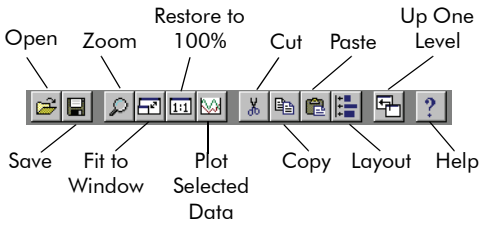
The Vista interface with a user diagram showing realtime values



Toolbar

The toolbar offers quick access to the commands that are used most frequently. Each command on the toolbar is also available from the menus.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



Zoom

Select **View > Zoom In** or click the Zoom button to change the mouse pointer to a crosshair. Use this pointer to drag an outline around the area you want to enlarge.

Restore to 100%

Select **View > Restore to 100%** or click the Restore to 100% button to return to the normal view.

Fit to Window

Select **View > Fit to Window** or click the Fit to Window button to force the user diagram to fit in the current window.

Up One Level

Select **File > Up One Level** or click the Up One Level button to return to the previously displayed window. Note that this also closes the current window. If you want to be prompted when you reach the top level of a diagram, make sure **Options > Browse closes active window** is selected.

Workspace

The main area in the center of the Vista screen is the workspace. The workspace is used to display information such as user diagrams and data and event viewers.

Status Bar

The status bar displays:

- the status line, which describes any active processes and provides a brief description of the currently selected command or toolbar button.
- the current time on the workstation.
- a progress indicator bar.
- two communication status lights.

Toolbox

In Edit mode, the toolbox also appears on the screen. You can add objects to the user diagram using the toolbox. See “Creating and Customizing a User Diagram” on page 127 for more information on the toolbox and Edit mode.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Other Display Features

Vista offers several display features to assist you when viewing a user diagram. Some of these are accessible through the toolbar and menu options (see "Toolbar" on page 90). Those only accessible through menu options are:

Browse Closes Active Window

Select **Options > Browse closes active window** to have each window that you open replace the previous one. This option is selected by default. Without this option selected, any previously opened windows remain open.

Arrange All

Select **Window > Arrange All** to tile all open windows in the workspace.

Display Mode and Edit Mode

There are two display modes in Vista, which affect how you navigate a user diagram. Whether or not the toolbox is shown indicates the mode you are in: if the toolbox is open, you are in edit mode; if it is closed, you are in display mode.

- **Display** mode allows you to monitor your system, view system data, and control some aspects of your system. In Display mode, **single-click** objects to view the information they contain or perform their associated action.
- **Edit** mode allows you to configure the appearance and function of user diagrams and diagram objects. In Edit mode, **double-click** objects to view the information they contain or perform their associated action. **Right-click** on objects to view configuration options. See "Creating and Customizing a User Diagram" on page 127 and "Customizing a Diagram Object" on page 133 for more information.

When instructed to **click** a diagram object, either single-click or double-click, depending on the mode you are in.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Vista User Diagrams

This section explains how to use Vista user diagrams to view real-time and logged data from your power-monitoring system. The information that you obtain from your ION Enterprise network is represented graphically in a user diagram.

What is a User Diagram?

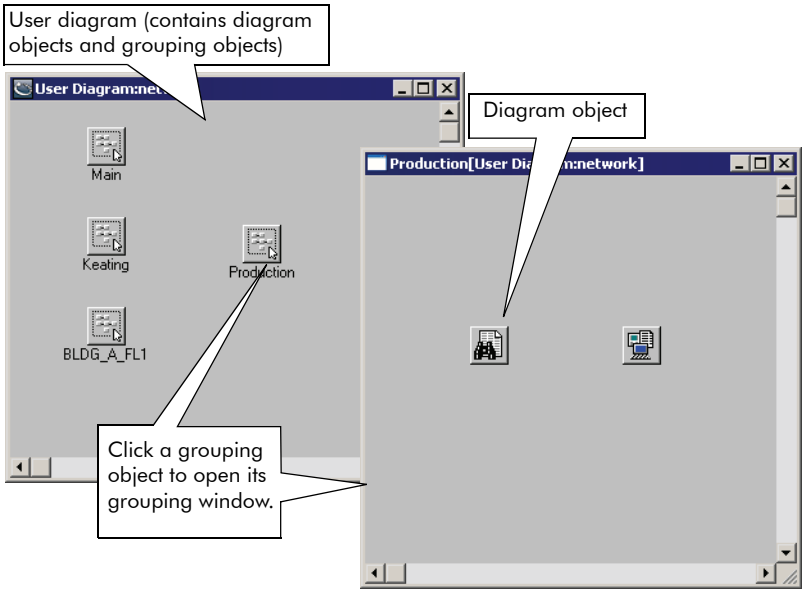
A user diagram is a configurable display that consists of two main elements:

- **Diagram objects** are configurable graphic icons that display your system information. Each diagram object displays a single piece of information from somewhere in your power monitoring network. In some cases, diagram objects are stored within grouping windows.
- **Grouping object:** In some cases, a user diagram stores related information within a grouping object. Click on a grouping object to open a grouping window and display its contents.

NOTE

To configure a grouping object to open a grouping window, see "Specifying Action for Numeric, Status, or Grouping Objects" on page 142.

- **Grouping windows** are a type of folder or "sub-window" that contain diagram objects. Vista uses grouping windows to logically organize diagram objects within a user diagram. When closed, a grouping window is usually represented by a grouping object icon.



TIP

It is better to use grouping objects to open other user diagrams rather than to open grouping windows. Large numbers of grouping windows in a user diagram can slow the performance of Vista.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

You can create as many user diagrams as you want and edit each one to suit your needs. You can share user diagrams with multiple users over your network, and users can view them simultaneously and share the same information. For more information on creating user diagrams, see "Creating and Customizing a User Diagram" on page 127.

Default User Diagrams

Vista provides a set of pre-configured user diagrams that you can use to display data. These default diagrams provide a standard set of options that you can use to access your device's most commonly required functions.

The default diagram displays real-time data. It includes a simple power system illustration that displays the various real-time parameters measured by the device.

Generating, Opening and Closing a User Diagram

A user diagram is identified by its ".dgm" extension. You can generate, open, and close user diagrams as needed.

Generating a Network Diagram

The network diagram displays your entire power-monitoring system by linking to individual default user diagrams that display data from each device in your system. When you generate a network diagram, Vista automatically locates all devices in your system and displays them. This diagram is saved with the default name "network.dgm".

1. Select **File > Generate Network Diagram**.

   The network diagram appears in the workspace containing icons that represent groups of devices on your system.
2. Click on one of the grouping objects to open a window and display the node icons contained within.
3. Click a node icon to display the user diagram for the associated device.
4. Save the network diagram.

NOTE

Regenerating a network diagram and saving it overwrites the previously saved (network.dgm) file.

Opening a User Diagram

To open a user diagram:

1. Select **File > Open**.
2. Navigate to the user diagram you want to open and select it from the **Open Diagram** dialog box.
3. Click **Open** to open the selected user diagram.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Specifying the User Diagram that Opens for a Given User

To set a specific Vista workspace and set of diagrams to open every time a given user logs on:

1. Log on to Vista using the particular user's logon credentials.
2. Organize Vista to appear as you want it to appear on startup.
3. Click **Save**, then close Vista.
4. Use Windows Explorer to navigate to the ...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg\ud folder.
5. Locate the .wsu file for the user you are setting up (i.e., <username>.wsu). Right-click and select Properties.
6. Select the **Read-only** attribute, then click **OK**.

NOTE

Applying the Read-only attribute prevents the workspace information from being modified, so Vista opens the same way for a given user every time. The user can still to modify and save user diagrams (if allowed by their access level).

Closing a User Diagram

To close a user diagram:

- Select **File > Close** to close the current diagram.
- Select **File > Close All** to close all diagrams.

Navigating a User Diagram

After you open a user diagram, you can use it to interact with your power-monitoring system. Each user diagram displays system information through diagram objects, which you can use to monitor and control various aspects of your system.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Monitoring Your System in Vista

Use Vista user diagrams to display real-time and logged data, monitor events and alarms, and control a variety of system functions.

How Data is Displayed

Information in your user diagram is displayed using diagram objects. Each diagram object communicates a single piece of information from somewhere in your power-monitoring network; for example, a single numeric object displays numeric data from a single source.

There are seven types of diagram objects: grouping, text, numeric, status, data log viewer, event log viewer, and control. Each type of object performs a specific type of function.

In most cases, you can identify an object's function by a caption, a label, or both (the text object does not use a caption or a label).

- By default, the caption is usually located below the diagram object and identifies the node to which the diagram object is connected. The caption can be modified to display a custom description. See "Caption Options" on page 134 for more information.
- When a label is used, it is usually displayed to one side of the diagram object. By default, the label identifies the register (on the node) to which the diagram object is connected. The label can be modified to display a custom label name. See "Text Options" on page 134 for more information.

TIP

To toggle between default labels and custom labels, select or clear **Options > Show Default Labels**. You can identify the type of diagram object by pointing to it with the mouse. The object type appears on the status line.

Identifying Stale Data

Real-time data that has not been refreshed is referred to as stale data. Vista detects stale data as it occurs and identifies it with a colored border. By default, Vista identifies data as stale after 30 seconds (for meter diagrams, the default value is 60 seconds). Position the mouse pointer over an object to display a ToolTip that explains why the data has become stale.

The stale data settings are user-configurable on a per-diagram basis, and can be customized by anyone with the necessary access level.

Changing the Stale Data Settings

To change the amount of time (in seconds) that Vista uses to identify stale data:

1. Right-click the background and click **Properties**.
2. Click the **Updates** tab and change the settings in the **Stale Data** section.
3. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Changing the Flag Settings for Stale Data

To change the flag color:

1. Click **Options > Flag Colors**.
2. Click the **Edit** button for the flag color you want to change, select the new color and click **OK**.

Identifying Errors in Communication

Vista detects errors (such as disabled devices, security access restrictions, or configuration errors) and identifies these with a colored border around an object (orange, by default). The border color can be customized (see previous section, "Changing the Flag Settings for Stale Data"). Position the mouse pointer over an object that Vista is indicating has an error to display a ToolTip that explains the error.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Real-Time Data

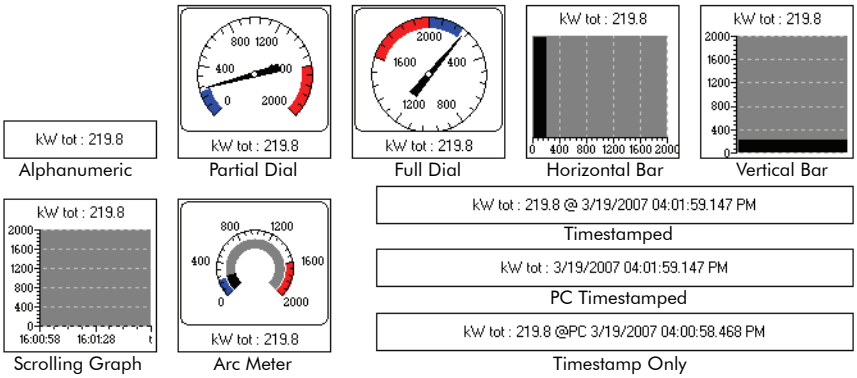
Vista uses numeric objects and status objects to display real-time data. Numeric objects display real-time numeric values and status objects display real-time Boolean (ON/OFF) information.

Viewing Data with Numeric Objects

Vista uses numeric objects to display real-time numeric data from your power-monitoring system. Numeric objects can display many types of data, such as line voltage or current, power or energy levels, harmonics, or demand parameters.

Depending on their configuration, numeric objects can display data in different formats: alphanumeric, dial, horizontal or vertical bar, or scrolling graph.

Display Styles for Numeric Objects



See “Customizing the Display of a Numeric Object” on page 136 for more information on configuring numeric objects.

Using Flags on a Numeric Object

In some cases, a numeric object may use flags to indicate the low and high limits of the displayed parameter.

When used on a dial display, flags appear as colored areas at either end. When used on other types of numeric objects, flags change the object's background color to indicate that a low or high limit is currently exceeded. By default, the low flag color is blue and the high flag color is red.

Flags are stored in the workspace file on a per-user basis. They are configurable and can be customized by anyone who has the necessary access level. Configurable settings include flag color, low limit and high limit. See “Display Options” on page 136 for more information on configuring flags.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Data with Status Objects

Vista uses status objects to display Boolean (ON/OFF) conditions in your system. A status object may display the status of a digital output (such as a relay), a digital input (status input), or a setpoint in your system.

The default status object appears as an indicator light that changes color to indicate various conditions. Gray indicates the status object is not linked or not receiving data.

Like most diagram objects, status objects can be modified by any user with an appropriate access level. Depending on how a status object has been configured, its appearance and function can differ significantly from the default settings.

A status object that has been customized can appear as an alphanumeric display (for example, "ON" or "OFF") or a custom image (three images representing ON, OFF, and UNCONNECTED). See "Customizing the Display of a Status Object" on page 139 for more information.

NOTE

In some cases, the active state of a status object may have been changed (inverted) so that an active state appears as inactive and vice versa. See "Annunciation Options" on page 144 for more information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Logged Data

Data and events recorded by the devices in your system are regularly transferred by the Log Inserter from each device to the database. Vista uses the ION Query Service to transfer this information from the database to your workstation. Vista provides two ways to view logged data and events: the Data Log Viewer and the Event (and Global Event) Log Viewer.

- The Data Log Viewer displays data logs from all devices represented in the active user diagram. You can use the Data Log Viewer to display waveform and trend data in tabular format. You can also select a range of logs from the viewer and display the data graphically in the log view plotter.
- The Event Log Viewer typically displays events and alarms from each device represented in the active user diagram. The Event Log Viewer is used primarily to monitor low-priority events and alarms associated with the active user diagram. Each Event Log Viewer is associated with a single user diagram.
- The Global Event Log Viewer is a special version of the Event Log Viewer used primarily to display high-priority events and alarms for your entire system. The Global Event Log Viewer is not associated with any single user diagram; the event information it displays is common, or global, to the entire system.

Using a Data Log Viewer

Use a Data Log Viewer to view system data stored in the database. Data Log Viewers display historical trend data (from data recorders) and waveform data (from waveform recorders).

You can select any data displayed in a Data Log Viewer and plot it as a graph or copy it to another application (for example, Microsoft Excel) where you can perform advanced calculations or include it in a report.

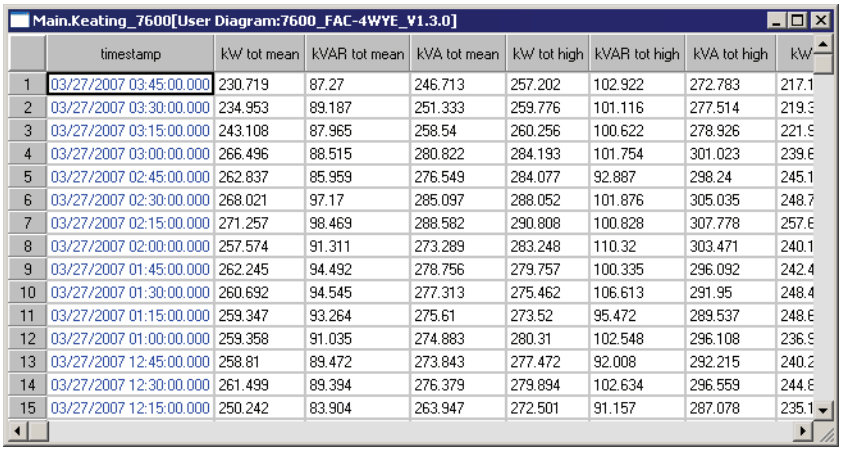
NOTE

See "Querying the Database" on page 148 for information on log viewer configuration.

Displaying a Data Log Viewer

Click on a Data Log Viewer object in your user diagram. The Data Log Viewer appears.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



Main.Keating_7600[User Diagram:7600_FAC-4WYE_V1.3.0]

	timestamp	kW tot mean	kVAR tot mean	kVA tot mean	kW tot high	kVAR tot high	kVA tot high	kW
1	03/27/2007 03:45:00.000	230.719	87.27	246.713	257.202	102.922	272.783	217.1
2	03/27/2007 03:30:00.000	234.953	89.187	251.333	259.776	101.116	277.514	219.3
3	03/27/2007 03:15:00.000	243.108	87.965	258.54	260.256	100.622	278.926	221.9
4	03/27/2007 03:00:00.000	266.496	88.515	280.822	284.193	101.754	301.023	239.6
5	03/27/2007 02:45:00.000	262.837	85.959	276.549	284.077	92.887	298.24	245.1
6	03/27/2007 02:30:00.000	268.021	97.17	285.097	288.052	101.876	305.035	248.7
7	03/27/2007 02:15:00.000	271.257	98.469	288.582	290.808	100.828	307.778	257.6
8	03/27/2007 02:00:00.000	257.574	91.311	273.289	283.248	110.32	303.471	240.1
9	03/27/2007 01:45:00.000	262.245	94.492	278.756	279.757	100.335	296.092	242.4
10	03/27/2007 01:30:00.000	260.692	94.545	277.313	275.462	106.613	291.95	248.4
11	03/27/2007 01:15:00.000	259.347	93.264	275.61	273.52	95.472	289.537	248.6
12	03/27/2007 01:00:00.000	259.358	91.035	274.883	280.31	102.548	296.108	236.9
13	03/27/2007 12:45:00.000	258.81	89.472	273.843	277.472	92.008	292.215	240.2
14	03/27/2007 12:30:00.000	261.499	89.394	276.379	279.894	102.634	296.559	244.8
15	03/27/2007 12:15:00.000	250.242	83.904	263.947	272.501	91.157	287.078	235.1

Each Data Log Viewer displays data as a table of columns and rows. Each labeled column contains a single type of data and each numbered row represents a single data record.

Plotting a Range of Data from the Data Log Viewer

You can plot data from a Data Log Viewer in the Log View Plotter.

1. Highlight the cells containing the data that you want to plot. The range of data can be selected in one of three ways:
   - To graph trends for all parameters over a particular time span, select a group of rows.
   - To graph the trend for a specific parameter using all available records, select the entire column.
   - To graph multiple parameters over a specific time span, click on the first cell in the desired range then drag to highlight the last cell of the range.
2. Select **Edit > Plot Selected Data** or click .

   The Log View Plotter window appears, displaying a graphical representation of the selected data. See “Plotting Logged Data” on page 108 for more information.

TIP

To quickly plot a single waveform, double-click on its waveform symbol in the Data Log Viewer.

Copying a Selection to Another Application

1. Highlight the cells containing the data that you want to copy.
2. Select **Edit > Copy** or click . This copies the selection to the Windows Clipboard. Switch to another application and paste the selection.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using the Event and Global Event Log Viewers

Events and alarms that occur in your system are recorded by the meter and transferred via Log Inserter to the database.

Vista provides two ways to view event records stored in the database:

- The **Event Log Viewer** displays events and alarms from the device(s) represented in the active user diagram. Use it to monitor low-priority events and alarms associated with the active user diagram.
- The **Global Event Log Viewer** displays events and alarms for your entire system. Use it to monitor high-priority events and alarms for the entire system. The Global Event Log Viewer operates independently of any user diagram.

The difference between the Global Event Log Viewer and the Event Log Viewer is essential when setting up alarming. The Event Log Viewer is associated with a single user diagram, so alarms only update when the user diagram is open. The Global Event Log Viewer does not require a user diagram and updates as soon as you start Vista.

NOTE

See "Using the Query Options" on page 148 for information on log viewer configuration.

TIP

To quickly display the user diagram for any device represented in an Event or Global Event Log Viewer, double-click on the node name (in the node column) of a device to display its user diagram.

Displaying an Event Log Viewer

Click an Event Log Viewer object in your user diagram. The Event Log Viewer appears.

Meter Events[User Diagram:7600_FAC-4WYE_V1.3.0]

	timestamp	priority	cause_ion	cause_value	effect_ion	effect_value
1	03/26/2007 08:22:37.664 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
2	03/26/2007 08:22:36.604 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
3	03/25/2007 11:22:37.871 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
4	03/25/2007 11:22:36.837 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
5	03/25/2007 03:22:38.184 AM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
6	03/25/2007 03:22:37.176 AM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
7	03/23/2007 11:22:00.000 PM	50	V1-Flck Plt	Limit Exceeded	V1-Flck N1	Incremented
8	03/23/2007 09:22:38.827 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
9	03/23/2007 09:22:37.822 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
10	03/22/2007 10:47:00.000 AM	50	V2-Flck Plt	Limit Exceeded	V2-Flck N1	Incremented
11	03/22/2007 10:47:00.000 AM	50	V1-Flck Plt	Limit Exceeded	V1-Flck N1	Incremented
12	03/21/2007 12:22:39.919 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
13	03/21/2007 12:22:35.014 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
14	03/21/2007 12:21:22.405 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
15	03/21/2007 12:21:16.918 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
16	03/20/2007 09:46:25.697 AM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed
17	03/20/2007 09:46:24.644 AM	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed
18	03/17/2007 07:46:27.025 PM	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Event Log Viewer displays logged events in a table of columns and rows. Each labeled column contains a single category or event description and each numbered row represents a single event record.

Typically, Event Log Viewers display the following information:

- **Timestamp**: This indicates the event's date and time.
- **Priority**: This determines the relative significance of the event. Each type of event has a numeric value assigned to it that represents its relative priority level. See "Alarming Options" on page 144 for more information.
- **Cause:** This is the label and value describing the cause of the event. For example, if the label is "Setpoint #1" and the value is "Active," then the event was caused by setpoint #1 changing to an active state.
- **Effect**: This is the label and value describing the effect of the event. For example, if label is "Relay #1" and the value is "Forced On," then the effect of the event was to force relay #1 on.
- **Ack_time**: This is the date and time that an alarm was acknowledged. Any event with a priority level that exceeds the alarm threshold appears highlighted in red until the alarm is acknowledged.

When an alarm occurs, Vista can notify you in several ways: a beeping sound, a flashing title bar, a message box, or a custom sound. If you have sufficient security clearance, you can acknowledge alarms. See "Acknowledging Alarms" on page 105 for more information.

NOTE

Because Event Log Viewers are associated with a single user diagram, they only update and alarm when the user diagram is open. All Event Log Viewers need to be re-opened if a diagram is closed or the software is shut down.

Displaying the Global Event Log Viewer

The Global Event Log Viewer displays event data stored in the database. It includes records retrieved from meter and Virtual Processor event logs, as well as records transferred from the system log database. Users share a single Global Event Log Viewer and, generally, the information displayed is common, or global, to the entire system.

NOTE

We recommend that you do not delete the Global Event Log Viewer. If the pre-configured Global Event Log Viewer is deleted, a new one must be created and configured. If one user deletes it, the Global Event Log Viewer is automatically deleted from all workstations. Only a user with Supervisor-level access can delete a Global Event Log Viewer.

You can add multiple Global Event Log Viewers (if you have sufficient authority). You can change each viewer's filter criteria to query the database for events from a specific node or group of nodes or for events with a certain priority level.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Global Event Log Viewer

Select **Edit > Add Global Event Log Viewer**. A Global Event Log Viewer window appears.

The new Global Event Log Viewer is preconfigured with default link and query information. However, you can link the viewer to another log server using the procedure described in "Linking a Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer" on page 147.

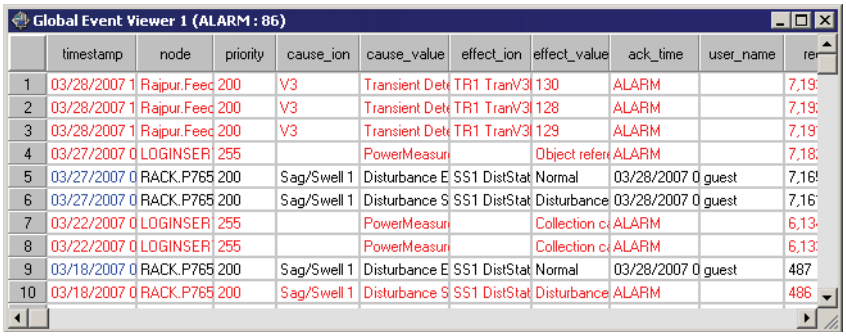
If you want to reconfigure a Global Event Log Viewer, right-click in the viewer window to display the Event Log Viewer Configuration dialog box. You can edit the Caption, Query Server, Query or Alarming options in the same way you edit these options on an individual Event Log Viewer. See "Customizing a Diagram Object" on page 133 for information on configuring these options.

NOTE

When you add a Global Event Log Viewer to your workstation, it is automatically added to all Vista workstations in your network.

Viewing the Global Event Log Viewer

To view the Global Event Log Viewer, select **Window > Global Event Viewer**. The Global Event Log Viewer appears.


Global Event Viewer 1 (ALARM : 86)
timestamp node priority cause_ion cause_value effect_ion effect_value ack_time user_name
1 03/28/2007 1 Rajpur.Feed 200 V3 Transient Dete TR1 TranV3(130 ALARM 7,19
2 03/28/2007 1 Rajpur.Feed 200 V3 Transient Dete TR1 TranV3(128 ALARM 7,19
3 03/28/2007 1 Rajpur.Feed 200 V3 Transient Dete TR1 TranV3(129 ALARM 7,19
4 03/27/2007 0 LOGINSER 255 PowerMeasur Object refer ALARM 7,18
5 03/27/2007 0 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance E SS1 DistStat Normal 03/28/2007 0 guest 7,16
6 03/27/2007 0 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance S SS1 DistStat Disturbance 03/28/2007 0 guest 7,16
7 03/22/2007 0 LOGINSER 255 PowerMeasur Collection c ALARM 6,13
8 03/22/2007 0 LOGINSER 255 PowerMeasur Collection c ALARM 6,13
9 03/18/2007 0 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance E SS1 DistStat Normal 03/28/2007 0 guest 487
10 03/18/2007 0 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance S SS1 DistStat Disturbance ALARM 486

TIP

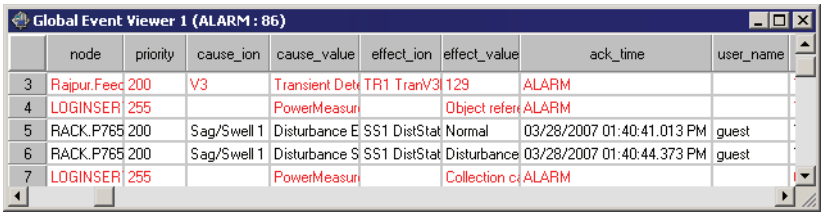
To temporarily "hide" the Global Event Log Viewer, clear **View > Show Global Event Viewer**. You are not notified of any alarms while the Global Event Log Viewer is hidden. If you want to continue to be notified of alarms, you can minimize the Global Event Log Viewer rather than hiding it.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Acknowledging Alarms

Every type of event has a prioritized value that identifies its relative significance on a scale of 0 (zero) to 255. By default, Vista identifies any event with a priority of 128 (default) or greater as an alarm.

The event record is highlighted in red, and identified under the “ack_time” column as “ALARM.” The “cause_value” column lists the source of the alarm and the “effect_value” column describes the event.


Global Event Viewer 1 (ALARM : 86)
node priority cause_ion cause_value effect_ion effect_value ack_time user_name
3 Rajpur.Feed 200 V3 Transient Det TR1 TranV3 129 ALARM
4 LOGINSER 255 PowerMeasur Object refer ALARM
5 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance E SS1 DistStat Normal 03/28/2007 01:40:41.013 PM guest
6 RACK.P765 200 Sag/Swell 1 Disturbance S SS1 DistStat Disturbance 03/28/2007 01:40:44.373 PM guest
7 LOGINSER 255 PowerMeasur Collection c ALARM

By default, Vista plays a 'beep' to annunciate an event with a priority between 128-191, and a beep combined with a flashing display to annunciate an event with a priority between 192-255. To customize these options, see “Alarming Options” on page 144.

When you acknowledge an alarm, Vista records the time the alarm was acknowledged (in the “ack_time” column) and your user ID (in the “user_name” column).

NOTE

In some cases, your access level may not be sufficient to acknowledge an alarm; for example, a critical alarm may require Supervisor access. This is a user-configurable option. See “Alarming Options” on page 144 for more information.

Acknowledging an Alarm

1. Open an Event Log Viewer or the Global Event Log Viewer, then do one of the following:
   - To acknowledge a single alarm, click on the word ALARM in the “ack_time” column or highlight the row containing the alarm.
   - To acknowledge all alarms to date, click on the “ack_time” column heading.

   A confirmation box appears, asking if you want to acknowledge the selected alarm(s).
2. Select **Yes** to acknowledge the alarm(s) or **No** to cancel.

If you acknowledge the alarm but do not have a sufficient access level, the alarm remains unacknowledged and the message “Insufficient Authorization” appears in the status line.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Silencing Alarms

If you are not ready or able to acknowledge an alarm, you can silence it until it can be acknowledged. Select **Options > Silence Outstanding Alarms** to silence alarms.

NOTE

Acknowledging an alarm does not change the operating conditions that caused the alarm. You must ensure that the cause is corrected to remove the alarm condition.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Controlling System Functions

You can use control objects to send commands from Vista to a node.

Each control object in your user diagram is configured to perform a single function. When you click a control object, it performs the specified function. For example, you could click a control object to clear an energy accumulator, toggle a relay, reset a counter, or adjust the value of an analog output device.

The default appearance of a control object depends on the function it has been configured to perform:

Regardless of their appearance, all control objects are used the same way—to use a control object, click it.

NOTE

For information on configuring the message, appearance and access level of control objects, see "Customizing the Action for a Control Object" on page 143 and "Customizing the Display of a Control Object" on page 141.

When you click on a control object, one of the following happens, depending on how the control object is configured:

- Vista performs the specified action immediately.
- Vista displays a confirmation message. Click **Yes** to proceed or **No** to cancel the operation.
- Vista requests a password. Type your logon password then click **OK** to proceed.

Depending on the function, a dialog box requesting the meter password may also appear. If so, type the meter password then click **OK** to proceed.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Plotting Logged Data

This section describes how to use and customize the Log View Plotter to view logged data in a graphical representation. Use the Log View Plotter to graphically show trends in numeric data, display logged waveforms, display phasor diagrams, and perform harmonics analysis on waveform data. You can also plot Sag/Swell voltage disturbances and compare them to industry standard voltage tolerance curves (such as the CBEMA/ITIC curve).

NOTE

You can copy information displayed by Vista Log Viewers to the Windows Clipboard and paste it into other Windows applications.

Plotting Logged Data

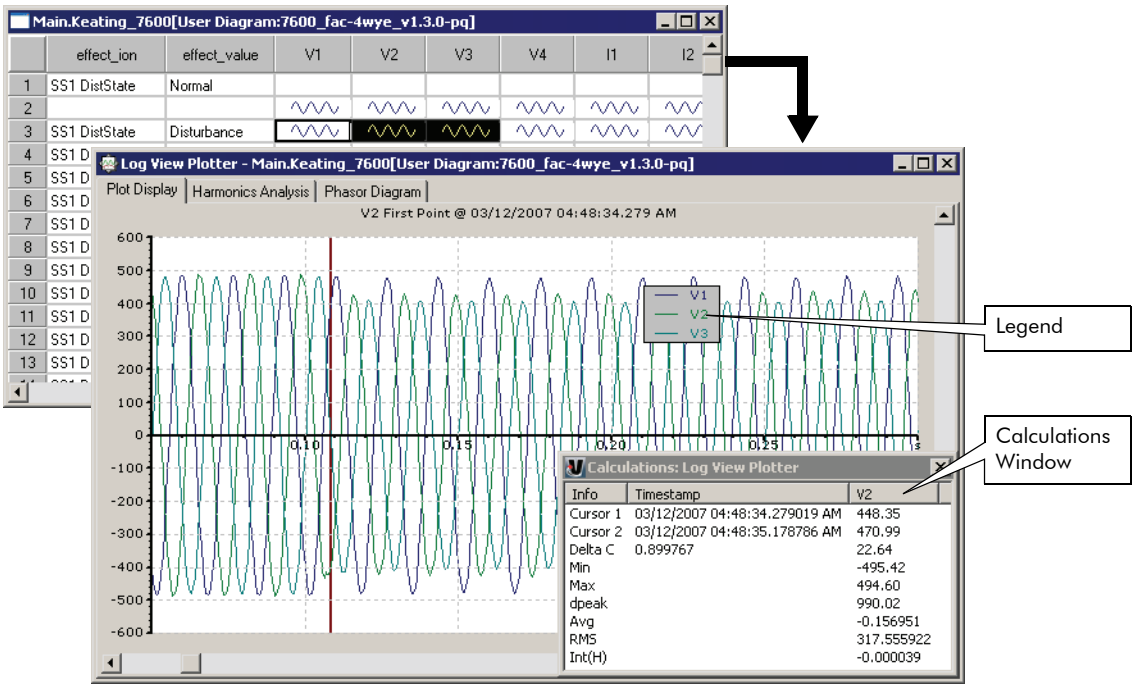
1. Select data from a data log viewer:
   - To graph trends for all parameters over a particular time span, select a group of rows.
   - To graph a trend for a specific parameter using all available records, select an entire column.
   - To graph multiple parameters over a specific time span, select the first cell in the desired range and drag to highlight to the last cell of the range.
2. Select **Edit > Plot Selected Data** or click .

   Vista plots the data and displays it in the Log View Plotter window.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Log View Plotter Interface

The Log View Plotter is a Vista window that graphically displays selected data.



The default display is the Plot Display tab. Depending on the type of data selected, the Log View Plotter may also offer a Harmonics Analysis tab and a Phasor Diagram tab.

In all cases, the Log View Plotter offers additional information in two floating boxes: the Legend and the Calculations window.

The Legend

Each line or bar in the graph is represented by a pattern of the same color in the legend.

TIP

Click on the curve sample in the legend to select its equivalent in the graph.

Displaying the Legend

1. Right-click on the background of the Log View Plotter window.
2. Select Graph Options in the pop-up menu. The **Graph Options** dialog box appears.
3. Select the Show legend check box then click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Calculations Window

The Log View Plotter calculates several values for every line or bar in the graph. You can view the results of these calculations in the Calculations window.

The Calculations window updates automatically, displaying a range of calculated values based on the currently selected parameter. By default, all values displayed in the Calculations window are calculated from the first parameter. To view the calculations for a different parameter, select the line or bar you want.

For example, to view the calculations for a curve on the Plot Display tab, click on the curve line in the graph or on its line pattern in the legend. When you click a different tab, the Calculations window displays the values relevant to that tab.

Displaying the Calculations Window

1. Right-click on the background of the Log View Plotter window.
2. Select Graph Options from the pop-up menu. The **Graph Options** dialog box appears.
3. Select the Show calculations check box then click **OK**.

Changing Graph Options

When using the Log View Plotter, you can adjust the graph options to change the title of a graph or the way data is displayed.

1. Right-click on the graph background then select Graph Options. The **Graph Options** box appears.
   - Type a name for the graph in the **Title** box. This name appears in the title bar of the Log View Plotter window. The default is Log View Plotter.
   - Select or clear the **Show legend** and **Show calculations** check boxes to show or hide the legend and Calculations window.
   - Select the **Align triggers** check box to align the trigger times of all waveforms in the graph. (When multiple waveforms are plotted, their trigger times are not always correlated.)
   - Select **Separate curves vertically** to display each curve separately.

NOTE

See "Calculating Harmonics Using More Than One Cycle" on page 115 for more information on the System Frequency and # of cycles for harmonics options.

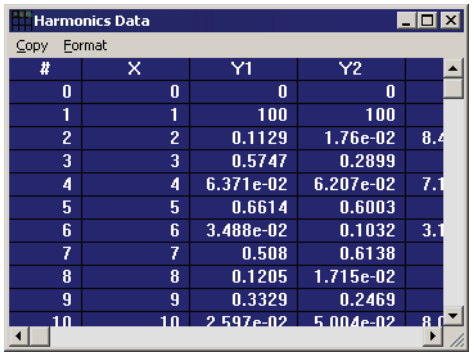
2. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Displaying Curve Data in a Table

After you plot data in the Log View Plotter, you can select a curve and display its data points in a table. This option is only available on the Plot Display and Harmonic Analysis tabs.

1. Right-click on the curve line in the Plot Display or Harmonic Analysis tab and select Data from the pop-up menu.



   - **Plot Display** tab: The data points are displayed. The X column lists the x-axis coordinates and the Y column lists the y-axis coordinates. The first column (#) assigns a number to each set of points.
   - **Harmonic Analysis** tab: A window appears listing each harmonic number and the magnitude of each harmonic for each parameter. The first column numbers the rows. The X column lists the harmonics number and the Y1, Y2, Y3, etc., columns list the harmonic values for each bar in the harmonics histogram. Rows where the X value is not an integer (i.e., .5, 1.5, 2.25) contain sub-harmonic values.
2. Click **Format** to change the number of significant digits displayed in the X and Y columns or to change the width of these columns.
   - Width defines the number of characters the column can display.
   - Precision defines the number of significant digits displayed.
3. Click **Copy** to copy columns to the clipboard. This allows you paste a copy of the data into another application, such as a spreadsheet program or a text file.

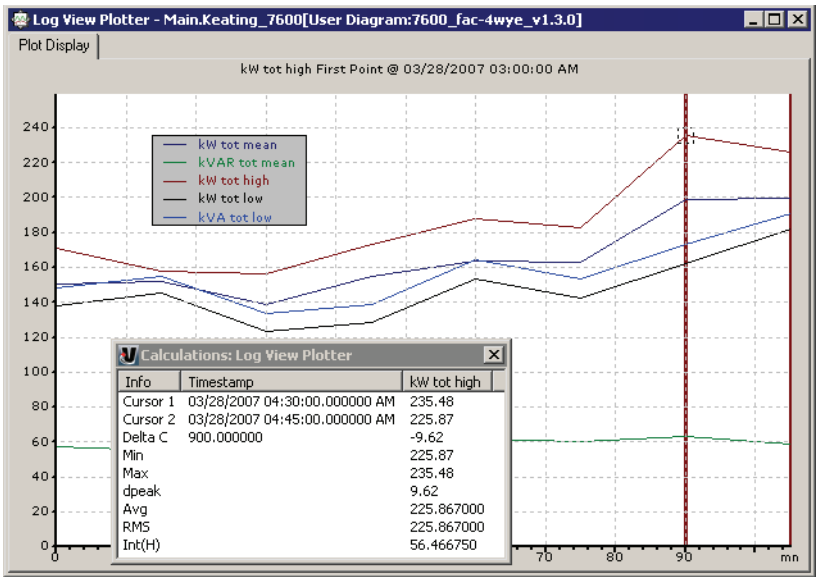
NOTE

The Log View Plotter can only display one data table at a time. If you want to display tabular data for another curve (from the same graph or a different one), you must first close any open data window.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing the Plot Display Tab

The Plot Display tab depicts the specified parameters as curves against a graph.



Each parameter is plotted in a different color. The legend identifies the color of each curve in the selection and what it represents. Click on a curve to select it or right-click on it to display additional options. The timestamp at the top of the tab identifies the first point in the selected curve.

The vertical axis (y-axis) represents the specified range; the horizontal axis (x-axis) represents time. Vista automatically adjusts the scale of the y-axis and x-axis to accommodate the largest parameter(s) in the selection. Right-click on either axis to change the scale of its properties; right-click on the axis numbers to change their format.

The time unit indicator in the lower right corner identifies the time scale of the x-axis (for example, "h" indicates an hourly scale). Possible time scale units include months, days, hours, minutes, and seconds.

Zooming in on the Plot Display Tab

To zoom in on the Plot Display tab, click on the Zoom button then drag a selection box around the area you want to view. To view the entire plot, click the Restore to 100% button .

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Calculations Window Parameters for the Plot Display Tab

The Calculations window updates automatically, displaying the following values for the currently selected curve:

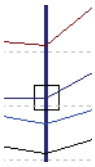
Value Label	Description
Cursor 1	The timestamp and the y-value of the selected curve at Cursor 1.
Cursor 2	The timestamp and the y-value of the selected curve at Cursor 2.
Delta C	The time difference between Cursor 1 and Cursor 2, and the difference between the y-values at Cursor 1 and at Cursor 2.
Min	The minimum value of the selected curve between the two cursors.
Max	The maximum value of the selected curve between the two cursors.
dpeak	The maximum peak-to-peak value of the selected curve between the two cursors (Max-Min).
Avg [1]	The average value of the selected curve between the two cursors.
RMS [1]	The root mean squared value of the selected curve between the two cursors.
Int(H) [1]	The integration of the selected curve between the two cursors with respect to time in hours (for example, if the curve is in kW, the information is displayed in kWh.)

[1] The last three values (Avg, RMS, Int(H)) on the Calculations window are only available on plots where the x-axis represents time. They are not offered on other types of plots (for example, CBEMA plots).

Both numeric data and waveform data can be plotted in the same graph. On waveform plots, the trigger time is represented by a red vertical line.

Using the Cursor Lines

There are vertical cursor lines at either end of the curves in the Log View Plotter. These cursor lines define the start and end points used by the Calculations window. By default, Cursor 1 is located on the leftmost point of the selected curve and Cursor 2 on the rightmost point.



To define a new start point, drag Cursor 1 along the curve to the new start point. Repeat this procedure with Cursor 2 to define a new end point. You can also use the arrow keys to move the active cursor left or right. The active cursor is identified by a small box that appears where the cursor line meets the curve. Use the TAB key to switch the active cursor between Cursor 1 and Cursor 2.

As the cursor line moves from point to point along the curve, the information in the Calculations window is updated. You cannot drag Cursor 1 past Cursor 2 or vice versa.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

De-indexing Parameters and Specifying Y-offsets

If you are plotting multiple parameters with different magnitudes, the lower magnitude values may be difficult to see in the default graph. Vista allows you to index any parameter to a different axis that can be scaled and offset independently from the other axes.

The new axis automatically assumes a scale appropriate for the selected parameter. In this way, you can plot parameters of different magnitudes on the same graph (such as voltage and current).

De-indexing a Parameter or Offsetting a Parameter on the Y-axis

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. In the last section of the pop-up menu, highlight the curve you want to change.

   The curve's sub-menu appears. (You can also access the sub-menu directly by right-clicking on the parameter curve or on its curve sample in the legend.)

2. Select **Options** from the sub-menu. The **Curve Option** dialog box appears.

3. Choose one of the four axis options for the selected parameter. The axis is indicated by the location of the tick marks.

   Specify a Y-offset if required. This shifts the selected parameter up the y-axis (or down for a negative number) by the amount you specify.

4. Click **OK**. A new axis appears with a default title and a scale appropriate for the selected parameter.

   The scale of the default axis can also be adjusted to accommodate the remaining curves. A parameter has an asterisk after it in the legend if it has been offset.

Repeat these steps for each parameter that you want to de-index from the default axis. You can assign more than one parameter to an axis and the scale adjusts accordingly to incorporate each new parameter. For example, if you have plotted three voltage parameters and three current parameters, you can select the current curves and assign each of them to another common axis, leaving the three voltage curves to share the default axis.

Displaying Power Factor Data

If you have plotted power factor data (from historical logs) in the Log View Plotter, you can improve the display to avoid discontinuity by setting the vertical axis to Power Factor Display (-100,+100).

Setting Any Vertical Axis for Power Factor Display

1. Right-click on the vertical axis or right-click on the graph background and select the axis after you have plotted the power factor data.

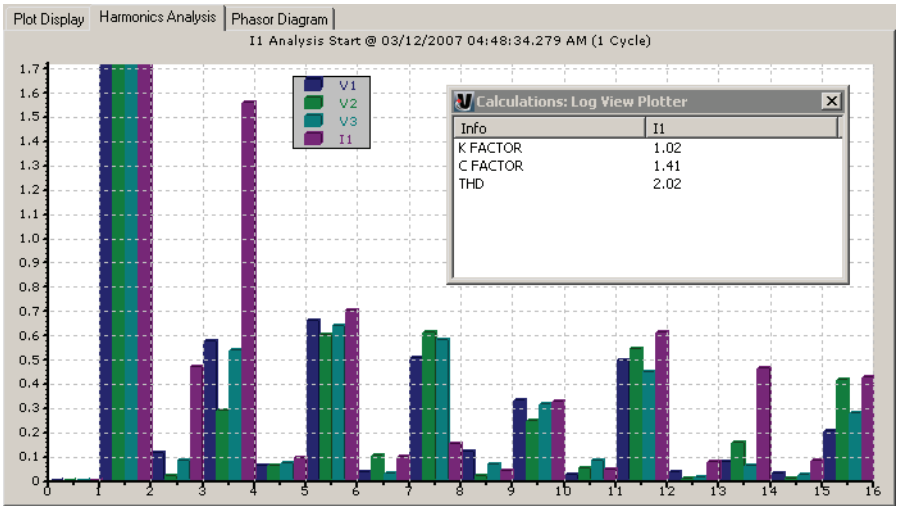
2. Select Power Factor Display from the pop-up menu. A check mark appears beside the option to indicate that it is selected.

You can plot other non-power factor data on the same graph; however, you should not plot the new data on the same axis as the power factor data. De-index the new data on a separate axis as described in “De-indexing a Parameter or Offsetting a Parameter on the Y-axis” on page 114.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing the Harmonics Analysis Tab

If any of the parameters you have plotted is a waveform, you can display a histogram of the signal's harmonic content by selecting the Harmonics tab on the Log View Plotter window. The resulting histogram shows the harmonics for all waveforms in the plot.



NOTE

The cycle used is the first full cycle to the right of Cursor 1on the Plot Display tab.

The total harmonic distortion (THD), K-factor and Crest factor values for this waveform are displayed in the Calculations window.

To view the calculations for another parameter, click on it in the graph or on its curve sample in the legend. The Calculations window updates automatically. The currently selected parameter is indicated above the calculations.

Calculating Harmonics Using More Than One Cycle

By default, the harmonics are calculated using one cycle. You can increase the number of cycles by any power of two cycles (i.e., 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 or 64) up to the maximum number of cycles available for the waveform.

1. Right-click on the background of the graph area then select **Graph Options**. The **Graph Options** dialog box appears.
2. Select the number of cycles over which harmonics calculations are to be performed from the "# of cycles for harmonics" list.
3. Select the appropriate frequency in the "System Frequency" box, if the waveform you are analyzing came from a system with a frequency other than 50Hz or 60Hz. (For example, if the waveform was captured from a 400 Hz system using a 3710 ACM, specify "400Hz" in this box.)

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The Harmonics Analysis tab is only available for waveform records. Vista does not perform a harmonics analysis for trend data or for waveforms with less than eight samples per cycle. You cannot display the harmonics of more than 16 parameters at a time.

Viewing the Phasor Diagram Tab

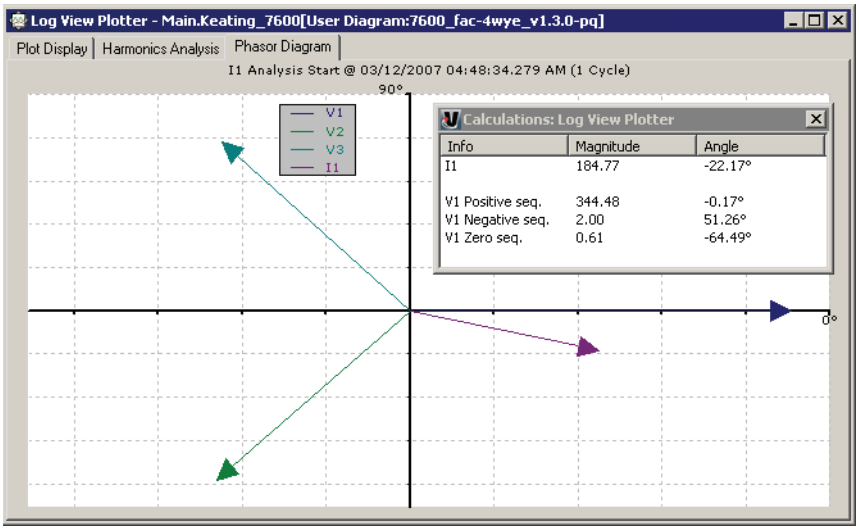
If you have plotted waveforms for all three voltages and/or currents of your system, you can view this information as a phasor diagram. The phasor diagram graphically displays the three phases (voltages and/or currents), showing their relative magnitudes and angles.

You can use a phasor diagram to evaluate important aspects of your power system such as voltage balance, per-phase loading, and type of load (or generator operating mode). A phasor diagram also provides a way to identify PT or CT wiring problems.

NOTE

The timestamp at the top of the Phasor Diagram tab is based on the time of Cursor 1 on the Plot Display tab.

To display a phasor diagram, select the Phasor Diagram tab from the Log View Plotter window.



The Phasor Diagram and calculations are derived from a one-cycle window starting at Cursor 1 on the Plot Display tab. The magnitude and angle of the selected phase is displayed in the Calculations window.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The Log View Plotter conforms to the convention where all phasors are plotted with respect to V1 (always at 0°) and rotate in a positive counter-clockwise direction. On a balanced power system, all three phases should appear 120 degrees apart.

To edit a phasor displayed on a phasor diagram, right-click on a parameter in the legend to display a pop-up menu where you can change the phasor's color or delete the phasor from the diagram.

Symmetrical Components

The Log View Plotter calculates the symmetrical components of your power system — the positive, negative, and zero sequences relative to the first phase — for the cycle selected. If you have plotted waveforms for three voltages and/or currents, you can access their symmetrical component calculations. To produce correct symmetrical components, the waveforms must have been plotted in the correct order (for example, V1, V2, V3 — not V1, V3, V2).

The analysis of an unbalanced system, such as determining the effects of a system fault, is made simpler by using symmetrical components. Symmetrical components are a mathematical tool that allows any system of three unbalanced phasors to be represented by three balanced phasor systems. The total current or voltage in any phase wire is expressed as the sum of three balanced, three-phase components.

Positive Sequence Components (1) - these consist of three phasors that are equal in magnitude and displaced from each other by 120º and have the same phase sequence as the original phasors.

Negative Sequence Components (2) - these consist of three phasors that are equal in magnitude and displaced from each other by 120º and have the phase sequence opposite to that of the original phasors.

Zero Sequence Components (0) - these consist of three phasors that are equal in magnitude and with zero phase displacement from each other.

If the original phasors of voltages are Va, Vb, and Vc, then the symmetrical components would be as follows:

- Va = Va1 + Va2 + Va0
- Vb = Vb1 + Vb2 + Vb0
- Vc = Vc1 + Vc2 + Vc0

The symmetrical components function, as implemented inside some ION meters, is useful for steady state analysis (unbalance), since the parameters are updated every second. However, when determining the symmetrical components during a fault, per-cycle analysis is required. For this application, you do not need real-time updates from the meter, because you are only interested in the relatively short time before, during, and after a system fault. This information is contained in the waveforms recorded when triggered by a disturbance.

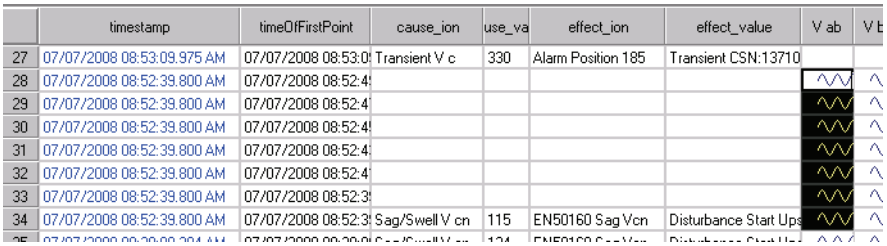
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Symmetrical Components

1. From a waveform Data Log Viewer (such as Waveforms/Sequence of Events), select all three phases of a fault (voltage or current).
2. Select **Edit > Plot Selected Data**.
3. Drag the Cursor and move it to the location of the fault.
4. Click on the **Phasor Diagram** tab to view the Symmetrical Components in the Calculations window.

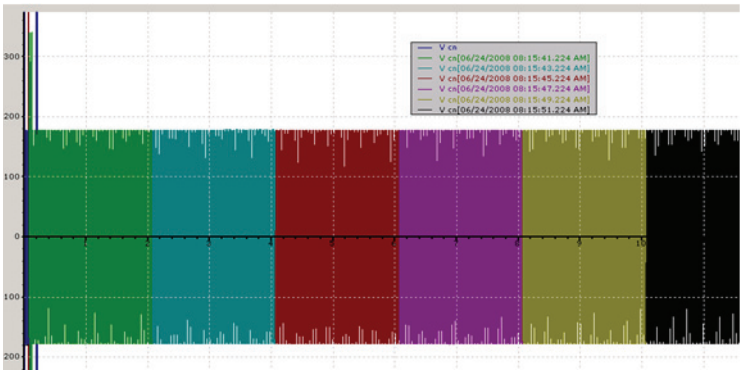
Plotting Waveforms from Devices with High Sampling Rates

Waveforms from devices with high sampling rates can be quite large. These large waveforms are split by ION Enterprise into a series of smaller waveforms when displayed in the data log. To plot all the sections of the waveform in Vista, you must select all the rows that relate to the waveform before you click the Plot button. All the rows related to the one waveform have the same timestamp. For example, in the following image, you would select rows 28 to 34 to plot the entire waveform.



	timestamp	timeOfFirstPoint	cause_ion	use_va	effect_ion	effect_value	V ab	V b
27	07/07/2008 08:53:09.975 AM	07/07/2008 08:53:0	Transient V c	330	Alarm Position 185	Transient CSN:13710		
28	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:4						
29	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:4						
30	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:4						
31	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:4						
32	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:4						
33	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:3						
34	07/07/2008 08:52:39.800 AM	07/07/2008 08:52:3	Sag/Swell V cn	115	EN50160 Sag Vcn	Disturbance Start Ups		

When the waveform is displayed, you may need to zoom in to view the area of the waveform you are interested in. To zoom in, drag a selection box around the area you are interested in.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding Parameters to a Log View Plotter

After you have created a graph and the Log View Plotter window is visible, you can add additional parameters to the graph by copying and pasting them into the graph. These parameters can be copied from the same data log viewer, a different data log viewer, or from a different Windows application such as Microsoft Excel. The x and y-axes are automatically re-scaled to accommodate the new parameters.

When adding waveforms to the log view plotter, you can correlate all of their trigger times. See "Customizing Graph and Legend Options" on page 124 for more information.

Adding Data from a Data Log Viewer

You can add additional parameters from any data log viewer configured to provide compatible time-based data. Any added parameter is plotted using the same x-axis used by the existing curves. To avoid confusion ensure that the column you selected for your x-axis in the data log viewer (from which you are adding data) contains the same parameter (typically a timestamp) as the original data log viewer.

Adding Additional Parameters from a Data Log Viewer

1. Select the range of cells you want to plot. Ensure that it contains the same type of information (timestamps) as the data already being plotted.
2. Select **Edit > Copy**.
3. Click on the title bar of the existing Log View Plotter window then select **Edit > Paste**. The parameters you selected are added to the graph.

If you want to plot waveforms on the same graph as historical data, the historical data should originate from high-speed data recorders and span a short time range, typically a few waveform cycles (<1 second).

Adding Events from an Event Log Viewer

You can add events to a waveform or trend plot. This is useful for comparing abnormalities of the waveform or trend shape with any corresponding events that happened in the same time period.

Adding Events from an Event Log Viewer to a Waveform

1. Select the row(s) you want to add in the Event Log Viewer.
2. Select **Edit > Copy**.
3. Click on the title bar of the existing Log View Plotter window then select **Edit > Paste**. The copied event records are added to the graph.

Each event is represented in the Log View Plotter as a diamond symbol. A diamond symbol is added to the legend and diamond symbols appear at the appropriate areas along the top of the diagram.

Point to a diamond symbol to display a description of the event in the status bar at the bottom of the screen.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

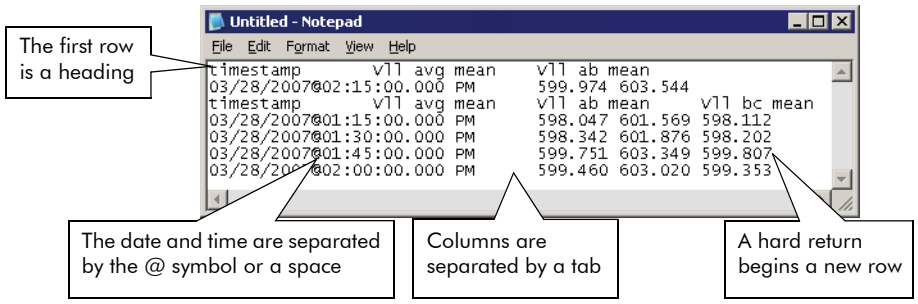
Adding Data from a Spreadsheet or Text File

You can select data from a spreadsheet or text file and paste it into an existing graph. This is useful if you want to compare trends from different times, waveforms showing different system events, and other analysis applications.

Ensure that the first column of data in the spreadsheet or text file is the same type as the first column in the data log viewer from which the log plot originated. In particular, for timestamps, make sure the complete timestamp is contained in a single column and that it uses the same date and time format as defined in the Windows Control Panel. If the date portion of the timestamp is in one column and the time is in another, or if the format is different in any way, the data cannot be pasted into the Log View Plotter.

When you paste data into a graph, from both spreadsheets and text files, the Log View Plotter interprets the first row of data in the selection as a heading. The first row in your selection is used to label the parameter in the legend. So, if the first row is not already used for column headings, insert a row and type in the label you want to appear in the Log View Plotter.

To copy data from a text file, the text file must be formatted correctly. Each column in the text file must be separated by a tab and there must be a hard return at the end of each row.


The first row is a heading
Untitled - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
timestamp vll avg mean vll ab mean
03/28/2007@02:15:00.000 PM 599.974 603.544
timestamp vll avg mean vll ab mean vll bc mean
03/28/2007@01:15:00.000 PM 598.047 601.569 598.112
03/28/2007@01:30:00.000 PM 598.342 601.876 598.202
03/28/2007@01:45:00.000 PM 599.751 603.349 599.807
03/28/2007@02:00:00.000 PM 599.460 603.020 599.353
The date and time are separated by the @ symbol or a space
Columns are separated by a tab
A hard return begins a new row

Adding Data to a Graph from a Spreadsheet or Text File

1. Open the spreadsheet or text file.
2. Copy the range of values you want to plot, including the first column and the first row. Include other columns in your selection, if required.
3. Click on the title bar of the Log View Plotter window then select **Edit > Paste**.

   The parameters you copied and pasted are added to the graph. The axis scales are adjusted automatically to include the new data.

You can define a trigger for waveform records containing timestamps when you copy records from other applications. Simply add an exclamation mark to the end of the timestamp to indicate that it is the trigger time. For example, the exclamation mark at the end of 22/05/1998@02:00:41.035 PM! indicates that the trigger occurred at this time.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing the Log View Plotter Display

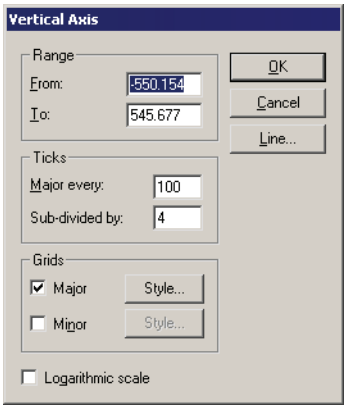
Many display attributes for each curve can be adjusted. In most cases, if you right-click on an area of the graph, either a pop-up menu or a dialog box appears with configuration options. Unless otherwise noted, the options you specify for the Log View Plotter window are saved and restored every time you plot data from the original data log viewer. If you plot data from a different data log viewer, its graph has its own optional settings.

Customizing an Axis

After you have plotted data in the Log View Plotter, use the following instructions customize the axis or gridlines, change an axis label's format or add an axis title, or change the font or color used on all axes. You can also change the scale of an axis.

Configuring an Axis

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the axis from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click on the axis to access the sub-menu directly.
2. Select Axis Properties from the sub-menu. A dialog box appears.



- **Range**: Make changes in the **From** and **To** boxes to adjust the axis range.
- **Ticks**: Make changes in the **Major every** and **Sub-divided by** boxes to adjust the frequency of major and minor ticks respectively.
- **Grid**: Select or clear the **Major** and **Minor** check boxes to turn graph gridlines on or off. Click the **Style** buttons to change to the line style or width of major and minor gridlines.
- **Logarithmic scale:** Select this check box to enable the logarithmic scale option.
- **Line:** Click this button to display the **Line Parameters** dialog box and change the line style or the width of the axis.

3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The axis range and the frequency of the major ticks are not stored in the diagram but are recalculated for every new plot.

Changing the Color of an Axis or the Gridlines

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the axis from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click on the axis to access the sub-menu directly.
2. Select Axis Color, Major Grid Color, or Minor Grid Color from the sub-menu. The **Color** dialog box appears.
3. Select the color you want or click **Define Custom Colors** for more options.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

   The axis or the major or minor gridlines change to the color you selected.

Changing the Format of the Axis Labels or Adding an Axis Title

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the axis from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click on the axis labels to access the sub-menu directly.
2. Select Axis Labels from the sub-menu.The **Axis Labels** dialog box appears.
3. Select the format in which you want the axis labels to appear.

   Decimal is used by default (for example, .01, .02, .03) but if the labels are too large or too small, select Scientific (1.0 x 10-2, 2.0 x 10-2, 3.0 x 10-2...) or Engineering (1m, 2m, 3m...).
4. Determine the axis title: select None to have no axis title or Text to enter your own title.

   For time-based plots, the default x-axis title is “s” if the timestamps of the data spans a number of seconds, “mn” for minutes, “h” for hours, “d” for days, “m” for months. (This applies to the Plot Display tab only.)

   For non time-based plots (CBEMA or harmonics), you can change the title. Select Text and type the title in the edit box. The title must be nine characters or less.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

NOTE

If the first column of the source data includes a space or @ sign, the Log View Plotter assumes time on the horizontal axis and automatically determines the units based on timestamp information. The axis title is updated whenever the window is updated.

Changing the Font Used on All Axes

1. Right-click anywhere in the graph background and select Graph Font. The **Font** dialog box appears.
2. Specify the font, style, size, effects and color options that you want to use for the axes labels.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing Curve Style

When displaying multiple parameters, Vista distinguishes between parameters using color. Each parameter is listed in the graph legend accompanied by a sample of its associated curve. The color of a curve can be changed after you have plotted data in the Log View Plotter.

If color is not enough to distinguish one curve from another—for example, if you plan to print the graph on a black and white printer—you can change the curve style after you have plotted data in the Log View Plotter.

By default:

- Each curve is shown by a thin line that connects each point of data. You can customize the style of each curve independently and show or hide the coordinates of each data point.
- Harmonics are displayed in a bar graph. You can distinguish between parameters by customizing the display style of each parameter. Display options include bar type, hatching, width and color.

Use the following instructions to customize curve styles, bar styles, and curve colors.

Changing the Style of a Curve on the Plot Display Tab

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the curve from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click on the parameter curve in the diagram or its entry in the legend to access the sub-menu directly.
2. Select Curve Properties from the sub-menu. The **Curve Style** dialog box appears.
   - Select the type of curve you want from the Type list. Vista offers seven curve types: a simple line, a line with symbols, a scatter plot of markers, horizontal or vertical bars, or 3-D horizontal or vertical bars.
   - Select **Spline** (available for Line or Line + Symbol types) if you want the line that connects each point to be a smooth curve. If you leave it cleared, each pair of points is connected by a straight line.
   - Select **Fill Area** (available for Line type) to fill the area under the curve with the line color. Clear the check box to leave the area under the curve transparent.
   - The **Marker** section is available for Line + Symbol and Scattered types of lines. Specify the shape, size, and style of the marker used for the points. The Style options apply only to geometric shapes (e.g., circles, boxes, diamonds, etc.).
   - For any line type, click **Line** to change the width and the style (e.g., solid, dotted, dashed, etc.) of the line. For bar graph types, a dialog box appears where you can specify the hatching pattern and the width of the bars.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Changing the Bar Style for the Harmonics Analysis Tab

1. Right-click on the bar (or on its curve sample in the legend) and select Curve Properties. The **Bar Graph Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the type of bar to use from the Type list. This selection is applied to all bars in the graph. Three bar styles are available:
   - **Group Bars**: Shows bars side-by-side
   - **Deep Bars**: Shows bars one behind the other
   - **Stacked Bars**: Shows bars stacked one on top of the other vertically
3. Select a hatching style for the selected bar from the Hatching list. This selection is applied to the currently selected bar only.
4. Set how wide you want each bar to be in the Width text box. The specified width is applied to all bars in the graph. The default depends upon the number of parameters.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Changing the Color of a Curve

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the curve from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click the curve in the diagram or its entry in the legend to access the sub-menu directly.
2. Select Curve Color from the sub-menu. The **Color** dialog box appears.
3. Select the color you want or click **Define Custom Colors** for more options.
4. Click **OK**. The curve changes to the color you selected.

Customizing Graph and Legend Options

After you have plotted data in the Log View Plotter, you can change the color of the graphing area (and the legend) and define a font for the legend.

Changing the Color of the Graphing Area

1. Right-click anywhere in the graph background and select Background Color. The **Color** dialog box appears.
2. Select the color you want or click **Define Custom Colors** for more options.
3. Click **OK**. The graphing area changes to the specified color.

Changing the Font Used in the Legend

1. Right-click on the background of the legend. The **Font** dialog box appears.
2. Specify the font, style, size, effects, and color options that you want to use for the legend text.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Removing Graph Parameters

After you have plotted data in the Log View Plotter, you can remove a parameter from the graph.

1. Right-click on the graph background to display the pop-up menu. Highlight the curve you want to remove from the menu to reveal the sub-menu. You can also right-click the curve in the diagram or its entry in the legend to access the sub-menu directly by right-clicking on the curve.
2. Select Delete Curve from the sub-menu. The curve is deleted without further prompting.

Overlaying Curves in the Log View Plotter

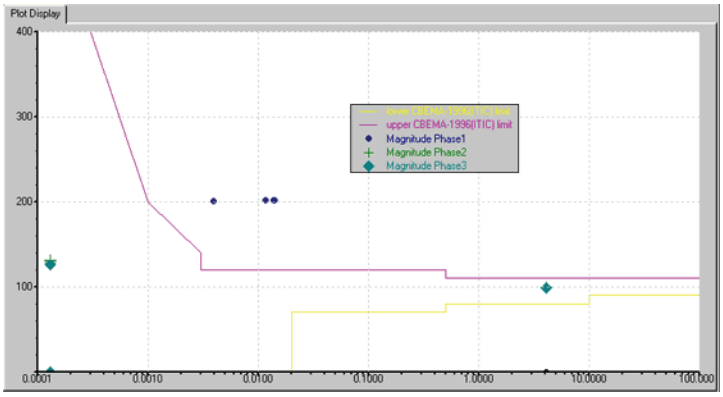
After you plot data in the Log View Plotter, you can overlay a curve onto your graph to help analyze sag/swell data. This applies to devices that measure disturbances in voltage and store the magnitude and duration of these disturbances. When these values are inserted into the ION_Data database, they provide a series of coordinates that can be plotted on a voltage tolerance curve. A voltage tolerance curve is often used to categorize the severity of a voltage disturbance.

NOTE

Most Vista queries are plotted against timestamps (with the timestamp as the x-axis); however, any query that uses the ION Sag/Swell module must be plotted against duration. When plotting sag/swell data, select Duration as the X-parameter of the Log View Plotter.

Vista provides common curves or voltage tolerance envelopes that can be used as overlays in the Log View Plotter:

- **CBEMA/ITIC**: These curves (described by the IEEE 446 standard) define an upper and a lower bound on the types of disturbances that electrical equipment is likely to tolerate. It plots disturbance magnitude against disturbance duration and indicates at what points a voltage disturbance is likely to disrupt or damage equipment. Points near or outside the voltage tolerance envelope indicate events that could interrupt or damage electrical equipment.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **SEMI F47-0200**: This specification defines the voltage sag tolerance capability required for semiconductor processing equipment, though it is now used by other industries. According to the specification, equipment must tolerate sags to 50% of nominal voltage for up to 200 milliseconds, sags to 70% of nominal voltage for up to 0.5 seconds, and sags to 80% of nominal voltage for up to 1 second. Points above the voltage tolerance curve indicate disturbances that exceed these specifications.

Overlaying Curves on Plotted Data

To overlay one of the provided curves, you need a data log viewer that contains the magnitude and duration values for the sag/swell disturbances. The Duration column must be set as the X-parameter for the Log View Plotter—it appears in blue in the data log viewer table (See "X-Parameter for Log View Plotter" on page 149 for more information on setting the X-parameter for Data Log Viewers). The Magnitude values can be in any one of the other columns.

1. In the Data Log Viewer, select a range of cells to be plotted.
2. Select **Edit > Plot Selected Data**. The Log View Plotter window appears with Duration as the x-axis and Magnitude as the y-axis.
3. Right-click on the graph and select Overlay Curve from the pop-up menu. The **Overlay Curve** dialog box appears.
4. Select the text file containing the curve data that you want to overlay (from the ...\ION Enterprise\config\lvp directory).
5. Click **Open**. The selected curve appears in the graph.

   You can review each point in your data and see where it falls in relation to the curve.

NOTE

This process automatically changes your x-axis scale to logarithmic.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Creating and Customizing a User Diagram

The following sections describe:

- How to customize an existing user diagram by customizing the appearance and function of a diagram object or diagram window.
- How to create a new user diagram.
- The various types of diagram objects and how to use each type to add function to your user diagram.

NOTE

You must have the appropriate security clearance to edit or create a user diagram. To determine if you can edit a diagram, select **Options > Show Toolbox**. If you can select this option, then you can edit a diagram. Consult your network administrator if you need to change your access privileges.

NOTE

Any changes you make to a default diagram affect all other devices using the same diagram.

Creating a New User Diagram

To create a new user diagram, login to Vista and select **File > New**. A new (blank) user diagram appears. You can only create a new user diagram if you have Supervisor-level access.

To automatically generate a network diagram based on devices added using Management Console, see "Generating a Network Diagram" on page 94.

Saving a User Diagram

To save changes you made to a user diagram:

1. Select **File > Save** to save a new or existing user diagram or **File > Save As** to save a user diagram under a new name. The **Save New Diagram** box appears.
2. Type a name for the diagram in the File name box then click **Save**.

By default, Vista points to the root of the \ud directory when you attempt to save a new diagram. If required, you can create a new folder within that directory to store your customized diagrams, rather than storing them in the \ud folder.

NOTE

This \ud directory should be located on a networked drive where it can provide multiple users with access to saved user diagrams.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Editing a User Diagram

To edit a user diagram, the Diagram Objects toolbox must be displayed. To open the toolbox, select **Options > Show Toolbox**. If the Show Toolbox option is grayed out, your user account does not have sufficient access; contact your system administrator.

The Enable Undo Option

The Enable Undo option enables or disables the undo feature in Vista. With this option active, you are allowed to undo or "step backward" up to three times. This feature is enabled by default. If you disable the undo feature, you lose the ability to undo any previous changes. You cannot enable the feature and undo changes made prior to enabling the feature. A check mark appears beside Enable Undo in the Options menu when this option is selected.

NOTE

The Show Toolbox option must be selected for the Enable Undo option to become active — it remains unselectable otherwise.

Adding a Diagram Object to a User Diagram

You can add a new diagram object to a user diagram by dragging it from the Diagram Objects toolbox.

Types of Diagram Objects

Diagram objects provide the interface to ION registers in your network. Each diagram object performs a single function. For example, a single numeric object placed in a user diagram displays numeric data from a single source. There are seven types of diagram objects available on the Diagram Objects toolbox:

Grouping Object: Group a number of related objects within a separate grouping window. Click on a grouping object to open the grouping window and display its contents.

Text Box: Display independent headings, titles, and comments in a user diagram.

Numeric Object: Display real-time numeric values such as Volts, Amps or kW.

Status Object: Display Boolean data (On/Off, Yes/No, 1/0, etc.) to indicate the status of a digital output (relay), digital input (status input) or setpoint. The image can be customized and it can be configured to use animation.

Data Log Viewer: Display data logs stored in the ION_Data database (including archives from previous versions of ION Enterprise), show waveform data (waveform capture, waveform recorder) and trends (data recorders) using tables, and provide data for plotting.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Event Log Viewer: Display event logs stored in the ION_Data database (including archives from previous versions of ION Enterprise), show event records from devices and other components, and display and acknowledge alarms.

Control Object: Send commands to a device on your network (for example, clear an energy accumulator, toggle a relay, reset a counter, or adjust the value of an analog output device).

To add a function to a user diagram, choose the type of diagram object you want, drag it into the user diagram then link it to the appropriate register in a node. The following sections explain how to add and link a diagram object.

See "Monitoring Your System in Vista" on page 96 for more information on the function and basic use of each type of diagram object.

Adding a Diagram Object to a User Diagram

1. Select **Options > Show Toolbox** if the toolbox is not displayed. The toolbox appears in the workspace.
2. Click on the diagram object you want and drag it from the toolbox to the diagram.

   In most cases, the object appears in the window as the icon from the toolbox. However, there are two exceptions:

   - A **text box** appears in the window as a rectangular box that displays the default message: "Your text goes here."
   - A **numeric object** appears in the window as a rectangular box with a only colon (:). This indicates that the object is not yet linked to a node.

   The object is now ready to be linked to a real-time or logged data source. See "Linking a Diagram Object to a Data Source" on page 146 for details on linking an object to a source.

NOTE

When a diagram object is placed in a window, it automatically uses the same node as the window. If you want to change this source, either relink each diagram object or change the default window link before placing the objects.

Cutting, Copying, and Pasting a Diagram Object

Use the Cut, Copy and Paste commands on the Edit menu to make a copy of a diagram object and paste it into another window or user diagram.

You can paste the copy as many times as you like to create multiple versions of an object. Each copy retains all of the attributes and linkage information of the original.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Cutting or Copying a Diagram Object

1. Select the object(s).
2. Do one of the following:
   - To remove the original, select **Edit > Cut** then click **Yes** to confirm the deletion or **No** to cancel.
   - To retain the original, select **Edit > Copy**. The selection is copied to the ION Enterprise clipboard.

NOTE

The ION Enterprise clipboard is a temporary storage area that holds any information cut or copied from Vista. It should not be confused with the Microsoft Windows Clipboard.

After the object is copied to the ION Enterprise clipboard, you can paste it into the active window.

Pasting a Diagram Object

1. Select the window you want to paste to.
2. Select **Edit > Paste**. The object appears in the active window.

Copying a Group of Diagram Objects to a Framework

A Vista framework is a template that you can use to record the layout of a group of diagram objects.

When you select **Edit > Copy to framework**, Vista saves the selection (including the type and location of each diagram object) as a file. You can then use the Paste from framework command to copy the group layout to another diagram or grouping window. This is useful for replicating a single configuration on multiple workstations. You can store a saved framework with its own filename and retrieve it anytime.

Copying a Group of Diagram Objects to a Framework

1. Select the group of objects you want to copy.
2. Select **Edit > Copy to framework**. The **Copy to framework** dialog box appears.
3. Type a name for the framework in the File name box then click **Save**. The framework file extension (.fwu) is added automatically.

   The selection is saved as a framework.

After you save a group of objects as a framework, you can paste it to another window.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Pasting a Group of Diagram Objects from a Framework

1. Select the window you want to paste to.
2. Select **Edit > Paste from framework**. The **Paste from framework** dialog box appears.
3. Navigate to the framework you want to paste and click **Open**. The framework selection appears in the active window.

Adjusting Diagram Object Layout and Size

This section describes how to move, align and resize diagram objects.

Moving Diagram Objects

You can move a single diagram object or a group of diagram objects within a single window or from one window to another.

1. Select the object(s) you want to move.
2. Drag the selected object(s) to the new location.

You can also use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move the selected diagram object(s) one space at a time.

When diagram objects overlap, use the Send to Back command to place one object beneath the others. Select the object then select **Edit > Send to Back** (or press CTRL+K).

Resizing a Single Diagram Object

You can adjust the size of a diagram object to make it larger or smaller or you can stretch it horizontally or vertically to change its shape.

1. Click on the diagram object to select it.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To make the object larger or smaller, drag a corner handle.
   - To stretch the object horizontally or vertically, drag a middle handle.

Resizing a Diagram Object(s) to a Standard Size

The Size tab in the Layout dialog box lets you automatically resize a diagram object or group of diagram objects to a set of standard dimensions.

1. Select the diagram objects you want to resize.
2. Select **Edit > Layout** or click . The **Layout** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Size** tab.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

4. Edit the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the object(s) as required.
   - Select **No change** to make no changes to that dimension.
   - Select **Shrink to smallest** or **Grow to largest** to adjust the width and/or height to match that of the smallest or largest object in the selected group.
   - Select **Pixels** to enter the exact width or height in pixels.

   You can also combine horizontal and vertical options on a single selection. For example, if you select Shrink to Smallest in the Horizontal section and 30 pixels in the Vertical section, the entire selection is resized to the width of the shortest object and the specified height of 30 pixels.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Aligning Diagram Objects Relative to Each Other

The Align tab of the Layout dialog box lets you specify the horizontal and vertical arrangement of the selected objects.

1. Select the diagram objects that you want to align.
2. Select **Edit > Layout** or click . The **Layout** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Align** tab to specify the horizontal and vertical alignment of the object(s).

   The options in the Horizontal and Vertical areas determine the criteria by which you can align diagram objects. For example, if you select **Left sides** under Horizontal and **Space evenly** under Vertical, Vista aligns all objects in the selection by their left sides (using the leftmost object for reference) and distributes them evenly along a vertical axis.
4. Select the options you want then click **OK**.

Aligning Diagram Objects on a Grid

The Grid tab of the Layout dialog box lets you activate and configure an invisible grid. Objects placed onto the grid snap to the nearest gridline to help align and space them evenly.

To activate or deactivate the grid:

1. Select **Edit > Layout** or click . The **Layout** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Grid** tab.
3. Select one of the following options:
   - **No grid** turns the grid off.
   - **Grid size in pixels** activates the grid. Type a number in the "Grid size in pixels" box to specify the size of the grid (distance between grid lines).
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing a Diagram Object

After you have placed and linked a diagram object, you can customize it. Right-click on a diagram object in edit mode to display the configuration options available for that object type.

Customizing a Diagram Object

1. Right-click the diagram object. The <Object> Configuration dialog box appears (where <Object> is the type of diagram object selected).
2. Select the appropriate tab and make your changes. Repeat this step for the other tabs until you have made all your desired changes.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes to the diagram object.

The options available vary depending on the tab and the object selected. See the sections below for details on the options available for different tabs and objects.

The Preview Pane

Use the Preview pane to view how your proposed changes will appear in the diagram.

For some tabs, you access dialog boxes by right-clicking on the image in the Preview pane (for example, the Display tab of a numeric object). More information is given in the relevant sections that follow.

Available Configuration Options

The following table lists the various configuration options available for each type of diagram object.

	Available Option Tabs										
	Caption	Text	Edit Text	Link (or Node)[1]	Query Server[2]	Display	Action	Box	Annunciation	Query[3]	Alarming
Grouping Object	x			x	x	x	x				
Text Box Object		x	x					x			
Numeric Object	x	x		x	x	x	x	x			
Status Object	x	x		x	x	x	x		x		
Data Log Viewer	x				x					x	
Event Log Viewer	x				x					x	x
Control Object	x	x		x	x	x	x				

[1] Node is the tab available with Grouping Objects

[2] Query Server is only available on Grouping, Numeric, Status and Control objects when the Action is set to something other than None.

[3] See "Querying the Database" on page 148 for information on configuring this option.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Caption Options

To view caption options, right-click on the object then select the **Caption** tab.

Use the Caption tab to add custom, user-defined text to a diagram object. The Caption tab is available for the following diagram objects: Grouping, Numeric, Status, Data Log Viewer, Event Log Viewer, and Control.

The Caption tab contains three sections: Caption, Font, and Position.

The **Caption** section determines whether a diagram object displays a textual comment along with the diagram object's icon. This section has three options:

- Select **None** to display no caption.
- Select **Use default** to display the default Vista caption (i.e., the device name or data source).
- Select **Use custom** to display the text that you type into the field provided.

The **Font** section allows you to change the font used in a caption. This section has two options:

- Select **Inherit from parent window** to use the default font.
- Select **Custom** to specify a custom font. Click **Font** to display the **Font** dialog box and change the font, size, style or color.

The **Position** section has two options:

- Select **Top** to place the caption above the diagram object.
- Select **Bottom** to place the caption below the diagram object.

Text Options

Some diagram objects have a text label integrated into the display. To edit the appearance of this label, use the options offered on the **Text** tab. The Text tab is available for the following diagram objects: Numeric, Status, Control, and Text.

NOTE

You can edit the text displayed in a text label. For a numeric, status or control object, use the Label section of the Link tab. For a text box object, use the Edit Text tab.

To view the Text options, right-click on the object then select the **Text** tab. The **Text** tab has two sections: Font and Position.

The **Font** section has two options:

- Select **Inherit from parent window** to use the default font
- Select **Custom** to specify a custom font. Click **Font** to display the **Font** dialog box and change the font, size, style or color.

The **Position** section has three options — **Left**, **Center** and **Right** — to define the alignment of the text in relation to the diagram object. Use the Preview area located beside the Text tab to view your proposed changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Edit Text Options

To view the Edit Text options, right-click on the object then select the **Edit Text** tab.

Use the Edit Text tab to specify a text message for the text box. The Edit Text tab is available on the text box object only.

The Edit Text tab has two options:

- **Use default** displays the window link information (i.e., the node).
- **Use custom** displays your custom text message.

If you select custom, use the text box to enter your text. The text box supports multiple lines of text. If your message appears incomplete or truncated after you enter text and click **OK**, you can adjust the dimensions of the text box object. To resize a text box, select it then drag its handles.

The font used in the text box is based on the default setting specified for the active window. Use the Text tab to specify a different font or position for the text box. Use the Box tab to specify a border style or change the background color.

Link Options

To view the link options, right-click on the object then select the **Link** tab.

Use the Link tab to link a diagram object to a real-time source, and to specify a new text label. The Link tab is available for the following diagram objects: Numeric, Status, and Control.

NOTE

To set a real-time source for a grouping object, use the Node tab.

The Link tab contains two sections: Link and Label.

Use the **Link** section to specify a real-time source for the diagram object. See "Linking a Numeric, Status or Control Object" on page 146 for more information.

Use the **Label** section to change the object's text label. The Label section has three options:

- Select **None** to display no label.
- Select **Use node label** to display the node's register label. This is the default.
- Select **Custom** to display the label that you type into the text field provided. The custom labels you create are stored in the user diagram and are only available to users of your diagram.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

If you have specified custom labels in your diagram, or custom labels have been applied to an ION meter at the device level, you can display the default labels at any time by selecting Show Default Labels from the Options menu. This displays the default label of the data source instead of the label assigned in the device or in the user diagram.

Query Server Options

Use the Query Server tab to connect a diagram object to a Query Server. The Query Server tab is available on the Data Log Viewer and Event Log Viewer objects. See "Linking a Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer" on page 147 for more information.

The Query Server tab is also available on grouping objects and any object configured to open a grouping window or user diagram. In this case, use the Query Server tab to specify a default Query Server for the associated grouping window or user diagram. See "Query Server: Setting a Default Query Server for a Window" on page 157 for more information.

Display Options

Use the Display tab to customize the appearance of a diagram object. The Display tab is available for the following diagram objects: Numeric, Status, Control, and Grouping.

The Display tab offers a unique set of options for each type of diagram object. To view the display options, right-click on the diagram object then select the **Display** tab.

Customizing the Display of a Numeric Object

Numeric objects display real-time data in your user diagram. The default numeric object appears as a rectangular alphanumeric display with a single decimal place of resolution and no unit symbol. You can customize the display to change any of these default elements.

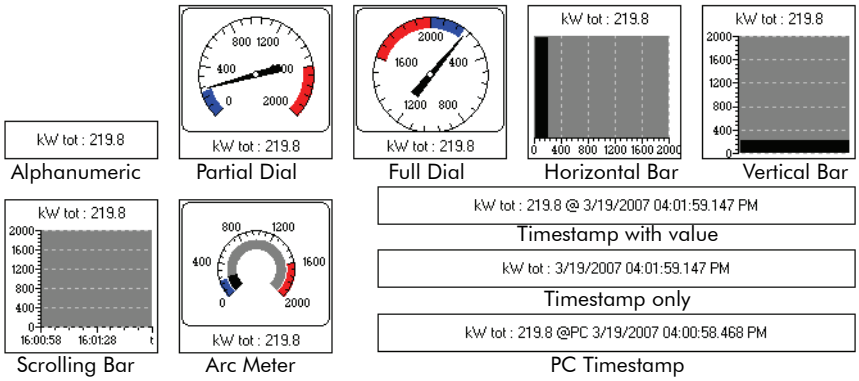
NOTE

Vista supports a maximum of 59 non-alphanumeric numeric objects within a single window. To change the way numbers are displayed (thousands separator and decimal point), use the Regional Settings option of the Windows Control Panel. You can also use this option to customize the time and date styles. (The year/month/day format can be modified, and the clock can be changed from am/pm to 24 hour.)

Setting Display Style

The **Display style** box lets you select a new style from the list of available choices. The following styles are available:

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



- Alphanumeric: Default style. General-use text display.
- Partial Dial: General use voltage, current, harmonic distortion, etc.
- Full Dial: Power factor, bi-directional power flow, etc.
- Horizontal Bar: General use.
- Vertical Bar: General use.
- Scrolling Graph Display: General use. Displays recent readings on a scrolling graph.
- Arc Meter Display: General use voltage, current, harmonic distortion, etc.
- Timestamped Display: Displays the value, and the date and time the value was measured by the device. Useful for min./max. values.
- Timestamp Only: Same as time-stamped, but does not display a value. Can be used as a clock.
- PC Timestamped Display: Displays the value, and the date and time the value was received by Vista.

Setting Units and Resolution

Use the **Units** box to type the unit name for the measured value (e.g., "Volts" or "Amps"). This name is displayed on the numeric object.

In certain cases, the value is scaled. For example, if the unit name begins with K, M, or G (e.g., kV or MVolts), the displayed value is adjusted accordingly. However, if the unit contains certain letters (i.e., kW or kVA), the scaling factor is reduced by 1,000 (for example, if the unit begins with K, the value is not scaled and M is scaled by 1,000). The reason for this is that most devices provide these values already scaled.

Use the **Resolution** box to specify the number of decimal places to be displayed for a numeric object. The default value is 1, but this can be increased to take advantage of any extra resolution available from the data source.

NOTE

Specifying higher resolution does not result in higher accuracy than the specified accuracy of the device.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Setting the Font Options

Use the **Ticks Labels Font** section to define font options (such as style, size, and color) for the numeric object. This section has two options:

- Select **Inherit from parent window** to use the default style.
- Select **Custom** to specify a custom style, then click **Font** to display the **Font** dialog box and make your changes.

Setting Flags

Use the **Flags** button to display the Normal Operating Range dialog box. Use this dialog box to set a Low Limit and a High Limit and define a normal operating range to be displayed on the numeric object. After flags have been set, you can use them to quickly determine whether a reading is within the normal range you defined.

The effect of setting these limits depends on the display style you have specified. For example, on the Partial Dial, Full Dial, and Arc Meter displays, flags appear as colored ranges on the dial. On other types of numeric objects, the flag function changes the object's background color whenever a limit is exceeded.

By default, Low Flag color is blue and High Flag color is red; however, you can specify any colors you want. Select **Options > Flag Colors** to display a dialog box where you can edit these options.

NOTE

The flags used in Vista are not linked to setpoints in ION meters. Setpoint activity is automatically logged by the Log Inserter. Setpoint status can be monitored using a status object and/or data log viewer.

Other Display Options for Vertical or Horizontal Bar Graphs

In the Preview section of a vertical or horizontal bar graph Display tab:

- Right-click on the axis labels to display the Axis Labels dialog box. Select the Format (Decimal, Scientific, or Engineering) and determine the Axis Title (none or custom text).
- Right-click the axis tick marks to display the Vertical or Horizontal Axis dialog box. Configure the Range, Ticks and Grid style. Select Logarithmic scale to enable the logarithmic scale option.

Other Display Options for Partial Dial, Full Dial and Arc Meter Displays

To configure meter parameters on partial dial, full dial or arc meter displays, right-click anywhere in the Preview section of the Display tab.

Set the Range, Arc Position, Ticks, and dial Position. For full and partial dial displays, set the label position to inside or outside. Click Line Attributes to set the style and width of the dial.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Other Display Options for Scrolling Graphs

In the Preview section of the Display tab:

- Right-click the vertical or horizontal axis tick marks to bring up the Vertical and Time Axis dialog boxes. Set the Range and Ticks, and (for the vertical axis) Grids Style.
- Right-click on the vertical axis labels to display the Axis Labels dialog box. Select the Format (Decimal, Scientific, or Engineering) and determine the Axis Title (none or custom text).
- Right-click on the graph background to display the Scrolling Graph dialog box where you can set the Sample Interval and Relative Reset.

  The sample interval determines the resolution of the X-axis in seconds. It should be set between one tenth and one hundredth of the X-axis range; for example, when extending the range to one hour (3600 seconds), the sample interval should be set to approximately 60 seconds.

  The relative reset is a percentage that determines the amount the scrolling graph shifts back upon filling the plotting area. (For example, a relative reset of 0.5 shifts back 50%; a relative reset of 0.99 scrolls the most smoothly.)

Customizing the Display of a Status Object

Status objects display the status of Boolean "on/off" conditions in one of three ways: an indicator light, an alphanumeric field, or a custom image.

To view the display options of a status object, right-click on the object then select the **Display** tab.

NOTE

To invert the default color scheme, select "Invert active state" from the Annunciation tab.

The Display tab has three options:

- Select **Default image** to display the default indicator light image, which changes color to indicate various conditions: by default, green indicates an OFF condition, red indicates an ON condition and gray indicates a status object that is not connected or is not receiving information.
- Select **Custom images** to use custom images for each condition. Custom images can show animation, customized buttons, alarm messages, etc.

  Enter the filename of the image in the appropriate box (ON, OFF, or Unconnected). To hide the status object in a given state, leave the appropriate box blank.

  Currently, the custom image option supports the following graphic file formats: BMP, WMF (Windows Metafile), EMF, and AVI (without audio and uncompressed or compressed using RLE8 compression).

  You can use three different files to represent the three display states (ON, OFF, and Unconnected) of a status object. Each of these files can also be of a different type (e.g., BMP, AVI, and WMF).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

Vista no longer uses the 6-frame bitmap format for Boolean custom images. However, if you are a user of an earlier version of Vista and have upgraded, your existing graphics still work. If the "6-frame bitmap" check box is selected, you can use the same file for all three states. Vista uses the first frame to display the Unconnected state, the second frame for the OFF state, and the last frame for the ON state. If no file name is provided in the entry box of a state, nothing is displayed when the status object is in that state.

- Select **Alphanumeric** to display the Boolean state labels stored in the device and choose custom colors to visually indicate the corresponding states.

  For example, suppose "Running" has been stored in a meter as the label for the Boolean register that stores the ON condition of a motor relay and "Stopped" for the OFF condition. You can show this register label together with the status label using the alphanumeric display style. You can override the meter labels on the Link tab.

  Click **ON Color** and **OFF Color** to specify the colors associated with each condition.

Customizing the Display of a Grouping Object

The grouping object can be displayed as the default image, a custom image, or no image. You can customize the display to change any of these default elements.

To view the display options of a grouping object, right-click on the object then select the **Display** tab.

The Display tab has three options:

- Select **Default image** to use the default image for a grouping object that appears in the toolbox.
- Select **Custom image** to display a custom image. Enter the filename of the image you want to use. The filename should include the file's extension (for example, .bmp, .wmf, .emf, or .avi).
- Select **None** to hide the grouping object. With no image specified, the grouping object is transparent unless you select it (displaying the handles). If you move the mouse over a transparent object, the status line displays the size and object type (for example, "30x30:Grouping Object" in the status line means the hidden object is a grouping object and its size is 30 pixels by 30 pixels).

  Hiding a grouping object is especially effective when using a custom background image; you can integrate your transparent grouping objects into the image by placing them at the appropriate points on the drawing. Users can display site-specific information by double-clicking on the appropriate spot in the background. See "Image: Displaying a Background Image" on page 156 for information on using a custom background.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing the Display of a Control Object

A control object appears differently depending on the type of register to which it is linked. This same criteria also determines the display options available.

To view the display options of a control object, right-click the object then select the **Display** tab.

The options available depend on the type of control object.

External Numeric

A control object that is linked to an External Numeric module appears as an alphanumeric display box. The Display tab has the following sections: Border and Background Color.

In the **Border** section, select Hide to show no border or select Show to display a border. If you select Show, you can specify the width in pixels and click **Color** to choose a color for the border.

In the **Background Color** section, select Transparent for no background or select Custom then click **Color** to define a color for the background.

External Pulse

A control object that is linked to an External Pulse module appears as a button icon, by default. The Display tab has three options: Default image, Custom image and None.

Select Default image to display the button icon. Select Custom image and click **Browse** to select a different image. Select None to show no image (the control object is hidden but still functions).

External Boolean

A control object that is linked to an External Boolean module appears as a switch icon, by default. The Display tab has two options: Default image or Custom images.

Select Default image to display the switch icon. Select Custom images then click **Browse** to define custom images for ON, OFF and Unconnected. To hide the control object for a given state, leave the appropriate box blank. Currently, the custom image option supports the following graphic file formats: BMP, WMF (Windows Metafile), EMF, and AVI (without audio and uncompressed or compressed using RLE8 compression).

NOTE

Vista no longer uses the 6-frame bitmap format for Boolean custom images. However, if you are a user of an earlier version of Vista and have upgraded, your existing graphics still work. If the "6-frame bitmap" check box is selected, you can use the same file for all three states. Vista uses the first frame to display the UNCONNECTED state, the second frame for the OFF state, and the last frame for the ON state. If no file name is provided in the entry box of a state, nothing is displayed when the status object is in that state.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Action Options

To view the action options, right-click on the diagram object then select the **Action** tab.

Use the Action tab to specify the response of a diagram object when it is clicked (in Display mode) or double-clicked (in Edit mode).

The Action tab is available for the following diagram objects: Numeric, Status, Grouping, and Control objects. Depending on the type of diagram object, the Action tab displays one of two sets of options:

- Specify an action for a numeric, status, or grouping object
- Customize the action for a control object

Specifying Action for Numeric, Status, or Grouping Objects

NOTE

If you change the action for a grouping object that is already associated with a grouping window, the existing window (and any objects within it) is deleted. Vista displays a warning before performing this action.

When you right-click on a numeric, status, or grouping object, the Action tab displays the available options:

- Select **None** if you do not want the object to support an action. This is the default for numeric, status, and grouping objects.
- Select **Open Grouping Window** to open a grouping window when the object is clicked. You can use this grouping window to display additional information. For example, if a numeric object displays a total value (such as total kW), you can display specific information (such as kW readings for each phase) in an associated grouping window.
- The **Open Diagram for Meter Template** option is used by default each time a network diagram is generated. Each meter icon in the network diagram is set to open the default diagrams that match that meter's configuration.
- Select **Open User Diagram** to open a user diagram when the object is clicked. Type the full path and filename into the field provided or click **Browse** to locate the diagram you want. Using this action, you can choose a diagram object that displays a representative reading from an independent diagram and use it to open the other diagram when clicked.
- Select **Open File** to open a file when the object is clicked. Type the full path and filename into the field provided or click **Browse** to locate the file you want. The file can be a third-party program or some other document; if a document is specified, then the program associated with the file extension is launched and the specified document is loaded into the application.
- Select **Open Web Page** to open a specified webpage in your default web browser when the object is clicked. Type the complete address into the field provided.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

When you select any action other than None, the Query Server tab is added to the top of the object configuration box. You can use this tab to specify a source of logged data for the new user diagram or grouping window. If you enter only the filename into the field provided (and do not specify a directory), Vista defaults to ..\ION Enterprise\config\diagrams\ud.

Customizing the Action for a Control Object

To view the action options of a control object, right-click on the control object and select the Action tab.

The Action tab offers three options that you can use to define how the control object responds when clicked:

- Select **No confirmation** to have no confirmation message displayed.
- Select **Message box confirmation** to display a message box when the object is clicked. The message box requires the user to click either **OK** or **Cancel**.
- Select **Password confirmation** to request the user's logon password when an object is clicked.

The **Level to operate** list allows you to specify the access level required to perform the action. See "User Manager" on page 55 for more information on access levels and their permissions.

Box Options

To view the Box options, right-click on the object then select the **Box** tab.

Use the Box tab to add a border or background color to a diagram object. The Box tab is available for the following diagram objects: Numeric, Text Box, and any status object that has been configured as an alphanumeric display

The Box tab has two sections:

- **Border** lets you adjust a border's width and color as well as whether or not it is displayed. Select **Hide** to remove the border or **Show** to display it. If you select Show, click **Color** to define a border color and type a number in the **Width in pixels** field to change the line thickness.
- **Background Color** lets you set the background color of an object. Select **Transparent** to use the background color of the parent window or select **Custom** and click **Color** to select another color.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Annunciation Options

To view the annunciation options, right-click on the status object then select the **Annunciation** tab.

Use the Annunciation tab to specify how users are notified of a change of status. The Annunciation tab is available on the Status Object only.

NOTE

The Annunciation feature requires that the Status Object's diagram is displayed; if the display is closed or minimized, then the annunciation feature does not work.

To view the annunciation options, right-click on the status object then select the **Annunciation** tab.

The Annunciation tab has three options that set the action that Vista performs when a status object becomes active:

- Select **Command line** to automatically launch another application in the event of a change in status. Type the program's executable (.exe) command into the field provided or click **Browse** to locate the appropriate file.
- Select **Message box** to specify an annunciation message. Type your message into the field provided. The first line of text appears as the title of the message box.
- Select **Invert active state** to change the way the status object reacts to an active state. When this option is selected, the status object treats an active state as inactive and vice-versa. This is useful, for example, in cases when you want to be notified if a function (such as a cooling fan) switches off.

NOTE

If you select the Invert active state check box, this also inverts the default colors of the status object.

Alarming Options

Every type of event that occurs in an ION Enterprise network has a prioritized value that identifies its relative significance on a scale of zero to 255. By default, Vista identifies any event with a priority of 128 or greater as an alarm.

To view the Alarming options, right-click on the Event or Global Event Log Viewer then select the **Alarming** tab.

Use the **Alarming** tab to create or delete a priority range, specify the security level required to acknowledge an alarm, or customize the way Vista annunciates an alarm.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Alarming tab has three main sections:

- **Priority ranges** lists the currently configured alarm ranges. When you select a range in the Priority ranges section (for example "Range 192-255"), the other sections (Level to Acknowledge and Annunciation) display the current settings for that range. You can proceed to modify any of these settings for the specified range. (Your changes affect only the currently selected priority range.)

  Click **New** to add a new priority range. In the **Priority** dialog box, type a number representing the lower limit of the new range then click **OK**. The upper limit of the new range is automatically defined by the lower limit of the existing range. For example, if you have an existing range of 128-191, you can type 100 then click **OK** and the range 100-127 appears. To delete an existing range, select it and click **Delete**.

- The **Level to acknowledge** list specifies the access level required to acknowledge alarms in the selected range.

- **Annunciation** lets you customize the way Vista annunciates an alarm:

  - Select Beep to play a beeping sound.
  - Select Flash to have a flashing display.
  - Select Command line to have Vista to automatically launch another application in the event of an alarm. Type the program's executable (.exe) command into the field provided or click **Browse** to locate the appropriate file. This option can be used to automatically alert other users of specific events through paging systems, fax transmissions, or any other command line capable application.
  - Select Message box to display an annunciation message. When you select this option, type your message into the field provided. The first line of text appears as the title of the message box and the remaining text appears as the content of the message box.

  By default, Vista uses a beeping sound to annunciate an event with a priority between 128-191 and a beeping sound combined with a flashing display to annunciate an event with a priority between 192-255.

NOTE

If your computer is equipped with a sound card, you can replace the default alarm sound with a custom sound. Save the sound file you want to use as "alarm.wav" and store it in the ..\ION Enterprise\system\etc directory.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Linking a Diagram Object to a Data Source

After placing an object in your user diagram, you need to link the object to a data source. Some types of diagram objects require a real-time data source and others require a logged data source:

- Numeric, status, and control objects require a real-time data source. You can link these diagram objects to a device.
- Event Log Viewers and Data Log Viewers require a logged data source. You can link these diagram objects to any log in your system.

Linking a Numeric, Status or Control Object

This section describes how to link a numeric, status, or control object to a node. Numeric, status, and control objects display real-time data. After you have placed one of these objects into a user diagram, you should link it to a real-time data source. An object cannot receive or display information until it is linked.

Specifying a Real-Time Link to a Node

1. Right-click on the diagram object you want to link. The **Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Link** tab.

   The Link tab contains two sections: Link and Label. Use the **Label** section to define a label for the diagram object (see "Link Options" on page 135 for information on the Label section) and use the **Link** section to choose a real-time source.
3. Select one of the following:
   - **Inherit from parent window**: The selected diagram object defaults to the same node used by the parent window (the window in which the object resides). You must specify a real-time register within the node, but the node itself is pre-selected.
   - **Custom**: Allows you to select a new node. Select **ION** to choose a different device than that used by the parent window.
4. Click **Edit Link**. The **Create Link** dialog box appears.
5. Specify a node, manager, module and output register.

   Double-click the node in the Nodes box that contains the data source you want. If you chose Inherit from parent window in step 3, the node is preselected.

   Double-click the manager you want (e.g., Power Meter modules) from the Managers box.

   Double-click the module you want from the Modules box (e.g., Power Meter).

   Double-click the output register you want from the Output Registers box (e.g.,Vll avg).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

6. Click **OK** in the **Create Link** dialog box to save your changes.

   The **Create Link** dialog box disappears and the new link information is displayed along the lower edge of the **Configuratio**n dialog box.

7. Click **OK** on the **Configuration** dialog box to save your new configuration.

Linking a Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer

The Event Log Viewer and Data Log Viewer display logged data. After you have placed an Event Log Viewer or Data Log Viewer object into a user diagram, you need to link it to the ION Query Service.

Linking a Diagram Object to the ION Query Service

1. Right-click on the Event or Data Log Viewer object you want to link.
2. Select the **Query Server** tab in the **Configuratio**n dialog box.

   The **Query Server** tab has two options:

   - Select **Inherit from parent window** to have the selected diagram object default to the same Query Server used by the parent window (the window in which the object resides). If you select this option, click **OK** to exit, skip the following steps, and continue with "Querying the Database" on page 148.
   - Select **Custom Query Server** and click **Edit Link** to display a dialog box where you can select a new Query Server link.

3. Select Custom Query Server and click **Edit Link**. The **Create Link** dialog box appears.

   Use this dialog box to specify the Query Server, Query Manager, Query module, and Query register.

   Double-click on the Query Server that you want from the Nodes box.

   Double-click Query Modules from the Managers box.

   Double-click on the Query module that you want from the Modules box.

   Double-click on the Query Register that you want from the Output Registers box.

4. Click **OK** on the **Create Link** dialog box to save your changes.

   The name of the selected ION Query Service is displayed as the Group Name on the Query Server tab of the **Configuration** dialog box.

5. Click **OK** on the **Configuration** dialog box to accept your new configuration.

After you have linked a diagram object to a log server, you need to define a query to specify the type(s) of logged data that you want the object to display. See "Querying the Database" on page 148 for more information.

NOTE

If the Query Server has multiple Query modules that are accessing multiple databases, you need to select the Query module that is connected to the database that contains the data of interest.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Querying the Database

The Data Log Viewer, the Event Log Viewer and the Global Event Log Viewer query the database, extract logged data, and display that data in Vista.

A query is a set of instructions that the log viewer uses to request particular data from the database. Each log viewer has its own individual query. Editing this query information changes what data the query retrieves and the way a log viewer displays that data.

Right-click on the data or event log viewer object and select the Query tab to view the query options or access the Query Wizard. Use the query options to define the way a viewer displays data and the Query Wizard to edit the actual query.

NOTE

Anytime you place and link a new Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer, you need to specify a query for it. You can specify a query using the Query Wizard.

Using the Query Options

To define the way a log viewer displays information, configure its query options.

To view the query options for an Event Log Viewer, Data Log Viewer, or Global Event Log Viewer, right-click on the viewer object. The **Configuration** dialog box appears. Select the **Query** tab.

The upper section of the Query tab offers two buttons:

- **Edit Query** starts the Query Wizard, a user-friendly interface that helps you edit the query.
- **Edit SQL** accesses the SQL statement via Windows Notepad so you can edit the query directly using SQL, if preferred.

NOTE

If you edit a query directly (i.e., by editing the SQL statement), your changes may not be accessible to the Query Wizard. This is not a problem unless you intend to use the Query Wizard as well.

The **Options** section of the Query tab offers the following options:

- **Records uploaded at a time**: This option specifies the number of records Vista uploads into active memory (RAM) when you first open a Data or Event Log Viewer. The maximum value is 9999. As you scroll down the list of records, Vista uploads additional records as needed. You may want to change this default value if, for example, you want to select a large number of records for plotting, without scrolling down repeatedly.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Update automatically**: This option is disabled (cleared) by default. The Data or Event Log Viewer does not display any new records; rather, the Log Viewer initially uploads the specified number of records (for example 100) and does not update again unless it is closed (and its query results deleted) then reopened.

  With this option selected, the Log Viewer continually receives and displays new records up to a maximum of 1000 records; the Log Viewer checks for new records every 20 seconds. However, the updates can consume a noticeable amount of CPU power, especially if several Log Viewers remain open simultaneously or if Log Viewers are uploading waveform data.

  The Global Event Log Viewer is hard-coded to update automatically every 10 seconds. This prevents you from missing alarms.

- **Delete query on close**: This option is enabled (selected) by default. The Log Viewer clears its temporary records from active memory (RAM) upon closing so that every time a Log Viewer is opened, the database is queried again and all available records are displayed. (This option does not affect any original records stored in the database.)

  If this option is disabled, Vista caches the record set returned to the Log Viewer, meaning that if the Log Viewer is closed then reopened, the table is populated from memory and not from the database. Any new records inserted into the database during the time the Log Viewer was initially open do not appear.

NOTE

Since it is recommended that Update automatically remain disabled in all but the most compelling circumstances, it is important that the Delete query on close option remains enabled.

- **Use parent node**: With this option selected, the log viewer uses the same node linkage as the parent window. The node is also pre-selected in the Query Wizard - you should not select this option if you intend to query more than one node or query the global event log.

X-Parameter for Log View Plotter

For a Data Log Viewer, the X-Parameter for Log View Plotter section is offered at the bottom of the Query tab. Use this section to specify a column to be used on the X-axis of the Log View Plotter. This section offers two options:

- **Timestamp** is selected as the X-parameter by default. In some cases, you may need to specify a different X-parameter. For example, when you are plotting disturbances, you need to plot your data against the Duration column.
- **Use column #** lets you specify a new x-parameter. In the field provided, type the column number that you want to use as the X-parameter (e.g., 3). When you click **OK** on the Data Log Viewer Configuration box, the specified column changes to blue.

NOTE

In the Data Log Viewer, the column specified for the X-parameter is colored blue for easy identification.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using the Query Wizard

The Query Wizard helps you edit an existing query or create a new query for a Data Log Viewer, Event Log Viewer, or Global Event Log Viewer.

1. Right-click on the log viewer that you want to configure.
2. Select the **Query** tab in the Configuration box.
3. Click **Edit Query**. The Query Wizard appears.

   The Query Wizard consists of four steps designed to guide you through the process of editing a query. These steps are described in more detail in the following sections.

   - Selecting the node(s) to query.
   - Specifying logs within the specified node(s).
   - Specifying columns and specifying filters.
   - Choosing a sort order.

   Depending on the type of query (new or existing), you may not need to perform all four steps. When you start the Query Wizard, it automatically opens on the appropriate step in the process.
4. Use the four buttons at the bottom of the Query Wizard to move through or exit the Query Wizard:
   - Use the **Back** and **Next** buttons to navigate through the dialog boxes.
   - Click **Cancel** to quit the Query Wizard and discard your changes.
   - Click **Finish** to quit the Query Wizard and save your changes.
5. When finished, click **OK** to save your changes and close the viewer configuration box.

The following example describes each step in the process of creating a typical query: configuring a Data Log Viewer to display waveforms for three phases (V1, V2, V3).

Step 1: Selecting the node(s)

The Available list displays the available nodes (device or software) and the Selected list displays the currently selected nodes.

Select a node (or nodes) for your query. If a node has already been specified or you select Use Parent Node on the Query tab, the Query Wizard proceeds directly to Step 2: Specifying logs.

1. Click **Edit Query** on the **Query** tab of the Log Viewer Configuration dialog box to start the Query Wizard.
2. Highlight the name of the node that you want from the Available list and click **Add**. The node appears in the Selected list. Repeat this procedure to add additional nodes for this query, if required.

   If you want to remove a node from the Selected list, highlight the node and click **Remove**. The node disappears from the Selected list.
3. Click **Next** to continue.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

If you want to view or edit a node's SQL statement directly, highlight the node in the Selected list and click the **SQL** button. The Windows Notepad displays the SQL statement for the specified node.

Step 2: Specifying logs

Specify one or more data logs to query. If a valid query has already been specified, the Query Wizard proceeds directly to Step 3: Specifying columns.

The Available list displays the logs available on the specified node. The Selected list displays the currently selected logs.

1. Highlight the name of the log(s) that you want from the Available list and click **Add**. The log(s) appears in the Selected list.

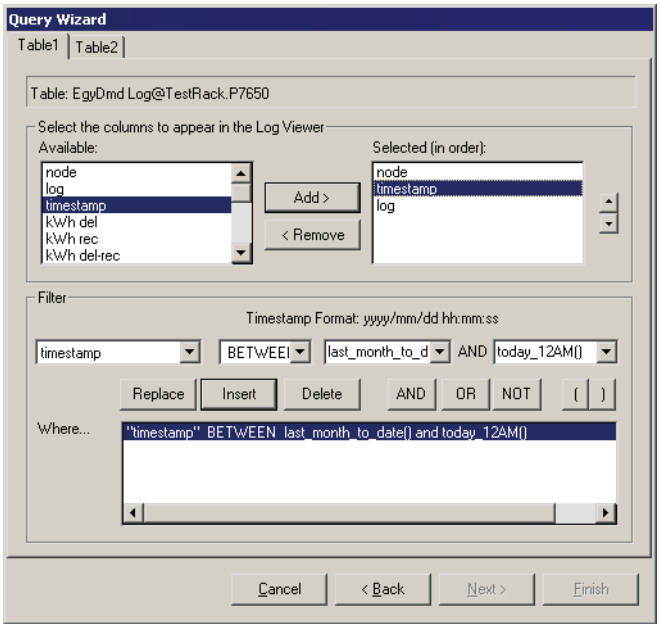
NOTE

Check for additional tabs. If you selected more than one node in step 1, this box requires you to specify logs for each node. Each tab is labeled "Node 1," "Node 2," etc. and is identified at the top of each tab. Select "Advanced log view" to access any logs whose configuration has changed over time. This check box enables access to old configurations of snapshot logs.

2. Click **Next** to continue.

Step 3: Specifying Columns and Filters

Choose columns and specify filter settings.



Use the **Select the columns to appear in the Log Viewer** section to add or remove a column from your log viewer and the **Filter** section to establish a range for your query and to screen out unwanted data.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

If you selected multiple logs in step 2, this box contains a tab for each log. Specify the column and filter information for each tab.

Specifying Columns to Appear in the Log Viewer

The Available list displays the available columns and the Selected list displays the currently selected columns. The Selected list displays the columns in the same order (left to right) that they will appear in the log viewer (top to bottom).

To specify the columns to appear in the Log Viewer:

1. Highlight the name of the column(s) you want then click **Add**. The column(s) appears in the Selected list.

   Select the asterisk (*) at the top of the Available list to select all available columns.

   For example, if you want to select some basic columns for the first waveform log you chose in the last step, you could highlight timestamp, node, and V1 in the Available list.

NOTE

The * column option shows all inputs connected to a recorder for Data Log Viewers. For example, use the * option if you are using a framework and the configuration of the data log is different for several meters. The * option is not available if more than one table is selected, as in the example. To support alarm annunciation, an Event Log Viewer requires the following three columns: priority, ack_time and recordID.

2. Repeat this procedure for each column that you want (and for each tab).

3. Adjust the order of the items in the Selected column—highlight the column name you want to move in the **Selected (in order)** list then click the up or down arrows to move it. The columns are listed from top to bottom in the order they will appear from left to right.

   For example, if you want the Timestamp column to be the first (leftmost) column in your log viewer, highlight "timestamp" in the **Selected (in order)** section then click the up arrow to move it to the top of the list.

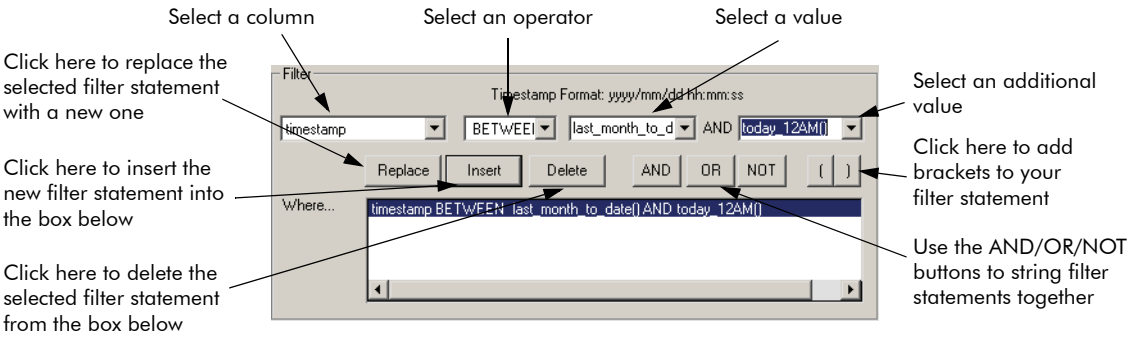
After you have selected the columns you want, proceed to specify filter settings.

Specifying a Filter

Use the Filter section to construct one or more filter statements for your log viewer. Filters are useful for restricting the scope of your query or specifying a priority range for alarms.

To edit an existing filter statement, double-click on it.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



For example, if you want to instruct the log viewer to display data for the past month (excluding today), you could use the following procedure:

1. In the first box, select “timestamp”.
2. In the second box, select “BETWEEN”.
3. In the third box, select “last_month_to_date()”.
4. In the fourth box, select “today_12AM()”.
5. Click **Insert**.

   The following filter appears in the box below the filter controls:

   “timestamp” BETWEEN last_month_to_date() and today_12AM()

NOTE

When setting priorities for a Global Event Log Viewer, specify high priorities to prevent the viewer from filling up with low-priority events.

If you wanted to instruct an Event Log Viewer to display only unacknowledged alarms, create a filter that only displays alarms that have no acknowledgement time (ack-time).

1. In the first box, select “ack-time”
2. In the second box, select “IS NULL”
3. Click **Insert**.

   The following filter appears in the box below the filter controls:

   “ack_time” IS NULL

As you construct a filter statement, each field offers options based on your selection in the previous field(s). For example, if you select “priority” in the first field, the third field becomes a text field where you can type a numeric value; if you select “timestamp” in the first field, the third field displays time-based options (i.e., now, today 12AM, yesterday, etc.).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Time-related functions	
now_()	The current time.
today_12AM()	Today at 00:00:00.
yesterday()	Yesterday at 00:00:00.
last_week()	Seven days ago at 00:00:00.
this_month()	The first day of this month at 00:00:00.
last_month_to_date()	The same date of the month one calendar month ago at 00:00:00.
last_month()	The first day of the last calendar month at 00:00:00.
last_quarter_to_date()	The first day of the month three calendar months ago at 00:00:00.

The second field offers a standard set of operators.

Operator-Specific Data

If you select an operator that requires additional information, Vista displays a dialog box where you can specify the required data.

For example, if you select the "node" column in the first field then select the "IN" operator from the second field, a dialog box appears requesting that you specify the node you want to use.

If you specify any column other than "node" then select "IN", a box appears requesting numeric values.

After you have specified a filter, click **Next** to continue.

Step 4: Choosing a Sort Order

Specify a sort order. The sort order is the order in which records appear in the viewer.

1. Highlight the name of the column to sort by in the Available Columns list then click **Add**. The column appears in the Sort Order list.

   Available Columns displays the columns you chose in step 3.

2. Double-click on the column in the Sort Order list to select either an ascending or descending sort order.

   The Sort Order list displays the column(s) that dictate the order in which the records are sorted.

3. Click **Finish** to save your changes and quit the Query Wizard.
4. Click **OK** in the Configuration box to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing a Diagram Window

You can customize the appearance and configuration of any window within a user diagram. You can customize a window's font or background color, or configure window properties such as background image, real-time and logged data links, double-click action, and stale data settings.

In many cases, Vista uses the properties specified for the parent window as the default settings for any diagram objects or grouping windows contained within. By modifying a setting in the parent window, you automatically modify the same property on all objects inside the window that share this setting. (For example, any object with an option set to Inherit from parent window shares this information.) This can be useful when adding multiple diagram objects that are all linked to the same source.

To access any of these options, right-click anywhere in the background of the user diagram or window that you want to customize.

NOTE

Right-clicking in the background of a window displays a pop-up menu of available options; however, right-clicking on any object in the window while in Edit mode (including transparent objects such as text boxes or grouping windows) displays the configuration options for that object.

Default Font

The font you select becomes the default setting for all captions and text labels within the window.

Changing the Default Font

1. Right-click in the background of a user diagram and select **Default Font**. The **Font** dialog box appears.
2. Set the default font, style, size, effects, color, and format that you want.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Background Color

The default background color is gray. However, you can display any solid color as a background for any window in your user diagram.

Changing the Background Color

1. Right-click in the background of a user diagram and select **Background Color**. The **Color** dialog box appears
2. Select the color that you want or click **Define Custom Colors** for more options.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Window Properties

To view the Window Properties Configuration options, right-click in the background of any window in your user diagram and select **Properties**.

The **Window Properties Configuration** dialog box appears with five option tabs: Image, Query Server, Node, Action and Updates.

Image: Displaying a Background Image

To view the image options, select the **Image** tab on the Window Properties Configuration dialog box. Use the Image tab to specify a background image for the active diagram or grouping window.

The Image tab has two options:

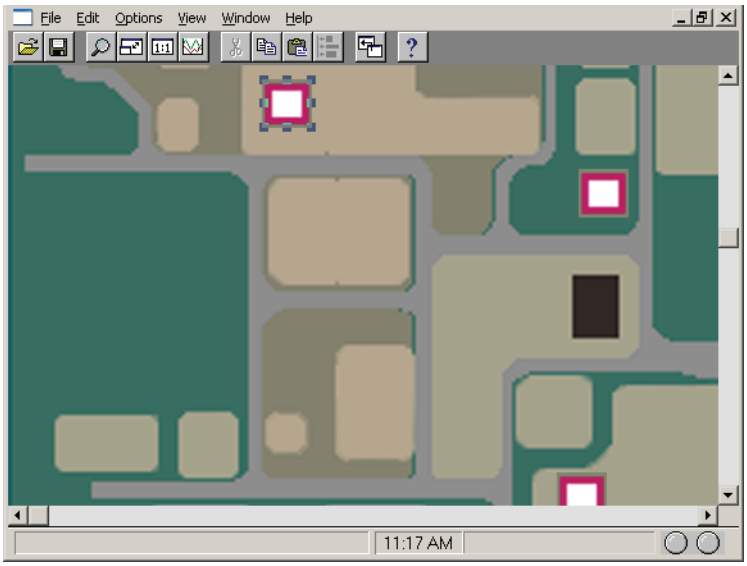
- Select **None** if you do not want to display a background image, or if you prefer to display a single color.
- Select **Custom image** to display a background image. Enter the path and filename of the image you want to display. Vista supports images saved in the following formats: Windows bitmap (.bmp), Windows metafile (.wmf), or Windows Enhanced metafile (.emf).

You can create your own background image using a scanned photograph or a drawing created within a standard graphics program. Some ideas include:

- An engineering drawing of your installation depicting the power distribution system and the location of critical elements.
- A single line diagram illustrating the power distribution network or the individual components of your facility.
- An aerial photograph of your facility depicting the approximate location of your monitoring equipment.
- A satellite image or geographical map depicting your transmission and distribution network.

The following illustration depicts a sample Vista background with hidden diagram objects (here the object is visible by the handles because it is selected in Edit mode):

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



You can integrate your diagram objects into the image by placing them at the appropriate points on the drawing. Users then display site-specific information by clicking on the appropriate spot in the background.

Specifying a Custom Background Image

1. Right-click in the background of the window you want to customize and select **Properties**. The **Window Properties Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Image** tab.
3. Select Custom image and click **Browse**.
4. Select the image file you want to use and click **Open**.
5. Click **OK** to set this image as the background.

Query Server: Setting a Default Query Server for a Window

Use the Query Server tab to specify a logged data source for any window in a user diagram. The Query Server that you select provides the default source of logged data for all Event Log Viewers, Data Log Viewers and Grouping Objects within the window.

Setting a Default Query Server for a Window

1. Right-click in the background of the window and select **Properties**.
2. Click the **Query Server** tab in the Window Properties Configuration box.
3. Select either **Inherit from parent icon** or **Custom Query Server**.
   - Select **Inherit from parent icon** for the active window to default to the same Query Server used by the parent icon. (The parent icon is the diagram object that you clicked to open this window.)
   - Select **Custom Query Server** then click **Edit Link** to display a dialog box where you can select a new Query Server link.

   When you click the **Edit Link** button, the **Create Link** dialog box appears.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Use the Create Link dialog box to specify a query:

1. Double-click on the Query Server that you want from the Nodes box.
2. Double-click on Query Modules from the Managers box.
3. Double-click on the Query that you want from the Modules box.
4. Double-click on the query register that you want from the Output Registers box.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

The name of the selected Query Server and register are displayed as the Group Name on the Query Server tab of the Window Properties Configuration box.

Node: Setting the Default Node for a Window

Use the Node tab to specify a real-time source for any window (or grouping object) in a user diagram. The node that you select provides the default source of real-time data for all numeric, status, and control objects within the window. It also is the parent node for any Data Log Viewer or Event Log Viewer objects placed in the window.

Setting a Default Node for a Window

1. Right-click anywhere in the background of the window and select Properties from the pop-up menu. The **Window Properties Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the Node tab.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Select **Inherit from parent icon** to use the same node as the parent icon (the diagram object you double-clicked to open the window).
   - Select **Custom** to select a different node. Select ION and click **Select** to display the **Select Node** dialog box. Select a default real-time source for the window from the nodes available.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Action: Specifying an Action for a Window

You can specify an action for Vista to perform upon opening or closing a particular window. For example, if you want Vista to automatically engage a modem tool (such as the Connection Manager) every time you open a certain grouping window, you can specify the tool as an action.

Specifying an Open or Close Action

1. Right-click in the background of the user diagram or grouping window then select Properties. The **Window Properties Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. On the **Action** tab, select Command line on open or Command line on close.
3. Click **Browse**. In the **Browse** dialog box, locate the program you want, select the .exe file and click **Open**.

   The specified file and path name appears in the box below the selected option.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

To remove an action, clear the check box beside the option.

Updates: Setting the Time Interval

Data that is not updated is considered stale data. Vista detects stale data as it occurs and identifies it with a colored border around the diagram object (the default color is yellow).

On the **Updates** tab, you can specify how often Vista updates the data displayed the interval of time Vista uses to detect stale dataVista. The Updates tab has two sections:

- **Update Period** allows you to specify how often data in that window is refreshed.
- **Stale Data** allows you to specify whether data is highlighted and how old data must be to be considered "stale".

NOTE

The Update Period and Stale Data settings also apply to WebReach.

Changing the Update and Stale Data Settings

1. Right-click in the background of the window, select **Properties**. The **Window Properties Configuration** dialog box appears. Select the **Update** tab.
2. Enter a numeric value in seconds in the Update data period or Stale data timeout fields to set the intervals.
3. Select or clear the Highlight stale data check box to enable or disable checking for stale data.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

To change the color of the stale data border, close the Window Properties Configuration box, then select **Options > Flag Colors**. In the Flag Colors box, click **Edit** beside "Stale Flag Color" to display a dialog box where you can select a different color.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
5

WebReach

WebReach enables ION Enterprise to display Vista user diagrams in a web browser. With WebReach, multiple users can access and display network and other diagrams created in Vista, without installing additional software.

NOTE

Currently only Microsoft Internet Explorer (version 6.0 and later) is supported by ION Enterprise.

In This Section

- "WebReach Support" on page 162
- "Displaying Vista User Diagrams Online" on page 163
- "Advanced WebReach Configuration" on page 168
- "Custom Network Diagram Setup" on page 168
- "Troubleshooting" on page 170

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

WebReach Support

The WebReach component of ION Enterprise employs a thin client design, allowing users to access and display Vista diagrams in a web browser. WebReach manages all the necessary data processing and system functions at the server and uses XML to process Vista objects and data for display on the web pages.

Use a web browser from any machine on your network to view the Vista user diagrams of devices in your power management system. Objects that can be displayed in the web browser include real-time numeric data, full or partial gauges, background graphics or diagrams, and basic views of event, data and waveform logs.

Although identical in many ways to Vista, WebReach has certain differences and limitations:

- AVI objects are not supported; they appear as grey boxes on screen.
- The diagram displayed by WebReach are read-only; control objects such as On/Off and Trigger switches are disabled.
- The time displayed by WebReach is the local time at the web server, not at the client computer.

NOTE

To ensure the correct local time is displayed in WebReach, ensure that the following are configured correctly on the meter: TZ Offset, DST Start, DST End, and DST Offset.

WebReach Installation After ION Enterprise is Installed

WebReach is automatically installed and enabled if IIS (Internet Information Services) is detected during the ION Enterprise primary server installation.

To install WebReach after ION Enterprise has already been installed on the primary server:

1. Install the IIS Windows component (consult Windows help for more information).
2. Open Windows Control Panel and double-click Add or Remove Programs.
3. Select Change or Remove Programs. Select ION Enterprise, then click **Change**. The InstallShield Wizard starts.
4. Select **Modify** then click **Next**.
5. Follow the installer directions to install WebReach.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Preliminary Setup

Before you can see the WebReach pages, a network diagram ("network.dgm") must exist. WebReach processes each element in the network diagram and converts them for display in the web browser. The easiest way to create a network diagram is to automatically generate it in Vista.

Generating the Network Diagram Automatically

1. Start Vista.
2. Click **File > Generate network diagram**.
3. Click **File > Save**.

WebReach displays this generated network diagram as its home page.

Displaying Vista User Diagrams Online

Use a web browser to view the web version of the network diagram.

From any Internet Explorer Web Browser

1. Start Internet Explorer.
2. In the address field, enter http://**ComputerName**/**Web** where **ComputerName** is the server's computer name or its IP address and Web is the virtual root. If you changed the default virtual root, substitute the appropriate value for "Web" in the address. For example, if the server's computer name is Server2, you would type http://Workstation2/Web.

   The ION Enterprise web interface login appears.
3. Enter your username and password then click the WebReach tab.
4. The network diagram you created in Vista is displayed. Click an icon to display its contents (e.g., meters belonging to that group).

From the Primary Server

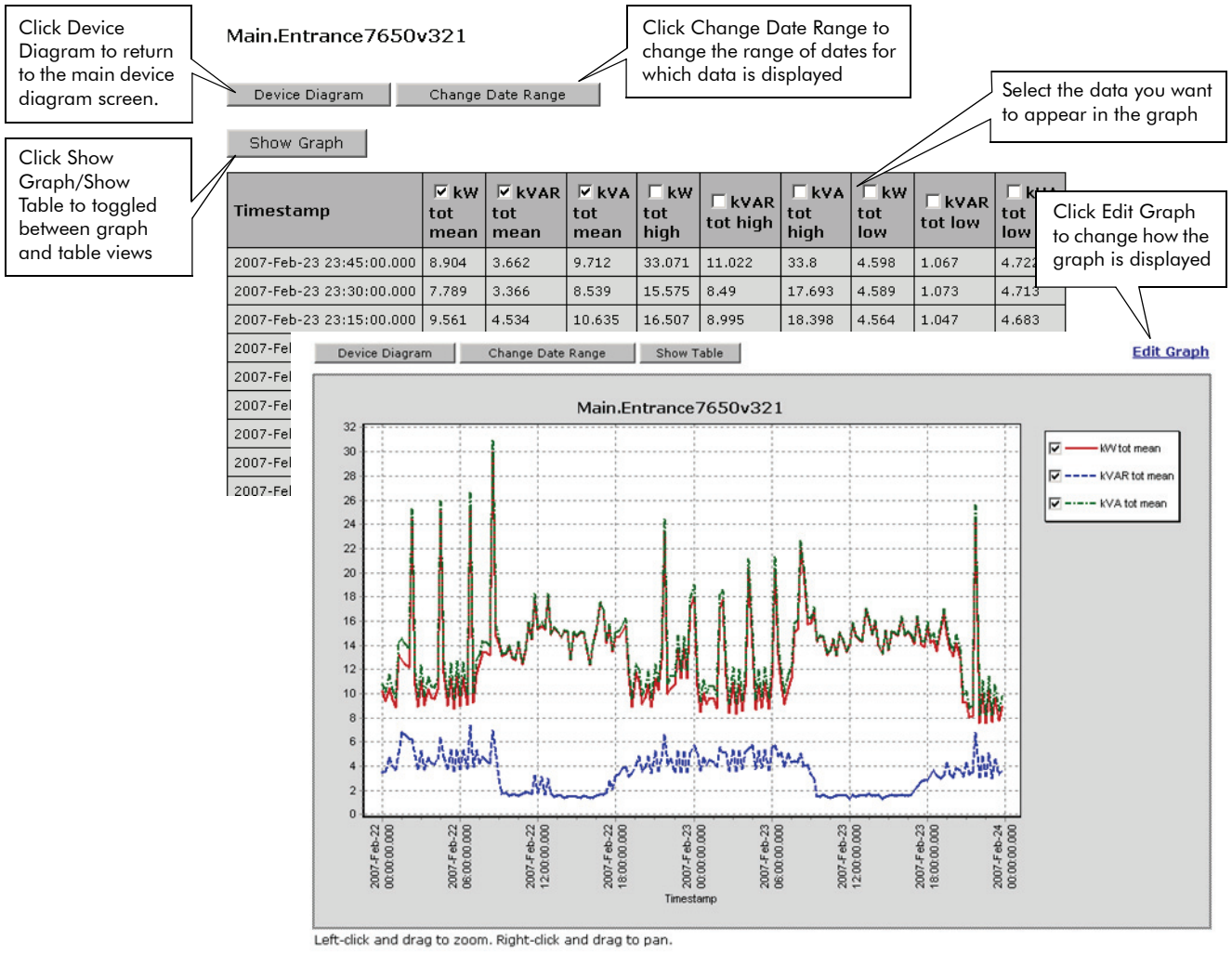
1. Launch the ION Enterprise taskpad and click Web Reporter. The web interface login appears.
2. Enter your username and password then click the WebReach tab.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Historical (Trend) Data

WebReach provides a web-based graphing utility for viewing historical data. This utility allows you to select the date range and the data that you want to view.

Viewing Historical Data Graphically


Click Device Diagram to return to the main device diagram screen.
Main.Entrance7650v321
Click Change Date Range to change the range of dates for which data is displayed
Device Diagram
Change Date Range
Select the data you want to appear in the graph
Show Graph
Click Show Graph/Show Table to toggled between graph and table views
Timestamp
kW tot mean
kVAR tot mean
kVA tot mean
kW tot high
kVAR tot high
kVA tot high
kW tot low
kVAR tot low
2007-Feb-23 23:45:00.000 8.904 3.662 9.712 33.071 11.022 33.8 4.598 1.067
2007-Feb-23 23:30:00.000 7.789 3.366 8.539 15.575 8.49 17.693 4.589 1.073 4.713
2007-Feb-23 23:15:00.000 9.561 4.534 10.635 16.507 8.995 18.398 4.564 1.047 4.683
Click Edit Graph to change how the graph is displayed
Device Diagram
Change Date Range
Show Table
Edit Graph
Main.Entrance7650v321
kW tot mean
kVAR tot mean
kVA tot mean
Timestamp
Left-click and drag to zoom. Right-click and drag to pan.

1. Click the meter icon to open its diagram, then click the link or tab that contains the button for the trending information you want to view.
2. Click the Data Log Viewer button that corresponds to the data log you want to view. The date selection screen displays.
3. Select the timeframe for which you want to view data. To specify a date range, select "Between these dates" then click the calendar icons to set a start and end date.
4. Click **Show Table**. The data log screen displays.
5. Select the check boxes for the parameters you want to graph.
6. Click **Show Graph**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The first time you click **Show Graph**, you may be prompted to install software from Steema Software SL. Click **Install** to install the software and view the graph.

7. Select or clear the check boxes in the legend to show or hide the corresponding data in the graph.
8. Manipulate and control the displayed screen by doing the following:
   - To zoom in on the graph, drag the mouse pointer around the portion you want to zoom in on.
   - To move across the graph, right-click and drag your mouse in the direction you want to move.

NOTE

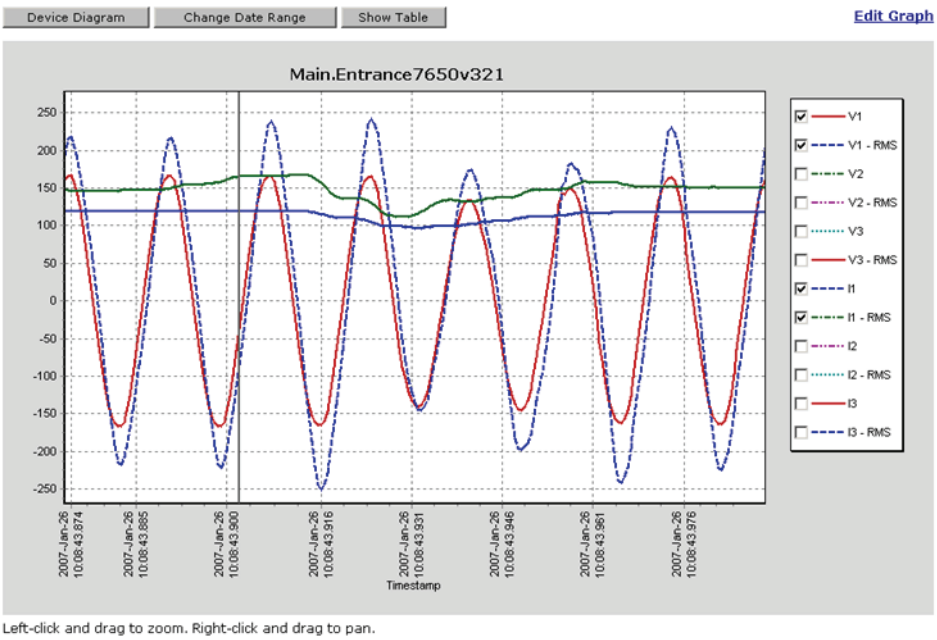
To return to the original view of the graph, refresh your browser display. Click **Show Table** to return to the data table screen.

Editing the Graph

To change the appearance of the graph, click **Edit Graph** (near the top right corner of the screen). The **Editing** dialog box displays, where you can set parameters that change the graph's appearance. You can also export the graph to various image formats and configure options for printing the graph.

RMS Waveform Plotting

WebReach plots the calculated RMS values for waveforms. To show or hide these RMS values, select or clear the appropriate box.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Meter Events

Viewing meter events is similar to viewing historical data.

NOTE

You cannot acknowledge alarms on the screens generated by WebReach since control functions are not supported.

Viewing the Meter Events

1. Click the meter icon to open its diagram, then click the link or tab that contains the Meter events button.
2. Click the Meter events button . The date selection screen displays.
3. Set the date range, then click **Show Table**. The Meter events screen displays:

Main.Entrance7650v321

Device Diagram | Change Date Range

Timestamp	priority	cause_ion	cause_value	effect_ion	effect_value	node	ack_time
2007-Feb-23 23:02:04.573	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 23:02:03.035	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 22:45:00.974	200	Sag/Swell 1	Disturbance End	SS1 DistState	Normal	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 22:45:00.816	200	Sag/Swell 1	Disturbance Start	SS1 DistState	Disturbance	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 17:02:03.404	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 17:02:02.395	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 06:02:03.597	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-23 06:02:02.191	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-22 08:02:03.982	25	Ethernet	Time Change	Clock 1	Time Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-
2007-Feb-22 08:02:02.387	25	Ethernet	Time Change Request	Clock 1	Time About to be Changed	Main.Entrance7650v321	-

Adding a Global Event Log Viewer

To display the Vista Global Event Log Viewer online, you need to create an Event Log Viewer object in the Vista diagram and link it to the Global Event Log. To add this object to the home page for WebReach:

1. Open network.dgm in Vista and make sure you are at the top level (i.e., title bar displays "User Diagram:network"). Select **Options > Show Toolbox** to switch to Edit mode.
2. Drag an Event Log Viewer object onto the diagram.
3. Right-click to display its properties.
4. Click the **Query** tab. Click **Edit Query**.
5. Select **Global**, then click **Add**. Click **Next**.
6. Select **Global Event Log**, then click **Add**. Click **Next**.
7. In the Available section, select the columns you want to display, then click **Add**. If you want to change to order of selected columns, select the column in the Selected section then use the up or down arrow buttons to move it accordingly. Click **Next**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

8. Select the column you want to assign as the first sorting criteria, then click **Add**. Repeat for the second sorting criteria, and so on. In the Sort Order section, double-click a column to change its sort order (e.g., change from "ascending" to "descending").
9. Click **Finish**.
10. Click **File > Save**.

Stale Data or Error Indicators

WebReach uses the Vista stale data settings for its diagrams. Stale data and errors are displayed in the web browser as follows:

- A **yellow** border surrounding an object indicates **stale** data.
- An **orange** border surrounding an object indicates an **error** in communications, security access, configuration, or other system error.

NOTE

See "Identifying Stale Data" on page 96 for information on stale data. Although you can change the stale and error flag colors in Vista, the color indicators for these flags do not change in WebReach. Contact Technical Support if you need to change the default WebReach flag colors.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Advanced WebReach Configuration

This section covers customization and advanced configuration information for WebReach and is intended for advanced users only.

⚠ CAUTION

If you use Registry Editor incorrectly, you can cause serious problems that may require you to reinstall your operating system.

Custom Network Diagram Setup

This section describes how to change the default home page that WebReach displays.

If you have a custom network diagram on the primary server that you want to use instead of the automatically generated network diagram:

1. Start Windows Registry Editor and navigate to:

   HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Schneider Electric\ION Enterprise\6.0\WebReach

2. Right-click to add a new string value and name it "NetworkDiagram".
3. Right-click **NetworkDiagram**, select **Modify**, then type the path and name of your custom network diagram in the **Value data** field.
4. Click **OK**.

For more information, refer to the **NetworkDiagram** item in the table under the section "WebReach Registry Settings" on page 169. If there is no **NetworkDiagram** entry in the registry, then the default value "x-pml:/diagrams/ud/network.dgm" is used.

The Network Diagram navigation button located on the date range page and the results page is automatically updated to link to the custom network diagram you specified. However, the Network Diagram button that exists in each meter user diagram uses a hard-coded link to "x-pml:/diagrams/ud/network.dgm". Use Vista to manually update the Network Diagram link in the meter user diagrams.

Changing the link for the Network Diagram button

1. Start Vista and select **Options > Show Toolbox** to switch to Edit mode.
2. Right-click the **Back to Network** button. The **Grouping Object Configuration** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Action** tab and select **Open User Diagram**.
4. Click **Browse** to locate your custom network diagram. Select the diagram filename, then click **Open**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

WebReach Registry Settings

The registry keys for WebReach are located in HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Schneider Electric\ION Enterprise\6.0\WebReach.

This table lists the default WebReach registry entries and settings:

Default Registry Entries	Default Setting	Description
AutoDiagramTimeout	20000 milliseconds	Timeout period for the autodiagram components to communicate with the device and determine the appropriate template to open.
ExpireTimeLimit	600 seconds	Time limit for a diagram subscription to update its timestamp. If the subscription is not updated within this time period, it is considered expired and is removed.
HTTPRefreshInterval	10 seconds	The webpage refresh rate.
SubscriptionObject	pmlitem:webreachstore:	The name (tag) that the subscription service uses to find WebReach-related information.
VirtualDirectory	ION	The part of the web address that points to the WebReach-generated Vista diagrams for displaying in the browser.
XMLRefreshInterval	3000 milliseconds	The real time data update rate on the webpage.

This table lists the optional registry entries you can set for custom functionality.

Optional Registry Entries	Default Setting	Description
NetworkDiagram	x-pml:/diagrams/ud/network.dgm	This value specifies the network diagram to display as the homepage for WebReach. The value can be a relative path, such as the default setting, or it can be an absolute file path (e.g., D:\customdiagrams\ud\networkB.dgm).
QueryTimeout	See description	This value determines how long WebReach waits for the results of a query to return from the database before timing out. If this registry entry is not created or no QueryTimeout value is specified, WebReach times out after 60 seconds. This optional registry entry is useful if you know that a query will take more than 60 seconds to return its results and you do not want WebReach to time out before then. Specify a value that gives you enough time to get your query results.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Troubleshooting

WebReach depends on the ION XML Subscription Service and ION XML Subscription Store Service to function properly. If you are experiencing difficulties with WebReach pages (such as getting an error message when you try to open a device diagram), check to make sure these services have been started.

No Real-time Data is Displayed

This may be caused by security settings being reset by a Microsoft Windows update. If this is the case, open Internet Explorer, select **Tools > Internet Options**, then click the **Security** tab. Click the **Trusted sites** icon, then click **Sites**. Add the WebReach website (i.e., "http://<computer name>/Web ") to the Trusted sites zone.

"Page cannot be displayed" Error

This may be caused by complex or large queries, such that the results do not arrive within the default WebReach timeout setting of 60 seconds. If you suspect this is the case, add the custom DWORD registry key "QueryTimeout" and set it to a higher decimal value (e.g., "120").

Tick Labels for Gauges are Unreadable

This may occur if you specify an unsupported font for the Ticks Label Font. To fix this, select only TrueType or OpenType fonts in Vista.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
6

Web Reporter

You can use the Web Reporter of ION Enterprise to define, generate and manage comprehensive reports, based on information contained in your databases. This section discusses the elements of reporting in ION Enterprise, such as the default report definitions, generating and viewing reports, export formats, and subscriptions.

NOTE

SQL Server Reporting Services must be installed before you install ION Enterprise in order for Web Reporter to be installed. If you installed ION Enterprise with Reporting Services not present and would like to install Web Reporter, contact Technical Support.

You cannot use reports that were created in earlier versions of ION Enterprise in Web Reporter. However, you can still use Reporter, the reporting interface from earlier versions of ION Enterprise. For instructions, see "Appendix A: Reporter" on page 325.

In This Section

- "Introduction" on page 172
- "Web Reporter Interface" on page 173
- "Default Report Definitions" on page 175
- "Creating a New Definition from a Default Report Definition" on page 179
- "Generating and Viewing a Report" on page 180
- "Entering Report Inputs" on page 180
- "Printing a Report" on page 185
- "Saving a Report" on page 185
- "Exporting a Report" on page 186
- "Report Administration" on page 187
- "Managing a Report" on page 187
- "Sharing a Report" on page 187
- "Creating Report Subscriptions" on page 188
- "Installing a Report Definition or a Report Pack" on page 191
- "Custom Report Definitions" on page 192
- "Running the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service Manually" on page 193

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Introduction

The Web Reporter interface allows you to define and generate reports from historical data. You can modify, save and export a report, and create subscriptions to saved reports. Users with supervisor-level access can also install new report definitions.

See "Generating and Viewing a Report" on page 180 for information on generating and viewing reports.

NOTE

Currently only Microsoft Internet Explorer (version 6.0 and later) is supported by ION Enterprise.

Web Reporter Terminology

- **Report Definition**: The report definition defines such things as layout, which inputs need to be completed to run the report, and what information in the database is accessed for that report.
- **Default Reports**: The report definitions included in Web Reporter to address common reporting needs.
- **Report Input Parameters (or Inputs)**: Parameters that must be entered before a report can be generated. Default inputs are included for most of the default report definitions.
- **Report**: A report that has been saved with some or all of its input parameters.
- **Defined Report**: A report that has been saved with all of its input parameters completed.
- **Data Access Layer**: This provides a consistent way to access database resources for advanced users who are creating custom reports. If you are using the default reports definitions that come with Web Reporter, this application layer is transparent.

Starting Web Reporter

See "Getting Started" on page 19 for information on starting and logging in to Web Reporter. Once you have started and logged in, click the Web Reporter tab.

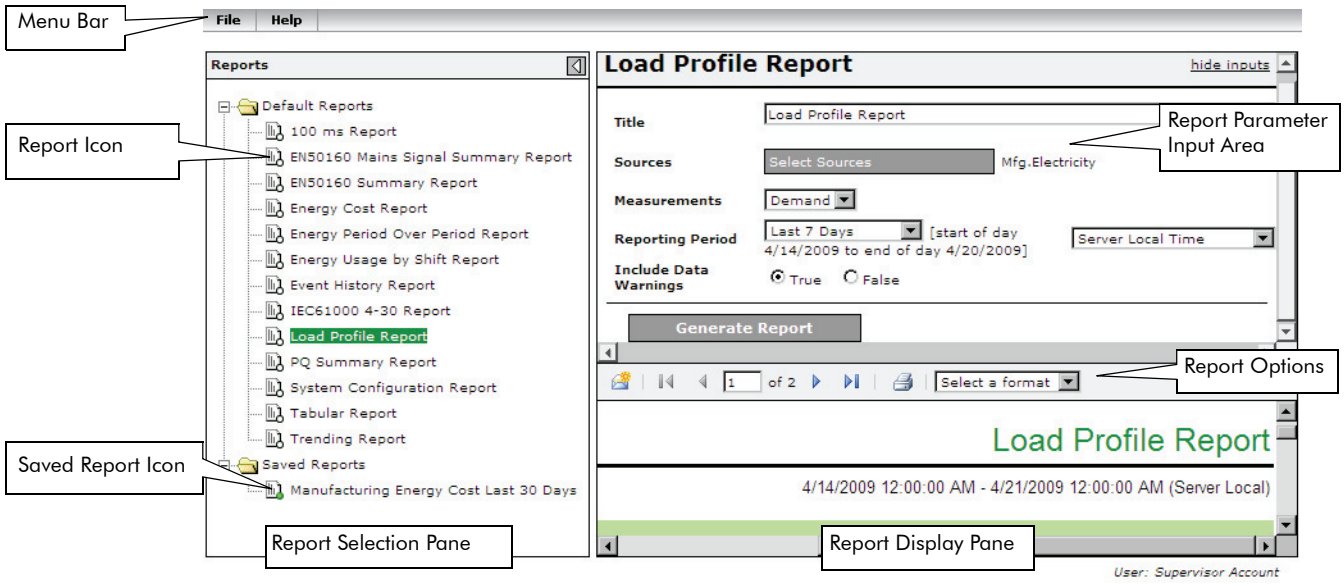
Reporting Configuration

Use the Reporting Configuration Manager option in the Management Console **Tools** menu to configure options for Web Reporter such as the database to report on and subscription delivery options. See "Reporting Configuration Manager" on page 61 for more information.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Web Reporter Interface

There are three main elements of the Reports page interface: report menu bar, report selection pane and report display pane.



Menu Bar

The report menu bar contains the following options: File and Help.

File

The File menu has four options:

- **New** allows you to create a new report definition by copying one of the default report definition.
- **Manage** brings up the Manage Reports dialog box which allows you to do the following:
  - Select **Manage** to move, delete, rename or copy a report. See "Managing a Report" on page 187.
  - Select **Share** to make a report available to individual users and groups. See "Sharing a Report" on page 187.
  - Select **Subscribe** to schedule a report to be generated and delivered in a prescribed manner on a defined schedule. See "Creating Report Subscriptions" on page 188.
- **Save** allows you to save the selected report. See "Saving a Report" on page 185 for more information.
- **Install Report Definition** allows you to upload or update a single report definition. See "Installing a Report Definition or a Report Pack" on page 191 for more information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Install Report Pack** allows you to upload or update a report pack. See "Installing a Report Definition or a Report Pack" on page 191 for more information.

Help

The Help menu displays the Web Reporter online help.

Report Selection Pane

The report selection pane allows you to select a report to view or generate. Select the report you want from the list of available reports and report definitions. The report appears in the report display pane.

Report names are preceded by a report icon . Reports with a white circle in the report icon require you to enter at least some of the inputs. Reports with a green circle in the report icon have been saved with all of their inputs defined; you do not complete any of the inputs before the report is generated.

NOTE

If the report definition you are interested in does not appear in the report selection pane, select Install Report or Install Report Pack from the File menu to upload the definition.

Report Display Pane

The report display pane is the area where the generated report displays. If the report requires that you enter inputs, the report parameter input area displays at the top of the pane.

Report Options

This bar, located above a generated report, allows you to:

- Create a subscription to the report. See "Adding a Subscription" on page 188 for more information.
- Navigate through pages of the report. See "Viewing a Report" on page 184.
- Print the report. See "Printing a Report" on page 185.
- Export the report in formats such as PDF, Excel, and TIFF. See "Exporting a Report" on page 186.

Report Parameter Input Area

This area of the report display pane appears when you select a report that requires you to enter inputs. The inputs vary depending on the report selected. See "Entering Report Inputs" on page 180 for information on the inputs for default reports.

After generating the report, you can click the "show inputs" or "hide inputs" links in the top-right corner of the report display pane to show or hide the report parameter input area.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Report Definitions

This section outlines the default report definitions included with Web Reporter, and how to create a new definition by copying one of the existing default report definitions.

Default Report Definitions

The default report definitions are preconfigured for the most common reporting needs. The following is a list of the default report definitions supplied:

- 100 ms
- EN50160
- EN50160 Mains Signaling
- Energy Cost
- Energy Period over Period
- Energy Usage by Shift
- Event History
- IEC61000-4-30
- Load Profile
- Power Quality
- System Configuration
- Tabular
- Trend

100 ms

Use the 100 ms report definition to create a report of selected 100 ms measurements. The report displays timestamped values for each 100 ms measurement selected.

EN50160

EN50160 is a set of power quality standards used by certain energy suppliers and energy consumers. There are two default report definitions available: EN50160 and EN50160 Mains Signaling.

The EN50160 definitions use the following types of data from devices: supply voltage dips; temporary overvoltages; supply voltage unbalance; harmonic voltage; interharmonic voltage; frequency and magnitude; flicker; and short- and long-term interruptions.

NOTE

To run EN50160 reports in Web Reporter, the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service must be started. This service is run by default only on new data. To run the service on pre-existing data, see "Running the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service Manually" on page 193.

EN50160

Use the EN50160 report definition to create a report containing comprehensive analysis of all EN50160 compliance data logged by multiple meters. The compliance summary is based on the EN50160 limits for each observation period: each default EN50160 measurement indicates a pass or fail on the compliance test with a Y (yes) or N (no) respectively.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

EN50160 Mains Signaling

Use the EN50160 Mains Signaling report definition to create a report for signal line frequency statistics for multiple sources, for each observation period.

Energy Cost

Use the Energy Cost report definition to create a report on energy consumption and peak demand levels over a period of time, categorized by time of use. The Energy Cost report definition uses energy and demand measurements.

With an Energy Cost report, you can use a time of use (TOU) schedule that you define using the Time of Use Editor (see "Time of Use Editor" on page 80) or you can set a flat rate in the Set Rates dialog box (see "Entering Report Inputs" on page 180).

NOTE

This report is intended to be used for positive power flow applications only (where kW and kVAR are both positive). Use with bi-directional flow will give incorrect results.

Energy Period over Period

Use the Energy Period over Period report definition to create a report that allows you to compare a measurement from multiple devices over specified time periods (i.e., this week vs. the same week from the previous month).

Energy Usage by Shift

Use the Energy Usage by Shift report definition to create a report that allows you to compare a measurement from multiple devices for specified time periods (or shifts). This allows you to compare energy usage between shifts (i.e., 6:00-1:00 vs. 1:00 to 8:00).

Event History

Use the Event History report definition to create a report of events or alarms that have occurred in the system. It includes the following information on the events: timestamp; source name; event description; and event priority.

If no event has occurred that matches the inputs entered when generating the report, no data is returned.

IEC61000-4-30

Use the IEC61000-4-30 report definition to create a report on IEC61000-4-30 compliance information by observation period (3 second, 10 minute, or 2 hour) for one or more sources.

The IEC61000-4-30 report definition provides the following types of information: voltage profile; THD profile; unbalance profile; flicker profile; frequency profile; and summary table.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Load Profile

Use the Load Profile report definition to create a graphical representation of demand or load levels over a period of time. The profile shows peak loads — points on the graph where peak electricity demand is high. A load trend report can be used to analyze the electrical loads at the time of maximum demand. This information creates opportunities for developing strategies to improve energy management.

The Load Profile report definition uses similar measurements to the Energy Cost report definition but does not use a TOU schedule.

Power Quality

Use the Power Quality report definition to create a report that summarize the number and severity of voltage sags, swells and transients over a period of time. The finished report also includes a graphical representation of the disturbances.

The power quality report allows you to view historical PQ data, aggregated into power quality incidents. An incident is a summary, or aggregated event, which represents a number of individual events (sags, swells) that was registered by the same device in a small window of time. Throughout this section, disturbance refers to a sag, swell, or transient event in the Event Log, while incident refers to a group (1 or more) of disturbances.

NOTE

To run power quality reports in Web Reporter, the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service must be started. This service is run by default only on new data. To run the service on pre-existing data, see "Running the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service Manually" on page 193.

The generated report displays:

- A summary of incidents, incident interval, and number of disturbances.
- The details of the worst disturbances for each power quality incident in the report.
- Statistics for each power quality incident in the report (for example, first timestamp, duration, and the number of transients, sags and swells within the incident).

From the report, you can view either details for an incident or waveform details.

PQ Incident Detail

To view details of an incident, click the incident in the First Timestamp column of the Statistics table.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Detailed information about a single power quality incident is displayed, including:

- A CBEMA plot containing the power quality disturbances for the selected incident.
- The timestamps, types, durations, phases and magnitudes of disturbances in the selected incident, with the worst event in the selected incident highlighted (worst event = largest magnitude x duration).
- The power quality settings of the device that registered the disturbance (i.e., sag/swell limits, transient threshold, etc.).

To return to the PQ Summary report, use the browser's back button.

PQ Waveform Detail

To view the waveform details of an incident, click the incident in the Time column of the Worst Disturbances table.

The waveform details presents all of the waveforms that were recorded for a disturbance. It displays a waveform chart along with an optional table with waveform values.

The following waveform plots and data are displayed, based on the timestamp selected:

- A summary waveform plot, displaying a plot of the V1, V2 and V3 waveforms.
- An individual waveform plot for each of:
  - V1 and I1
  - V2 and I2
  - V3 and I3
- If the source queried has digital input logging enabled over the time interval of the waveforms, a waveform showing the digital input status.
- The timestamp for the time the waveforms were triggered.
- The sampling frequency of the waveforms.

To return to the PQ Summary report, use the browser's back button.

System Configuration

Use the System Configuration report definition to create a report containing details about devices in your network, including: device names and types; communications information (i.e., IP address, unit ID, protocol) for devices; sites to which devices belong; status of sites (offline or online); and descriptions of the devices in the system (if a description was entered in Management Console).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Tabular

Use the Tabular report definition to create a report of data in a tabular format. You can create a report with multiple measurements from multiple sources. This data can then be exported for use in another program, such as Microsoft Excel.

The generated report contains the following information: source; measurement; timestamp; and value.

Trend Report

Use the Trend report definition to create a report that displays trend information in a line, column, bar, or pie chart. You select devices and measurements for a selected period of time.

You can choose to report on either:

- one or more measurements for a single source, or
- a single measurement for multiple sources.

Creating a New Definition from a Default Report Definition

You can create a new report definition by copying one of the existing default definitions.

To create a new report definition:

1. Click **File > New**. The New Report from Definition dialog box appears. Click "+" to expand the navigation tree to view the default report definitions.
2. Select the report definition you want to copy and click **Next**.
3. Type a name for the new report definition in the **Name** field. Select a location for the new report definition from the navigation tree, or click **New Folder** to create a new folder.
4. Click **Save**. The new report definition is added to the report definitions in the report selection pane.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Generating and Viewing a Report

This section describes how to generate and view reports.

Report Ownership and Access

Access to a report is user-specific and can be assigned by a user with supervisor level access or the owner of the report.

The owner of the report is the user who saved the report (see "Saving a Report" on page 185).

Entering Report Inputs

Some reports require that you enter inputs, such as the date range of data to be included in the report. When this is the case, the report parameter input area displays when you select a report from the report selection pane. You must complete the necessary inputs before you can generate the report.

When you display a report that includes inputs, you can display or hide the report parameter input area. To do this, click the "show inputs" or "hide inputs" link in the top-right corner of the report display area after the report has generated.

Inputs for Default Report Definitions

The following sections outline the inputs for the default report definitions. The inputs available vary depending on the type of report.

Aggregation Interval

This input determines how data is aggregated for the report (i.e., day, week, etc.). From the dropdown list, select the aggregation interval that you want to use.

Chart Type

Use the dropdown list to select the type of chart you want to use to display the report results (i.e., line, bar, etc.).

Evaluation Limits

Click **Configure** to configure the EN50160 parameters used in the report. Default values are provided based on the EN50160 standard.

Click the links in the dialog box to access configuration options for various measurements included in the report:

- **Basic Configuration**: Type the maximum percentage of intervals in an observation period that the component can fail to meet the EN50160 N1 and N2 requirements before the component is considered non-compliant.
- **Supply Voltage Dips**: Type the maximum percentage of intervals in an observation period that the RMS value can drop below 90% of the nominal

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

voltage for each duration and depth presented in the dialog box before the component is considered non-compliant.

- **Short and Long Interruptions**: Type the maximum percentage of intervals in an observation period that the RMS value can be less that 1% of the nominal voltage for the given duration before the component is considered non-compliant.
- **Temporary Overvoltages**: Type the maximum percentage of intervals in an observation period that the RMS value can exceed the nominal voltage by each magnitude for each duration presented in the dialog box before the component is considered non-compliant.

NOTE

The EN50160 standard defines the observation period for the above components as one week.

Event Priority

Select the priority level(s) of the alarms or events that you want report on.

Flicker Baseline High

Type the Flicker Baseline High, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Flicker Baseline Low

Type the Flicker Baseline Low, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Frequency Baseline High

Type the Frequency Baseline High, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Incident Interval

Select the incident interval that you want to use in the report (i.e., 20 seconds, 10 minutes, 1 week).

Include Data Warnings

Select whether or not to show data warnings in the generated report.

Measurement(s) (Reports other than Load Profile)

Use this input to select the measurements you want to include in the report.

Click **Select Measurement** to display the Source Selector dialog box. Click the "+" and "-" to expand and collapse items in the navigation tree. Click "Select All" or "Select None" in the top-right corner to select or clear all the check boxes. For reports where you can select multiple measurements, click the check box beside a measurement (or group of measurements) to select it. For reports where you can only select a single measurement, click on the measurement name to select it.

When you are finished selecting measurements, click **OK**.

Measurements (Load Profile Report)

This input determines whether the report is calculated using demand or power measurements. Select either Demand or Power from the dropdown list.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Nominal Frequency

Type the nominal frequency of the system (i.e., 60).

Nominal Voltage

Type the nominal voltage of the system (i.e., 120).

Period

The Period input contains the following fields and dropdown lists:

- **Timezone**: Select whether you want to view timestamps in either Server Local Time or UTC (Universal Coordinated Time).
- **Aggregation Period**: Select the block of time for which you want to compare data (i.e., day, week).
- **Comparison Type**: Select what period of data you want to compare the selected Aggregation Period to (i.e., today vs. the same day from the previous month or current month vs. the same month from the previous year). The options vary depending on the Aggregation Period selected.
- **Number of Comparisons**: Enter the number of periods you want to compare.
- **Aggregation Interval**: This input appears when you select Month for the Aggregation Period. Select how you want data grouped for the report: by date (Day of Month) or the day of the week.
- **Selected Dates**: This box displays the dates of the data that will appear in the report based on the options selected.

For example, to compare the selected measurements for the same day of the month over the last 12 months, set Aggregation Period to Day, set Comparison Type to Today vs. Same Weekday From Previous Month, and enter 12 in the Number of Comparisons field.

Rates

Use this input to set up parameters for energy cost reporting. Click **Configure Rates** to access the Energy Rates dialog box.

- Click **Energy and Demand** to configure basic rate parameters for the report.
  - In the Select Measurements section, click the check box beside a measurement to include it in the report.
  - In the Select Billing Calculation section, select Flat Rate or select TOU Schedule. If you select TOU Schedule, select a time of use schedule from the dropdown list (see “Time of Use Editor” on page 80 for information on configuring a time of use schedule).
  - In the Set Rates section, enter the rates for the select measurements.
  - In the Set Demand Calculation section, select the calculation method used to determine demand: Independent (peak demand is calculated independently for each source) or Coincident (the demand measurements of the sources are correlated with the peak demand of the main meter). If you select Coincident for the calculation method, click **Main Meter** to select the source to which you want to correlate the demand measurements.
- Click **Wages** to include WAGES (Water, Air, Gas, Electricity, Steam) measurements in the report. Click the +/- buttons to add or remove

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

measurements. Enter a name for the measurement the click **Select Source** and **Select Measurement** to select a source and measurement. Enter a rate for the measurement in the Rate field.

- Click **Additional Fees** to add additional rate information to the report. Enter a name in the Rate Name field and rate information in the Amount field.

Reporting Period

Use this input to select the timeframe for the data you want to view in the report.

Select the reporting period from the dropdown list. Most of the options in the timeframe dropdown end on the day that you are running the report. To run a report that starts and ends in the past, select Fixed Date. Type a start and end date in the date boxes or click the arrows beside the dates to display a pop-up calendar and select a date. Type a time in the time boxes or click the up and down arrows beside the time to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.

Select whether you want to view timestamps in either Server Local Time or UTC (Universal Coordinated Time).

Sampling Period

Select the sampling period to use for the IEC61000-4-30 report: 2 hour, 10 minute or 3 second.

Shifts

Use the +/- buttons to add additional shifts. For each shift, enter a name and set the start and end time for the shift.

To configure a shift that spans midnight, add two shifts and give them the same name. For example, to set up a day shift and a night shift, add three shifts: Day from 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM, Night from 8:00 PM to 12:00 AM, and Night from 12:00 AM to 8:00 AM.

Signaling Voltage 1, 2 and 3 Eval Limit [%]

Type the maximum percentage of intervals in an observation period in which the mean value of the signaling voltage can exceed the curve defined in the EN50160 standard before that mains signaling voltage is considered non-compliant.

Show EN50160 Configuration Parameters

Select whether or not to show the configuration inputs entered in the Configure Evaluation Limits dialog box in the report.

Source(s)

Use this input to select the devices you want to include in the report.

Click **Select Sources** to display the Source Selector dialog box. From the dropdown list, select the way in which you want to display the sources (i.e., device type, group name, etc.). Click the "+" and "-" to expand and collapse items in the navigation tree. Click the check box beside a device (or group of devices) to select it. Click "Select All" or "Select None" in the top-right corner to select or clear all the check boxes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

When you are finished selecting devices, click **OK**.

THD Baseline

Type the THD Baseline, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Title

Type a title for the report in the text box.

Unbalanced Baseline

Type the Unbalanced Baseline, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Voltage Baseline

Type the Voltage Baseline, if the default is not appropriate for your needs.

Saving a Report with its Inputs Defined

After you display a report, you can save a version of the report with some or all of these inputs included. For example, you may want to always generate an Energy Cost report for a certain number of devices for the previous month. When you save the report, you can save it with the inputs for the devices and time period predefined.

See "Saving a Report" on page 185 for more information.

Generating a Report

To generate a defined report (a report saved with all inputs defined and saved), select the report from the report selection pane. The report is generated and displayed in the report display pane.

To generate a report from report definition or from a partially defined report:

1. Select the report you want to generate from the report selection pane.
2. Complete the required inputs (see "Entering Report Inputs" on page 180).
3. Click **Generate Report**. The report displays in the report display pane.

NOTE

Each report icon has a small circle on its lower right corner. If the circle is green, it is a Defined Report—it has all of its inputs completed. If the circle is white, you need to fill in inputs before you can generate it.

Viewing a Report

After you generate a report, you can do any of the following:

- Click to subscribe to the report. See "Creating Report Subscriptions" on page 188.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- Click the forward and backward arrows to navigate through the pages of report (if there are multiple pages).
- Print the report . See "Printing a Report" on page 185.
- Export the report as a PDF, Excel, XML, HTML or TIFF file. See "Exporting a Report" on page 186.
- Click "show inputs" or "hide inputs" to show and hide the report inputs.

Printing a Report

Click the Print button . The **Print** dialog box appears. Select the printer from the list and configure other options as you require then click **OK**.

If the report you want to print has multiple columns of data (e.g., if it has multiple measurements or multiple sources) in a table, the columns may be printed on multiple pages.

NOTE

The first time you print a report, you may be prompted to install an ActiveX control. Click **Install** to accept this control.

Saving a Report

To save a report with some or all of its inputs defined:

1. Display a report that has its inputs completely filled in (either select a defined report or enter the required inputs and click **Generate Report**).
2. Click **File > Save**. The **Save Report** dialog box appears.
3. Type a name for the report in the Name field.
4. In the location box below the Name field, select the location for the saved report or click **New Folder** to create a new folder for it (note that you cannot nest one folder inside another).
5. From the section at the bottom of the dialog box, select the inputs that you want to save and deselect those you do not want to save with the report.

   You can save a report with only part of its inputs completed. When you generate one of these reports, you need to enter information for the inputs that were not saved.
6. Click **OK**. The report is saved with the inputs you have selected.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Exporting a Report

You are able to export generated reports in a number of different formats (the formats available vary depending on the version of SQL Server you are using):

PDF	Creates a PDF of the report that you can view in Adobe Reader.
Excel	Creates a version of the report in Excel format that you can view in Microsoft Excel.
XML	Creates an XML version of the report that you can view in your browser or other compatible program.
HTML	Creates an HTML version of the report that you can view in your browser or other compatible program.
TIFF	Creates a TIFF image version of the report.

To export a report, select the format you want from the "Select a format" dropdown list. The File Download dialog box appears, asking whether you want to save the file or open it (if a compatible program exists on the computer).

If you export a report to PDF or TIFF format that has multiple columns of data (e.g., if it has multiple measurements or multiple sources) in a wide table, the columns may be appear on multiple pages in the exported file.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Report Administration

The following sections describe the options available in the Manage Reports dialog box.

Managing a Report

Use the Manage option in the Manage Reports dialog box to create a new folder, delete or rename a folder or report, or move or copy a report from one folder to another.

1. Click **File > Manage** and select the Manage radio control.
2. From the list box, select the report (or folder) that you want to manage.
3. Select one of these options:
   - **New Folder**: When the Create New Folder dialog box appears, type the name of the new folder and click **OK**. The new folder appears in the list.
   - **Delete**: A prompt appears asking you to confirm the deletion (unless you have selected an empty folder—in this case the folder is deleted without confirmation). Click **OK** to delete the report. If there are any subscriptions for the report, the prompt informs you of the subscriptions.
   - **Rename**: Type the new name in the field at the bottom of the screen. Click **Update** to save the change.
   - **Copy**: Select the location where you want to copy the report and click **Update**. The report is copied to that location. The name of the copied report is "Copy of <report>", where <report> is the original report name.
   - **Move**: Select the new location and click **Update**. The report is moved to the new location.

Sharing a Report

Use the Share option on the Manage Reports dialog box to make a report available to a user or group. Users with supervisor-level access can share any report; all other users can only share reports that they own.

1. Click **File > Manage** and select the Share radio control.
2. Select the report that you want to share from the list box.
3. Select the user(s) or group(s) you want to share the report with from the Available Users & Groups box, then click the right arrow to move the user(s) or group(s) to the Share List.

   To unshare a report, select the users or groups from the Share List and click the left arrow.

   Select "Order by type" to order the lists alphabetically by group then by user.
4. Click **Apply**.

   The report is available to the users in the Share List.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Creating Report Subscriptions

What is a Subscription?

A subscription is a report which is delivered in a specified manner at a defined interval. For example, a subscription can be configured so a report is generated monthly and sent via e-mail to a group of people.

Subscription Configuration

Before configuring certain types of subscriptions, you need to configure reporting subscription options such as the SMTP server for email subscriptions or how to handle files when report subscriptions are written to a fileshare. See "Reporting Configuration" on page 172 for information on configuring these options.

Adding a Subscription

You can only create subscriptions for reports you have access to (see "Sharing a Report" on page 187). The report must be a saved report that has all of its inputs defined (see "Generating and Viewing a Report" on page 180 and "Saving a Report" on page 185).

1. Click **File > Manage** and select the Subscribe radio control.
2. Select the report to which you want to create a subscription from the list, then click **Add** to add a new subscription. The **Add New Subscription** dialog box appears.
3. Type a name for the subscription in the Name field. This is the name that displays in the list of subscriptions.
4. Select the output format.
5. Select a delivery mode:
   - **Email**: Click **Distribution List**. Enter the e-mail address(es) to which you want to send the report and click **Add** after each address (select an address from the list and click **Remove** to remove it). Click **OK** when the list is complete. In the Add New Subscription dialog box, type the text you want in the subject line of the email in the Subject field.
   - **File share**: Type the location of the computer and folder where you want the report to be saved. You must type the absolute pathname to the folder (including the drive letter). The Windows user account "IONUser" must be configured with valid credentials to read and write to that fileshare. See you system administrator for assistance. To overwrite an existing report (if one exists in the folder), select "Overwrite existing file". To leave an existing file in the folder and save the new report with a new name, clear "Overwrite existing file".
   - **Printer**: From the dropdown list, select the printer to which you want to send the report.

NOTE

For printed subscriptions, the printer must be a local printer on the Primary Server. For information on setting a network printer as a local printer, consult Microsoft Windows documentation.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

6. In the Subscription Schedule section, define the schedule on which you want the report to be generated and delivered:
   - **On Alarm**: Select this option to configure the subscription to run on an alarm. Select the event you want to trigger the subscription from the list. To use this option, you must first configure an Event Watcher. See "Event Watcher Manager" on page 62 for information on creating an Event Watcher.
   - **Once**: Select this option to run the report once at the specified day and time. Use the arrow beside the Date field to bring up a calendar where you can select the date. Type the time into the Time of Day box or use the up/down arrows to change the hours and minutes.
   - **Hourly**: Select this option to run the report every hour. Select the time from the dropdown list (i.e., on the hour, 15 minutes after the hour, etc.).
   - **Daily**: Select this option to run the report once per day at the specified time. Type the time into the Time of Day box or use the up/down arrows to change the hours and minutes.
   - **Weekly**: Select this option to run the report once per day at the time and on the day of the week that you specify. Select the day from the dropdown list. Type the time into the Time of Day box or use the up/down arrows to change the hours and minutes.
   - **Monthly — Monthly by Date**: Select Monthly then select Monthly by Date to run the report on selected dates in the calendar month at a specified time. Type the dates in the On calendar day(s) field. Separate multiple dates with a comma. To select a range of continguous dates, separate the first and last date in the range with a hyphen. For example, to schedule the report to run on the 1st, 10th to 15th, and 20th days of the month, type 1, 10-15, 20. After you have entered the dates, type the time into the Time of Day box or use the up/down arrows to change the hours and minutes.
   - **Monthly — Monthly by Day**: Select Monthly then select Monthly by Day to run the report on a specific day of the week in a selected week of the month at a specified time. For example, to set the subscription to run on the Monday of the last week of the month, select Last and Monday from the dropdown lists. Type the time into the Time of Day box or use the up/down arrows to change the hours and minutes.
7. Click **Test Now** to test that the report subscription configuration is functioning.
8. Click **Save** to save the subscription.

   The subscription appears in the list of subscriptions for the selected report.

Subscription Errors and Solutions

Certain warnings may appear when you try to add subscriptions. Depending on the situation, you may not be able to add the subscription or you may be able to add it but the output will not be delivered successfully.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The following is a list of possible warnings, their cause and solutions.

Warning	Cause	Solution
SQL Agent service not started	The SQL Server Agent (ION) service is not running. Subscriptions cannot be delivered.	On the Primary Server, click **Start > Settings > Control Panel**. Select Administrative Tools, then select Services. Right-click the SQL Server Agent (ION) service and select **Start**.
Report Subscription Service not started	The ION Report Subscription Service is not running. Subscriptions cannot be delivered.	On the Primary Server, click **Start > Settings > Control Panel**. select Administrative Tools, then select Services. Right-click the ION Report Subscription Service and select **Start**.
"From" e-mail address incorrectly configured	The e-mail "from" address is either not set or has the wrong configuration.	On the Primary Server, open the Reporting Configuration dialog box in Management Console (**Tools > Reporting Configuration**). Enter a valid email address. For example, myemail@mycompany.com.
Path syntax invalid	The file share pathname entered is not correct.	Enter a valid UNC (Universal Naming Convention) pathname.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Installing a Report Definition or a Report Pack

Report definitions can be developed by Schneider Electric or any other organization skilled at developing content for Microsoft Reporting Services. Report packs can only be developed by Schneider Electric. To create report definitions, report developers use Microsoft Business Intelligence Studio, which comes with SQL Server.

After a report definition is developed, you can install it. After a report definition is installed and access to it is granted, users can begin creating and saving reports from that definition.

Report Definition Versus Report Pack

For the purpose of installing report definitions and report packs, a report definition is a single .rdl file whereas a report pack includes all files for a complex report or series of reports.

Installing or Updating a Report Definition

1. Click **File > Install Report Definition**. The **Install Report Definition** dialog box appears.
2. Click **Browse** to navigate to the location of the .rdl file. Select the file and click **Open** then click **Install**.

   For a new report definition, use **File > New** to add it to the report selection pane.

   For an existing report definition, a confirmation message appears, asking if you want to update all reports associated with the definition. Click **OK** to continue.

Installing or Updating a Report Pack

1. To make a report pack available for upload, copy it into the ReportPack directory (../ION Enterprise/web/ReportPacks/).
2. Click **File > Install Report Pack**. The **Report Pack Install** dialog box appears.
3. Select the report pack that you want to install. Click **Install**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Custom Report Definitions

You can use Microsoft Business Intelligence Studio to create custom report definitions.

Custom report definitions should only be created by users with a solid understanding of the database access layer, Microsoft Business Intelligence Studio and Reporting Services.

Contact Schneider Electric if you require specialized report definitions.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Running the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service Manually

To run power quality and EN50160 reports in Web Reporter, the ION Power Quality Aggregation Service must be started. This service performs calculations for these reports.

By default, this service is only run on new data. For pre-existing data, you must run this service manually.

To run the service manually:

1. Select **Start > Run** (or press START+R) to display the Windows Run dialog box.
2. Click **Browse** to navigate to the EventCollector.Cli.exe (located in the ..\..\ION Enterprise\system\bin\ folder) then type /a.
3. Click **OK**.

   The ION Power Quality Aggregation Service runs in archive mode. This can take a significant amount of time.

If you do not want to run the service on pre-existing data, you can still generate power quality reports on that data using Reporter (see "Appendix A: Reporter" on page 325 for more information).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
7

Designer

Use Designer to configure nodes on your network that are based on ION Architecture. The node can be a software component or a hardware device.

NOTE

Only nodes based on ION Architecture can be configured using Designer.

Designer's graphical user interface helps visualize a node's configuration. You can link ION modules together to customize a node for your particular application. You can also cut, copy and paste functionality within a single node or between different nodes.

For more information on ION Architecture, ION modules or ION registers, see the *ION Reference*.

In This Section

- "Getting Started with Designer" on page 196
- "Node Diagrams and the Designer Interface" on page 197
- "ION Module Overview" on page 207
- "Using ION Modules" on page 209
- "Adding a New ION Module" on page 210
- "Deleting or Cutting an ION Module" on page 211
- "Linking ION Modules" on page 217
- "Configuring ION Modules" on page 224
- "Copying and Pasting ION Modules" on page 230
- "Viewing Output Registers, Setup Registers, and Inputs" on page 239
- "Time of Use (TOU) Program Management" on page 241
- "Virtual Processor Service" on page 244

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Getting Started with Designer

Designer is a programming tool intended **for advanced users only**. Familiarity with ION architecture is essential, as Designer is based on ION architecture.

The functions used in traditional power monitoring are treated as discrete modular objects that can be interconnected and customized. These objects, known as ION modules, are the basic building blocks that comprise a node.

Designer is used to make any changes to the operation of an ION-compliant node. ION devices, the Virtual Processor and Log Inserter are all configured using Designer.

For those already familiar with Designer, see "Designer Shortcuts" on page 200 for a list of the most commonly used commands.

Starting, Logging into and Exiting Designer

To start Designer, use one of the methods outlined in "Starting a Component of ION Enterprise" on page 19 or open Management Console and select **Tools > System > Designer**.

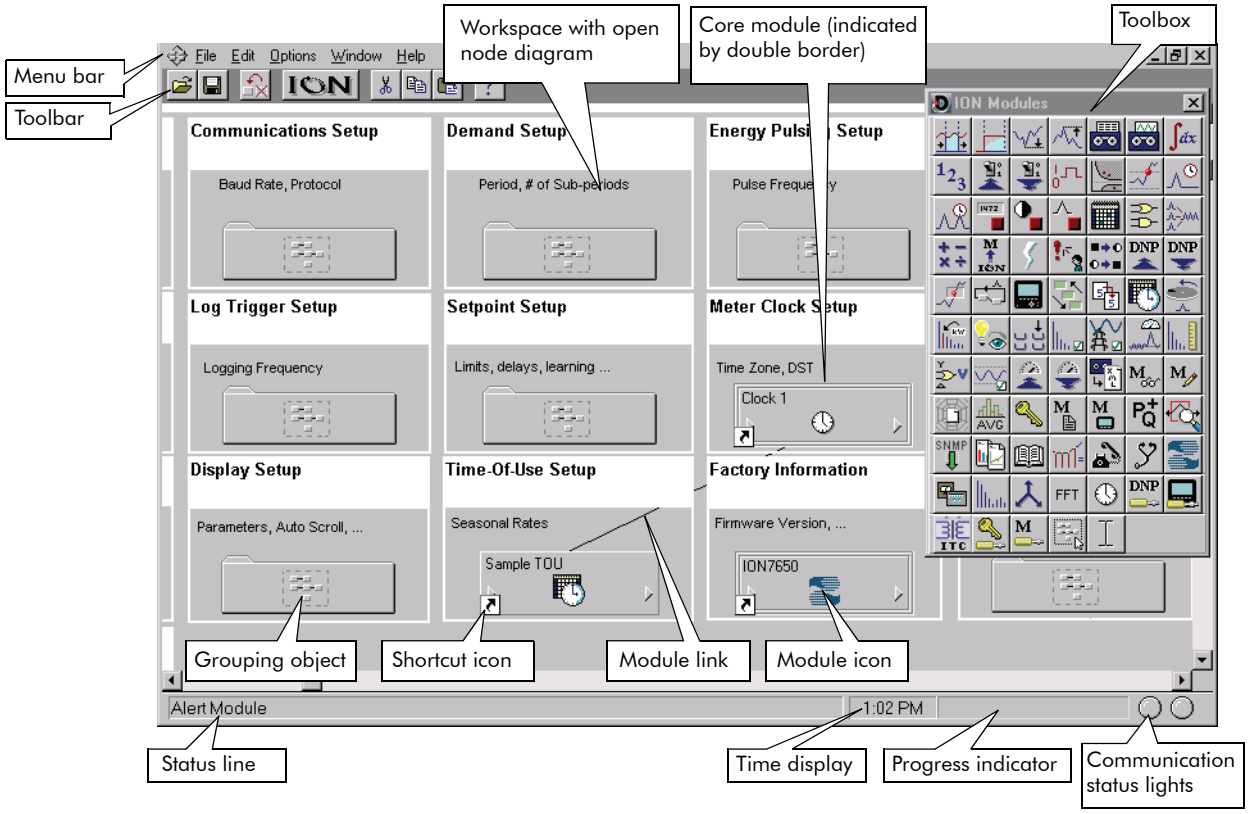
For instructions on logging in to Designer, see "Logging into a Component of ION Enterprise" on page 19.

For instructions on exiting Designer, see "Ending a Session" on page 19.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Node Diagrams and the Designer Interface

This section describes the components of the Designer interface and of node diagrams.



The Designer Interface

The Designer interface consists of a main screen with a title bar, a menu bar, a toolbar, a workspace, and a status bar. When in Edit mode, the ION Modules toolbox is also displayed.

Title Bar

The title bar displays the name of the program, the user name (for example, "guest") and the name of the active node diagram.

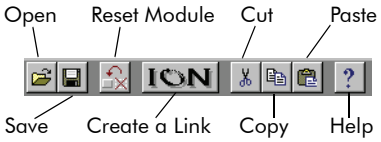
Menu Bar

Below the title bar is the menu bar. Click on a menu name to display a list of available commands.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Toolbar

The Toolbar offers quick access to the commands used most frequently. Each command offered on the toolbar is also available from the menu bar.



When you point at a toolbar button, a description of it appears in the status bar at the bottom of the screen and on a small ToolTip beside the button.

Workspace

The main area in the center of the screen is the workspace, where you view and edit node diagrams.

Status Bar

The status bar displays status information. The components, from left to right, are:

- **Status line**: Describes any active processes and provides brief descriptions of the currently selected command or toolbar button. For example, when you move the pointer over a toolbar button or click on a menu name, a brief description of the item appears in the status line.
- **Time display**: Displays the current time on the workstation.
- **Progress indicator**: Depicts the progress on an action being performed.
- **Communication status lights**: Indicate if Designer is currently receiving and transmitting data on the ION Enterprise network.

The Node Diagram

A node diagram is a graphical representation of an ION-compliant node. The node diagram displays the actual configuration of the node. Module icons represent the ION modules in the node, while lines drawn between these module icons show links between the ION modules.

In some cases, groups of modules are organized inside grouping windows. When closed, a grouping window appears as a grouping object (an icon that looks like a folder). Click a group object to open the grouping window that contains the module icons.

Using a Node Diagram

The node is graphically displayed as a node diagram in Designer. The node diagram contains a number of ION modules, which represent the node's current configuration. You can change the configuration of the node simply by editing its node diagram. For example, when you delete a module from a node diagram, the module is removed from both the diagram and the node. You can add, configure,

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

link and delete modules on the node by making the corresponding changes to the module icons in the node diagram. A module's setup registers can be accessed and changed through the module icon.

Use Designer to configure hardware nodes (e.g., ION meters) or software nodes (e.g., Virtual Processor or Log Inserter).

Default Node Diagrams in Designer

When a meter is opened in Designer, the default diagrams for the appropriate meter and default template are loaded automatically.

Opening a Node Diagram

1. Select **File > Open**. The **Select Node** dialog box appears.
2. Select the node you want to open then click **OK**.

   When you select a node from the list, Designer communicates with the specified node and opens the applicable node diagram.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not open a node diagram if the node is currently being configured from its front panel.

When Designer loads a node diagram, it compares the diagram with the configuration of the node. If there are any discrepancies between the diagram and the node, Designer updates the diagram to match the node:

- If a diagram depicts a module that does not exist on the node, Designer deletes the module icon from the diagram.
- If a node contains a module that is not depicted in the diagram, Designer adds the module icon to the diagram.
- If the links between modules differ from node to diagram, Designer adjusts the diagram to match the node.

A node diagram typically does not differ from the node's true configuration unless the node's configuration was changed through other means (for example, with a remote display unit.)

Saving a Node Diagram

Saving a node diagram serves two purposes: it saves your changes to the diagram, and applies your changes to the node.

- To save the active node diagram, select **File > Send & Save**.
- To save all open node diagrams, select **File > Send & Save All**.

Closing a Node Diagram

To close the node diagram(s):

- Select **File > Close** to close the active diagram, or
- Select **File > Close All** to close all open diagrams and windows.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

If you attempt to close a diagram without saving your changes, Designer displays a warning with a list of the modules affected.

You can then do one of the following:

- Click **OK** to return to the diagram and save your work before closing the diagram.
- Click **Close Anyway** to discard any unsaved changes and close the diagram.

NOTE

If you reopen a diagram containing unsaved changes, Designer may list the unsaved changes as offline modules.

Display Mode versus Edit Mode

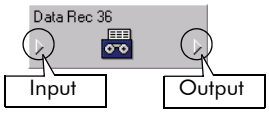
There are two display modes in Designer, which affect how you navigate a node diagram. Whether or not the toolbox is shown indicates the mode you are in: if the toolbox is open, you are in edit mode; if it is closed, you are in display mode.

Display mode allows you to view the node diagram without making changes. To prevent accidentally moving or deleting modules or links, use Display mode when navigating node diagrams. In Display mode, **single-click** grouping objects to open associated grouping windows.

Edit mode allows you to configure the node and the appearance of the node diagram. In Edit mode, **double-click** grouping objects to open associated grouping windows. **Right-click** objects or icons to view configuration options

For more information on the Toolbox, see "Using the ION Modules Toolbox" on page 209.

Designer Shortcuts



Designer provides several shortcuts to assist in programming the nodes.

The following table lists the different mouse and keyboard combinations you can perform on a module's input or output symbols, and their corresponding functions:

Action	Result
Left-click on input	The list of inputs appears - you can select an input and link it to another module's output register
SHIFT + left-click on input	The list of inputs appears with the current input values displayed in square brackets
Right-click on input	The Delete Links dialog appears - you can break links from this dialog.
SHIFT + right-click on input	The Delete Links dialog appears, showing inputs and current input values in square brackets
Left-click on output	The list of output registers appears
SHIFT + left-click on output	The list of output registers appears with the current register value displayed in square brackets

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Action	Result
CTRL + left-click on output	The list of setup registers appears - these setup registers can be linked to inputs on other modules
SHIFT + CTRL + left-click on output	The list of setup registers appears with the current register settings displayed in square brackets
Right-click on output	The list of output register owners appears - you can break links from this dialog
CTRL + right-click on output	The list of setup register owners appears - you can break links from this dialog

NOTE

To create a shortcut to an ION module, see "Creating a Shortcut to an ION Module" on page 214.

Designer Icons

In each node diagram, Designer uses icons to represent the configuration of the node. There are two basic types of icons: module icons and grouping icons.

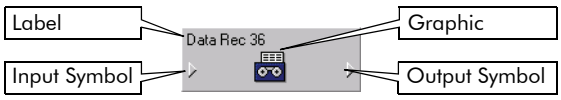
Module icons represent ION modules located on the node. Grouping icons represent a group of module icons.

NOTE

A module icon with a symbol in the lower corner is a shortcut.

Module Icons

All module icons share four common elements: a label, a graphic, an input symbol and an output symbol.



- The **label** displays the name of the module.
- The **graphic** shows a picture to distinguish one type of module from another.
- The **input** and **output** symbols provide access to the module's input and output registers. Click the left symbol to display a list of inputs; click the right symbol to display a list of output registers. See "Linking ION Modules" on page 217 for more information.

Module icons with a double border represent core modules; module icons with a single border represent standard modules. For more information on core and standard modules, see "Core Modules and Standard Modules" on page 208.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Grouping Icons and Grouping Windows

Grouping icons represent grouping windows. Click a grouping icon (left) to open its associated grouping window (right).

A grouping window acts as a folder or sub-window where you can store icons that you want to keep together. For example, you can use grouping windows to group module icons by application—a single grouping window may contain all module icons required for demand or advanced setup routines.

You can use a grouping window much like a standard window. You can create, rename or delete a grouping window; you can move a grouping window within a diagram, and you can move a module into or out of a grouping window.

When you finish editing the grouping window, close it to minimize the window to its corresponding grouping icon in the node diagram.

Opening a Grouping Window

Click on the grouping icon.

Closing a Grouping Window

Click the **Close** button .

Moving Icons into a Grouping Window

To move an icon (or group of icons) to or from an open grouping window, select it and drag it to the new location.

1. Click on a grouping icon to open the grouping window.

   Drag the grouping window by the title bar and position it so that you can see the icon(s) that you want to move.

2. Select the icon(s) you want to move and drag the selection into the grouping window.

When you move a linked module icon into a grouping window, the module remains linked but any lines that represent links to modules outside the window disappear.

Creating a New Grouping Window

To create a new grouping window, drag the grouping object from the toolbox onto the node diagram.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The ION modules toolbox is a collection of ION modules and generic tools that you can add to a node diagram. If the ION modules toolbox is not displayed, select **Options > Show Toolbox**. See "Using the ION Modules Toolbox" on page 209 for more information.

When you point to an object in the toolbox, the name of the object is displayed on a ToolTip. You can use ToolTips to identify the grouping object in the toolbox.

Renaming a Grouping Window

When you create a new grouping window, the default name is that of the node diagram. To change the name of a grouping window, rename the grouping icon:

1. Right-click on the grouping icon. The **Grouping Object Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select **Use Custom** from the Caption section and type the new name into the text box.
3. Click **OK**.

Changing the Font of a Grouping Window

To change the font, font style and size of a caption:

1. Right-click on the grouping icon. The **Grouping Object Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. In the Font section, do one of the following:
   - To use the font of the parent window, select **Inherit from parent window**.
   - To use a different font, select **Custom**, then click **Font**. The **Font** dialog box appears. Select the font options you want then click **OK** to continue.
3. Click **OK**.

Changing the Position of the Caption

To change the location of the caption:

1. Right-click on the grouping icon. The **Grouping Object Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select either **Top** or **Bottom** in the Position section to specify a caption position above or below the grouping icon.
3. Click **OK**.

Deleting a Grouping Window

NOTE

When you delete a grouping window, any modules inside are deleted as well. Designer warns you before deleting modules. See "Deleting or Cutting an ION Module" on page 211 for more information on deleting modules.

1. Select the grouping icon of the window you want to delete.
2. Press the **Delete** key. If the grouping window contains modules, Designer displays a list of modules that will be deleted.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Displaying Default or Custom Icon Labels

Module icons can display two types of labels: Default (left) and Custom (right).

- **Default labels**: All modules have a default label. The default label identifies the module by type and, if applicable, by number. It appears in node diagrams, user diagrams and event logs unless a custom label is available.
- **Custom labels**: Custom labels are available only if they have been preconfigured by a user. A custom label usually identifies a module by its function or purpose. Custom labels are useful for describing modules, setup registers, output registers, and Boolean ON/OFF conditions. For information on adding custom labels, see "Customizing a Module Label" on page 227.

Displaying Default Labels or Custom Labels

Select **Options > Show Default Labels** to toggle the option on or off.

- When Show Default Labels is selected, default labels are displayed.
- When Show Default Labels is not selected, custom labels are displayed.

This is a global setting that applies to all node diagrams.

Moving Icons in a Node Diagram

You can move module and grouping icons anywhere in a node diagram. This is useful for organizing your diagram (for example, by function or type) so that you can easily find a particular module or visualize the workings of your node's configuration. You can move a single icon or group of icons within a single node diagram, or into an open grouping window.

NOTE

Moving the icons in a node diagram does not affect the function of the modules or the node in any way.

Moving Icons

1. Select the icon(s) you want to move.

   When a grouping icon is selected, all icons within its grouping window are automatically selected as well.

2. Drag the selected icon(s) to the new location.

NOTE

When selecting a group of icons, you can only choose icons from within the active window.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Arranging Icons in a Node Diagram

You can use the Align and Grid options in the Layout dialog box to adjust the spacing and layout of the module and grouping icons in your node diagram. Use the Align option to specify the horizontal and vertical arrangement of the selected icons and the Grid option to activate and configure invisible guidelines.

NOTE

Arranging the icons in a node diagram does not affect the function of the modules or the node in any way.

Changing the Order of Layered or Stacked Icons

If an icon appears on top of another icon that you want to bring to the front, select the icon that is sitting on top, then click CTRL+K (or click **Edit > Send to Back**).

Aligning Icons

The Align tab in the Layout dialog box allows you to specify the horizontal and vertical alignment of selected objects.

To align objects:

1. Select the icons that you want to align.
2. Select **Edit > Layout**. The **Layout** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Align** tab and set the horizontal and vertical alignment of the icons.

   The options in each area determine the criteria by which you can align icons. For example, if you select **Left sides** under Horizontal and **Space evenly** under Vertical, Designer aligns all objects in the selection by their left sides (using the leftmost object for reference) and distributes them evenly along a vertical axis.
4. Click **OK**.

Using the Grid

The Grid tab in the Layout dialog box activates and configures an invisible grid. Icons placed onto the grid snap to the nearest gridline to help align and space them evenly.

To activate or deactivate the grid:

1. Select **Edit > Layout**. The **Layout** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Grid** tab.
3. Select one of the following options:
   - **No Grid** turns the grid off.
   - **Grid size in pixels** activates the grid. Type a number in the Grid size in pixels box to specify the size of the grid (distance between grid lines).
4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Designer Windows

To create links between several node diagrams or grouping windows, you need to position the open windows so you can see all the modules involved. Use the Window menu to organize open windows in the workspace.

Arranging Windows in your Workspace

To arrange windows, do one of the following:

- To locate an open window and move it to the foreground, select the Window menu and select the window name from the list of open windows.
- To arrange all open windows in the workspace, select **Window > Arrange All**.

Changing a Window's Background Color

By default, the background color of all windows in a node diagram is light gray. To select a new background color for a window:

1. Right-click on the background of the window and select Background Color. The **Colo**r dialog box appears.
2. Select the color you want or click **Define Custom Colors** for more options.
3. Click **OK**.

When choosing a background color, consider how the color affects the visibility of icons and links. Links, highlights and shadow effects used to depict the various states of an ION module may not appear against certain background colors. For this reason, you should avoid using certain colors for your background, particularly white, dark gray and black.

Changing a Window's Default Font

You can specify a default font to be used for all module icons, grouping icons and text boxes in a window.

1. Right-click on the background of the window and select **Default Font**. The **Font** dialog box appears.
2. Specify a new default font, size and style.
3. Click **OK**.

Fonts can also be specified individually for grouping windows and text boxes. See "Changing the Font of a Grouping Window" on page 203 and "Changing the Font of a Text Box" on page 215 for more information.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Module Overview

After you have opened a node diagram, you can view the node's configuration or edit it by working with its ION modules. As described earlier, each module performs a specific function. Using Designer, you can add, remove or link modules together to customize the function of the node.

This section explains how to add and remove ION modules from your node diagram. It describes the basic types of modules, and explains how you can organize your node diagram by grouping modules together, arranging them, and labeling them.

For more information on ION modules and architecture, refer to the *ION Reference*.

Working with ION Modules

The following sections outline some considerations to remember when working with ION modules.

Output and Setup Registers

A register is a type of memory bank that stores a module's linking and configuration information. Each module uses two types of registers: output registers and setup registers.

Module Status: Online and Offline

The terms "online" and "offline" describe whether a module is currently active or not. A module is described as online when it is functioning normally (monitoring its input and updating its output registers). An offline module is inactive.

Anytime you send and save changes to a node, Designer temporarily takes the affected modules offline and programs them with your changes. After they have been programmed, the modules are then placed back online.

Normally, this is a routine procedure. However, certain circumstances may prevent a module from returning online. For example, if the node lacks sufficient processing power to operate the module, the module remains offline.

You can easily identify any offline modules: all offline modules are highlighted with a red outline. In addition, whenever you open a node diagram, Designer displays a list of all offline modules in the node.

NOTE

If you have offline modules in your node, you may be able to put them back online by selecting **File > Send & Save**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Module Status: Programmed vs. Pending

The terms “programmed” and “pending” refer to whether or not a module's representation in the node diagram matches the node itself.

Programmed

Pending

- **Programmed**: A programmed module is one that is the same both in the node diagram and in the node. The links, labels and setup register values in the node diagram exactly match those on the node. When you first open a node diagram, all the modules appear programmed since they are read directly from the node itself and then displayed in the node diagram.
- **Pending**: A pending module is one where changes have been made to the module in the node diagram and not yet sent to the node, so the node diagram does not match the node. The borders of pending module icons appear as a dashed line.

If you change a module in the node diagram (for example, re-link it or edit its setup registers), it does not match the node until you select **File > Send & Save**. Until it is saved, the edited module is depicted as pending to indicate that it does not match the configuration on the node. When you send and save your changes to the node, the module becomes programmed.

Core Modules and Standard Modules

There are two basic types of ION modules: core (left) and standard (right).

- Core modules are required ION modules that are fundamental to the operation of the node. You cannot add or delete core modules and, in some cases, you cannot configure them. Core module icons are identified by a double border around the edge. The Power Meter module is an example of a core module.
- Standard modules are reusable ION modules. Generally, most modules in a node are standard modules. You can add or delete standard modules as required. Standard modules icons are identified by a single border. The Setpoint module is an example of a standard module.

Persistent Modules

Similar to core modules in that they cannot be added or deleted, persistent modules are standard modules that have been converted to core modules. These modules are created at the factory, and can never be removed from the meter frameworks. Persistent modules are represented by icons with single borders.

An example of a persistent module is External Pulse module #1 on the ION8600 meter. This module pulses when the Demand Reset switch is pressed on the meter.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using ION Modules

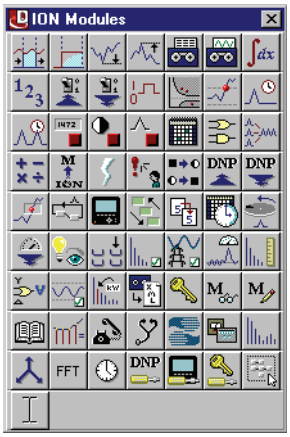
You can change the function of a node by editing the appropriate module(s) in the node diagram and linking modules together.

This section describes how to locate an existing module, how to add a new module, and how to delete a module. It also explains how to create a shortcut to a module and how to view the contents of a module in text format.

After you have located or added the module you want, you can configure it using the procedure described in "Linking ION Modules" on page 217.

Using the ION Modules Toolbox

The ION Modules toolbox is a collection of ION modules and generic tools that you can add to a node diagram. To display the ION Modules toolbox, select **Options > Show Toolbox**.



The type and quantity of modules offered on the toolbox varies depending on the type of node you are configuring; however, the generic tools (the grouping and text objects) are available for all nodes.

NOTE

To identify a module in the toolbox, point to it with the mouse—the module type is displayed as a ToolTip and on the status line at the bottom of the screen.

To add a module to your node diagram (and to the node itself), drag its icon from the toolbox into the diagram window.

Opening the ION Modules Toolbox

To open the toolbox, select **Options > Show Toolbox**.

Closing the ION Modules Toolbox

Click the **Close** button or clear **Options > Show Toolbox**.

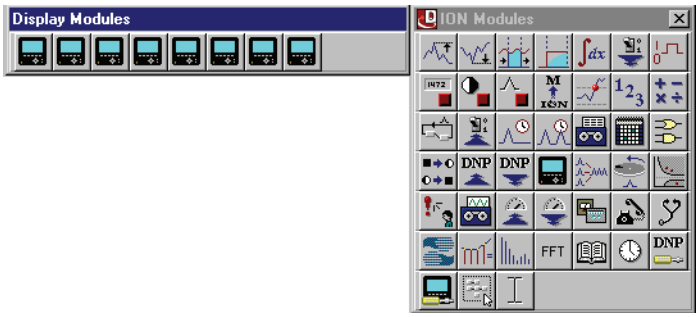
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Locating an Existing ION Module

Before you can edit a module, you must first locate it in the node diagram. To find a module in a node diagram, you can use the module tray feature of the toolbox.

Locating an Existing Module from the Module Tray

1. To display the module tray, right-click the toolbox icon for the type of module you want to locate. The module tray appears beside the toolbox.



   The module tray displays links to all modules of that type that are currently in use on the node—for example, in the image above, there are eight Display modules in use by the node. To identify a link in the tray, point to it—the module's label is displayed on the status line at the bottom of the screen.

2. To locate a particular module, click its link in the module tray. Designer locates the module and displays it in the center of the workspace. If the module is located inside a grouping window, Designer opens the window to display the module.

TIP

To close the module tray, click on any module icon in the toolbox.

Adding a New ION Module

Most nodes are pre-programmed at the factory to provide the most commonly required functions. However, if the factory default configuration is not appropriate for your application, you can add a new module.

Adding a Module on a Node

Drag the icon of the module you want to add from the toolbox onto the node diagram.

As you drag the icon, the cursor changes shape to indicate you are placing an object.

Designer adds the module and places a pending module icon into the diagram. You can then link and configure the module.

See “Linking ION Modules” on page 217 for more information on programming modules.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Deleting or Cutting an ION Module

To remove a standard module from a node, delete its icon from the node diagram. By removing unnecessary modules from the node, you can free up resources for use elsewhere.

NOTE

Each time a module is deleted, all of its output registers, setup registers and input links are deleted as well. Removing this information from the node affects the operation of any modules that depend on it. For this reason, you should be aware of all dependent modules (also known as owners) before you delete anything.

Checking for Dependent Modules

When two linked modules are located in the same window, Designer depicts the link as a line that runs from the output register of one module to the input of another. You can easily identify the dependent module (or owner) by the line running to its input. However, if one of the linked modules is located in a different window, the connection is not visible. A more effective way to locate a module's owners is to view the owners of its registers.

Viewing the Owners of a Module's Setup and Output Registers

You can view a register's owners to quickly identify all dependent modules on the node. You can determine what purpose the modules serve, and then decide whether to delete them or not.

1. Do one of the following:
   - To view the owners of a module's output registers, right-click on the output symbol.
   - To view the owners of a module's setup registers, hold the CTRL key and then right-click on the output symbol.

   The **Owners** dialog box appears. It lists all of the module's registers and any dependent modules on the node (dependent modules on other nodes are not displayed).
2. Click a register in the Registers list to display the owners of that register in the Owners list on the right. Owner information includes the module name or label and its relevant input.
3. If necessary, delete the link between a register and one of its owners. Select the owner from the Owners list and click **Unlink**. (See "Deleting Links" on page 222 for more information on deleting module links.)
4. When you have finished viewing the register owners, click **OK**.

Viewing Owners on Other Nodes

Displaying a module's register owners is an effective way to locate dependent modules on the selected node but it does not show any dependent modules located on another node.

If you remove a module with a dependent module on another node, the dependent module's inputs are not reset. It continues to look for the deleted output register.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

If you are not sure whether a module has dependents on other nodes, check with the person who programmed them to ensure you do not disrupt the operation of any modules on that node. If you still want to remove the module, you may want to directly delete the link on the other node first. This ensures that the module is not inadvertently linked to the next module to occupy the location of the deleted module.

Deleting or Cutting an ION Module

After you have determined that you can safely remove an ION module without disrupting other functions, there are two ways to remove it: delete and discard the module or cut the module to paste it in another location.

In either case, Designer immediately removes the icon from the node diagram and deletes the module from the node. The difference is, when you delete a module, it is discarded; when you cut a module, it can be restored (by selecting **Edit > Paste**).

NOTE

You do not have to select Send & Save Changes to delete a module. Designer immediately removes the module from both the diagram and the node.

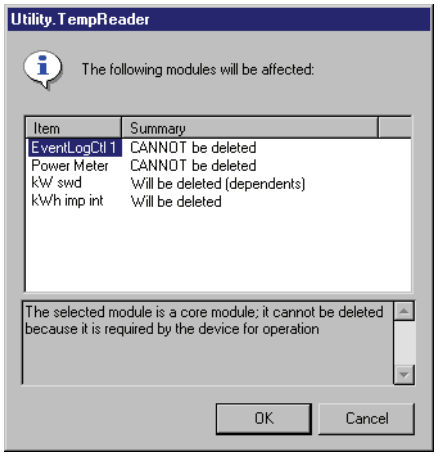
Removing an ION Module from the Node

1. Select the icon(s) of the module(s) you want to remove.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To cut the module(s) to paste it in another location, select **Edit > Cut**.
   - To discard the module(s), press the **Delete** key.

NOTE

If a module has a dependent module on another node, Designer does NOT alert you of the dependency when you delete it. Before you delete a module, ensure that you are aware of all links to modules on other nodes.

Designer displays a summary of the proposed changes.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The summary lists all selected modules, and identifies those in the selection that will be deleted (including those with dependents on that node) and those that will not. Select a module in this list to display any additional information available in the field at the bottom of the dialog box.

3. Click **OK** to remove the selected modules (or **Cancel** to abort the procedure).

   Designer removes the module icon from the node diagram and deletes the module from the node itself.

NOTE

If you delete a shortcut icon, the original module is not affected. However, when you delete the original module, all shortcuts to that module are also deleted.

Viewing a Node or Module as Text

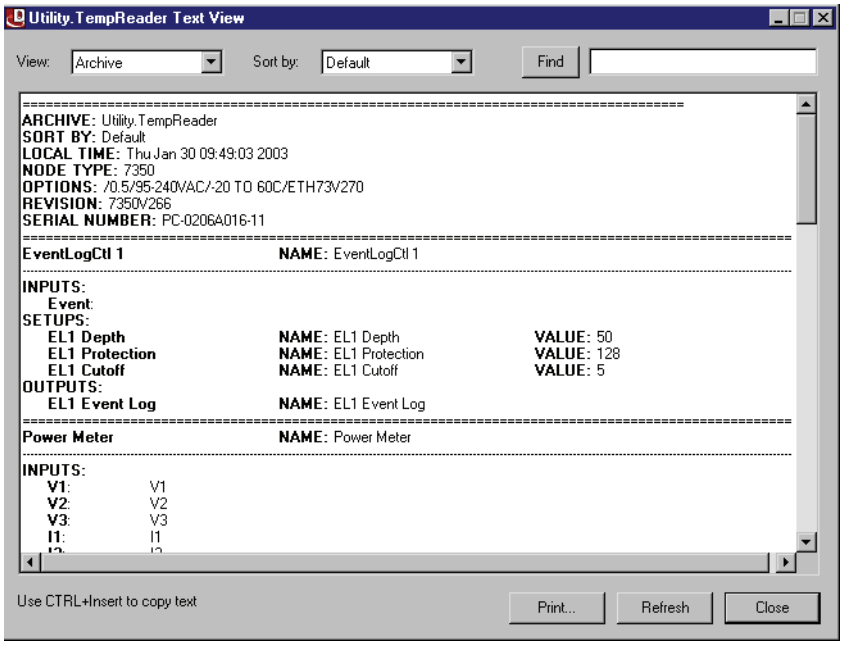
You can use the View Diagram Text command to display as text the complete contents of one or more modules or of an entire node. Use this option to view the specified information on your screen so you can sort it, perform analysis, create a detailed record of your node's configuration, or print a copy for your records.

1. Select the module(s) that you want to display.

TIP

To select all modules in the node, left-click on the background of the main node window, being careful not to click on a module icon, then select **Edit > Select All**.

2. Select **Options > View Diagram Text**. The **Text View** screen appears. The text of any modules that are offline appears in red.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Text View screen offers several ways to view, sort and find information:

- In the View dropdown list, select one of two view modes:
  - Use **Archive** to display information useful for archiving the node's configuration.
  - Use **Diagnostic** to display diagnostic information on the selected module(s).
- In the Sort by dropdown list, select the criteria by which you want to sort the data:

Archive View	Diagnostic View	Sorts by
Default	Default	Module label
Module Class	Module Class	Type of module
Module Name	Module Name	Default label
	Module State	Displays offline modules first followed by online modules. Sorts alphabetically within each group.
	Module Update Period	Displays event driven modules first, then inactive (not updating) modules, followed by high-speed (one cycle updates) modules, and finally high-accuracy (one second updates) modules. Sorts alphabetically within each group

- In the Find text field, type a text string and click **Find** to find that text string in the data.

To reset the text view after you have made a configuration change, click **Refresh**. If you want to print a copy of the text view information, click **Print**. When you are finished viewing the text view information, click **Close**.

Creating a Shortcut to an ION Module

To save time switching between modules in different windows, create a shortcut icon in one window that represents the original module in the other window.

A shortcut icon is identified by a ↗ symbol in the lower left corner of a module icon.

Creating a Shortcut Icon

Hold down SHIFT+CTRL then drag the module icon(s) to the window where you want to place the shortcut(s).

After you have created a shortcut icon, you can use it in the same way you use the original module icon. Both icons support the same features. However, if you delete the shortcut icon, the original module icon is not deleted; whereas if you delete the module icon, it deletes all shortcuts to that module.

NOTE

You cannot create more than one shortcut icon per window for a single module.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Adding a Text Box to a Node Diagram

You can place a text box anywhere in a node diagram, and move it or resize it as necessary. You can use a text box to describe any process or function in your system; for example, you can label individual components of your system or display a block of descriptive text or instructions.

Adding a Text Box

1. Drag a Text Box object ( ) from the toolbox onto the node diagram.

   A text box appears in the diagram with the default message: "Your text goes here."

2. Right-click on the text box to replace the default text with your own text. The **Text Box Configuration** dialog box appears.
3. Select the **Edit Text** tab, then do one of the following:
   - To display the name of the node in the text box, select **Use Default**.
   - To display your own message, select **Use Custom** and type your text into the field provided.
4. Click **OK**. The text box displays your specified text.

Resizing a Text Box

To resize a text box:

1. Select the text box.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To make the object larger or smaller, drag a corner handle.
   - To stretch the object horizontally or vertically, drag a middle handle.

Changing the Font of a Text Box

The font, size and style of the text used in the text box is based on the default setting specified for the active window. If you want to use a different font, you can specify a new font for the text box:

1. Right-click on the text box. The **Text Box Configuratio**n dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Text** tab.
3. In the Font section, do one of the following.
   - To use the font specified for the parent window, select **Inherit from parent window**.
   - To use a different font, select **Custom**, then click **Font**. The **Font** dialog box appears. Specify a font, style, and size. Click **OK** to continue.
4. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Changing the Position of the Text

To change the position of the text in the text box:

1. Right-click on the text box. The **Text Box Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Text** tab.
3. In the Position section, select **Left**, **Center**, or **Right**.
4. Click **OK**.

Adding a Border or Background Color to a Text Box

To add a border to a text box or change its background color:

1. Right-click on the text box. The **Text Box Configuration** dialog box appears.
2. Select the **Box** tab.
3. Do one or more of the following:
   - To add a border, select **Show** in the Border section and click **Color** to select a border color.
   - To set the width of the border, type a border width in the "Width in pixels" field in the Border section.
   - To add a background color, select **Custom** in the Background Color section and click **Color** to select a background color.
4. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Linking ION Modules

Linking ION modules together is the foundation of programming ION-compliant nodes in ION Enterprise. Although an ION module can perform a function in isolation, the strength and flexibility of the ION architecture comes from the ability to interconnect modules to build more sophisticated functions.

Choosing which ION Modules to Link

The first step in linking modules is to decide which modules you want to use. When choosing a module to link, you have two choices: you can add and link a new module or you can re-link an existing module.

In some cases, you may not want to add a new module. For example, if all the modules of a particular type are already used, you need to re-link one of them to perform the new function. Most devices are preconfigured at the factory to provide common measurements and calculations. If any of these factory defaults are unnecessary in your application, you can unlink the modules involved and reuse them.

Plan ahead before you add new modules. Unlinked modules are wasted resources.

You may find a linked module that you can use to add a new link, in order to augment the function it is performing. For example, if you have a Setpoint module that triggers a waveform recording, then later decide to use this trigger to reset a counter, you can link that Counter module to the same Setpoint that controls the Waveform Recorder module.

Linking ION Modules Graphically

Linking modules graphically means pointing and clicking a module's input, then clicking another module's output register to link it (note both input and output register classes must be compatible). You can use this method to link to modules on the same node or to create links across nodes.

You can use the autolinking feature to speed up the process of linking ION modules. Typically, linking ION modules involves connecting the output register of one module to the input of another. In many cases, only one of the module's inputs have the same register class as the selected output register.

If autolinking is enabled, Designer automatically selects the appropriate input and establishes the link. If necessary, it overwrites an existing link. This relieves you from having to manually select the input; however, it also prevents you from seeing what input you are linking to.

By default, autolinking is disabled. You should only use autolinking if you are thoroughly familiar with all the inputs and output registers of the modules you are working with to ensure you do not inadvertently create undesirable links.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Enabling Autolinking

To enable autolinking, select **Options > Enable Autolinking**. A check mark beside the option indicates it is selected.

Disabling autolinking

To disable autolinking, clear **Options > Enable Autolinking**.

Linking ION Modules on the Same Node

If the selected node is a meter such as the ION7650, the process of configuring the node primarily involves creating links between modules on that node.

NOTE

To cancel a link-in-progress, click anywhere in the background of the window or press the ESC key.

Linking Modules Using the Point and Click Method

1. To list a module's output registers, click the output symbol on the right side of the module icon. To list the module's setup registers, hold the CTRL key while clicking the output symbol.

   Either a pop-up menu appears or, if the module has many registers, a dialog box appears listing the available registers.

2. Select the register you want to link:

   - In the menu, click the register you want to select.
   - In the dialog box, double-click the register (or click it then click **Select**).

3. Move the cursor towards the module you want to link to. The cursor changes and a dotted line follows it across the node diagram. This indicates you are in the process of creating a link and it shows where the connecting line will appear in the node diagram.

   If you link to a module that is in a different window than the original module (either in a different node diagram or grouping window) the dotted line disappears but the cursor still indicates that a link is in progress.

   If the module you want is obscured by another window, click on the title bar of the window containing the module. This brings the window to the foreground without canceling the link. (If you click on the background of the window, the link is cancelled.)

4. Click the input symbol of the module that you want to link to display the module's inputs. Either a pop-up menu appears or, if the module has many registers, a dialog box appears listing the module's inputs.

   If the input is already linked, the label of the register it is linked to is displayed beside the input. If you select the input, the existing link is overwritten.

   The inputs that are of a different class than the selected output register are grayed out to indicate you cannot select them.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

5. Select the input you want to link to:
   - In the menu, click the register you want to select.
   - In the dialog box, double-click the register (or click it then click **Select**).
6. Select **File > Send & Save** to save your changes to the node.

The procedure described above can also be performed in reverse order. You can select a module's input first and then link it to another module's output register.

Linking Modules with Variable Number of Inputs

Some modules, such as AND/OR modules, Data Recorder modules, and Log Acquisition modules have a variable number of inputs. In these cases, when you click on the input symbol, the pop-up menu offers one instance of the variable input as well as any fixed inputs the module may have. When linking to one of these modules, you can select the **NEW Source** item to add a new link or you can select an existing link and overwrite it.

If the two modules are in the same window, the line remains on the screen to show the link between the modules—when you save this change to the node, the line changes from a dotted line to a thin black line to indicate that the link is now programmed on the node.

Linking ION Modules Across Different Nodes

If the selected node is a software node, such as the Virtual Processor or Log Inserter, many of the links you create are to modules on other nodes. When you create links across different nodes, it is important to keep track of these links and note what modules are dependent on others. This helps you determine what will happen if you ever want to delete a module that is linked to a module on another node.

NOTE

You cannot link modules on one device to another. For example, you cannot create a link between a module on an ION7330 to a module on a different ION7330 or to a module on another meter.

1. Open the node diagrams that contain the modules you want to link.
2. Position the diagrams within the workspace so you can see the two modules you want to link.
3. In the first node diagram, click on the output symbol of the module icon. A pop-up menu or dialog box appears listing the module's output registers.
4. In the list of output registers, click the register you want. (In the case of the dialog box, click a register and then click **Select**.)
5. Drag the cursor from the first node diagram to the module you want to link to in the second node diagram. The dotted line ceases to follow the cursor if it crosses the window boundary but the cursor changes to indicate a link is in progress.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

6. Click on the input symbol of the module icon in the second node diagram. A pop-up menu or dialog box appears listing the module's inputs. Those that are of a different class than the selected output register are grayed out to indicate you cannot select them.
7. Click the input you want, or in the case of the dialog box, click the input then click **Select**. Designer does not graphically represent links between modules on different nodes so you will not see a line connecting the modules.
8. Select **File > Send & Save** to save your changes to the node.

This procedure can also be performed in reverse order. You can select a module's input first and then link it to another module's output register.

NOTE

If the input is already linked, the label of the register it is linked to is displayed beside the input. If you select this input, the existing link is overwritten.

A Note About Performance

While creating links, you may notice the circle at the end of the arrow cursor is sometimes black ( ).

This indicates that Designer is in the process of retrieving information about a module. You can still click on the inputs or outputs of other modules, but Designer aborts the original request. To minimize the amount of communications between Designer and the connected nodes, avoid unnecessary clicking on the input and output symbols.

If you click on several items in a row, you only see the menu for the last item you click; however, Designer initiates many requests for information, which may impact its performance.

Linking ION Modules Using the ION Tree

In some cases, you may want to use the ION tree to select the register for linking. The ION tree is a hierarchical listing of every node, manager, module, and register in the ION Enterprise network. It allows you to select a register on a node without opening the node diagram. Generally, you use the ION tree to create links across nodes.

The ION tree is also the only way to select registers from devices that are not ION-compliant (and use translators to make data available) such as 3000 series meters. For example, if you are programming a Virtual Processor node and you want to sum data from several 3720 ACMs, you must access the 3720 ACM register via the ION tree.

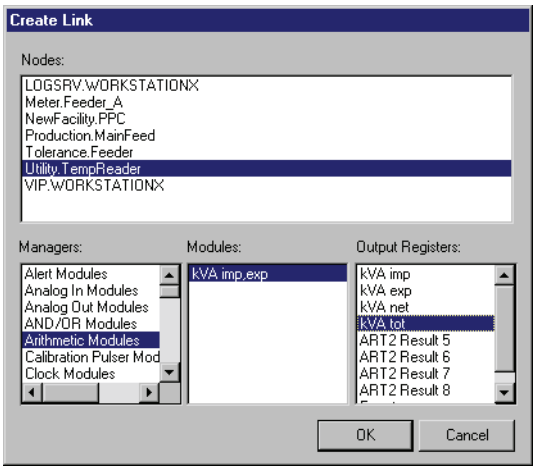
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using the ION tree is faster than opening a node diagram. It is useful if you want to link to a register on a node whose diagram has not yet been opened. It is also useful if you want to link to a register, but you are not acquainted with the configuration of the node in which it resides. You can go straight to the register without having to navigate through an unfamiliar node diagram. Also, since a diagram can only be accessed by one user at a time, you can use the ION tree to link to a register on another node where the diagram is already open.

Linking Modules Using the ION Tree

1. Click the input symbol of the module icon. A list of the module's inputs is displayed.
2. In the list of inputs, select the input you want to link.
3. Click the ION button in the toolbar. (To link a module's setup register, hold the CTRL key while clicking this button.)

   The **Create Link** dialog box appears, providing access to the ION tree.



4. Specify a node, manager, module and output register: Double-click the node you want in the Nodes box. All managers within the selected node appear in the Managers box. You can then double-click the manager you want, and repeat this procedure for the modules and registers.
5. Click **OK**. The module whose inputs changed appears grayed-out to indicate it is now pending. If both modules are in the same window of the same node diagram, a line appears to represent the link.
6. Select **File > Send & Save**. The new link is established and the module appears programmed.

The procedure described above can also be performed in the reverse order. You can click the ION button first, select an output register, and then click the input symbol of a module icon to select one of its inputs.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Deleting Links

If you want to disassemble a group of linked modules and use them for another function, you can delete the links between the modules rather than deleting the modules. Designer provides several ways to delete links.

Fixed Links

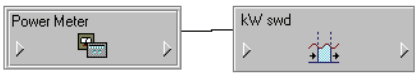
Most links between standard modules can be deleted. However, some links between core modules are fixed and cannot be deleted. These fixed links include:

- Data Acquisition module and all Power Meter modules
- Data Acquisition module and all FFT modules
- FFT module and all Harmonics Analyzer modules
- FFT module and all Symmetrical Components modules

If you attempt to delete a fixed link, Designer informs you that the link cannot be deleted.

Deleting Visible Links

If the linked modules are in the same window, simply click on the link line and press the **Delete** key. This is the easiest method as long as you know which output register and input are involved. For example, in the image below, the easiest way to delete the link is to click on the line joining the Power Meter and the Sliding Window Demand module (its color reverses to indicate it is selected) and press **Delete**.



If there are multiple lines between the same modules and you only want to delete one of the links, you may want to use the method described in "Deleting Links that are Not Visible" on page 222.

Deleting Links that are Not Visible

If you cannot see a line that links the modules (for example, if they are in different windows), or you need to know which output registers and which inputs are involved, you must use a dialog box to delete the link between modules. You can look either at the output register owners of the first module or you can look at the inputs of the second module to see what they are linked to, and then delete the link from there.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Deleting a Module's Input Links

Deleting links at a module's inputs is generally faster than deleting them at the module's output registers because Designer does not need to check the entire node. On the other hand, there is less information available if you view input links. All you see is the label of the output register that is linked to the input. If this is sufficient information, proceed with this method; if not, go to the output registers to delete the link.

Viewing a Module's Input Links

1. Right-click on the input symbol of the module icon. The **Delete Links** dialog box appears.
2. Each input and the label of the output register it is linked to are displayed in the dialog box. To delete one or more of these links, select the input and click **Unlink**. The output register label is replaced with dashed lines.
3. When you have unlinked all the registers you need to, click **OK**.
4. Select **Send & Save** to unlink the modules on the node.

Deleting a Module's Output Links

You can also delete links from the Register Owners dialog box. This method gives you the most information about the link you are deleting (the output register label and the input and label of the module it is linked to).

Viewing a Module's Output Links

1. Right-click on the output symbol side of the module icon. (To list the module's setup registers, hold the CTRL key while right-clicking on the symbol.)

   The **Register Owners** dialog box appears.
2. Select the output register you want from the Registers section. The Owners section lists all the module inputs to which the selected register is linked.
3. To delete one or more of these links, select the module input in the Owners list box and click **Unlink**. The input name is replaced with a dashed line.
4. When you have unlinked all of the module inputs you want, click **OK**.
5. Select **Send & Save** to unlink the module inputs on the node.

NOTE

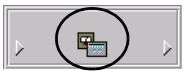
Owners that reside on a different node are NOT displayed in this dialog box. If you need to delete a link between modules on different nodes, use the procedure described in "Deleting a Module's Input Links" on page 223.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

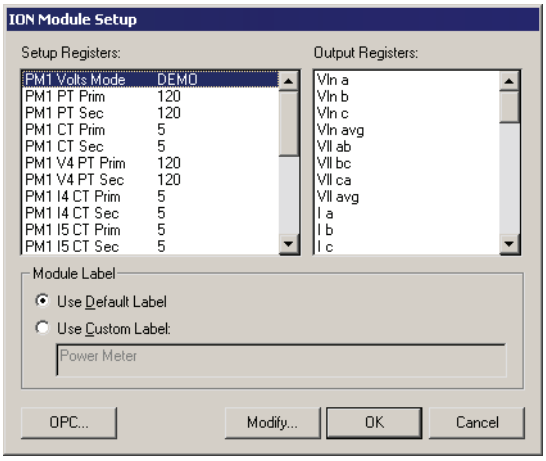
Configuring ION Modules

After you have placed a module in a node diagram, you can configure the various setup parameters of the module. It is not necessary to do this before you link the modules but you should ensure the module is set up correctly before sending the configuration to the node.

Module setup parameters include the module's label; its setup registers, labels and values; and its output register labels. To access these, right-click on the symbol in the center of the module icon.



The ION Module Setup dialog box appears.



The Setup Registers box lists all the setup registers of the module along with their current values or settings.To change any of the settings or assign a custom label to a setup register, select the register, then click **Modify** (or double-click on the register). The Modify Register dialog box appears where you can make modifications.

In most cases, configuring a setup register is a simple matter of entering a number, entering text, or choosing an option from a list. (To determine the options or ranges available for a setup register, refer to the module's description in the *ION Reference*.)

When you have completed all your modifications to the module, click **OK** to return to the node diagram. The module icon appears pending until you send and save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Modifying Enumerated, Numeric Bounded, and String Setup Registers

If the register you have selected is an enumerated, numeric bounded or string register, one of the following dialog boxes appear when you click **Modify**:

Enumerated Registers

To modify an enumerated register, select an option from the Options list.

Numeric Bounded Registers

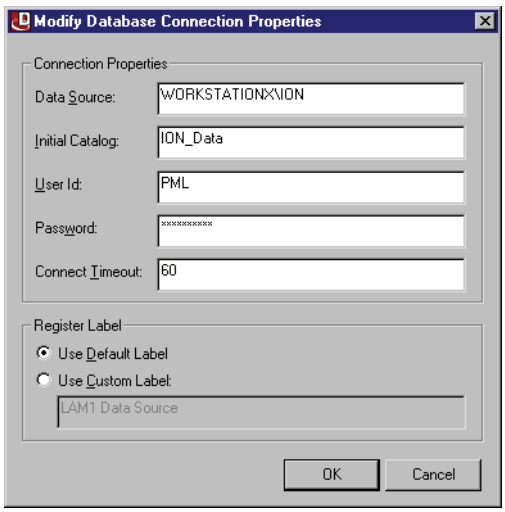
To modify a numeric bounded register, type a number in the Value box. The allowable range is shown under the Value box; you are alerted if you type a number outside this range.

To enter a formatted numeric value, click **Format**. In the **Time Interval Value** dialog box, you can enter the numeric value as a date (offset from Jan 1, 1970) or a time interval.

String Registers

To modify a string register, type your text in the String box.

Note that when you click **Modify** for a string register that is the connection string for a Log Acquisition module or Query module, the **Modify Database Connection Properties** dialog box appears:



Modifying Calendar Setup Registers

The ION Scheduler module has a special class of setup register called a calendar register. Configuring a calendar register is only necessary for nodes that have a Scheduler module. For detailed information on how to configure a calendar register, see the description of the Scheduler module in the *ION Reference*.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Modifying Address Setup Registers

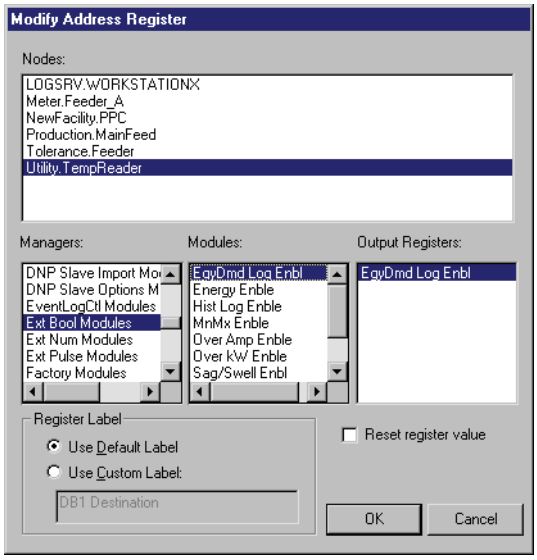
All Distributed Numeric, Distributed Boolean, and Distributed Pulse modules contain an address setup register that references another register. You can specify a new value or clear an existing value as required. (Currently, the Virtual Processor is the only node offering these types of modules.)

NOTE

Currently, you can only link the address setup register to External Numeric, External Boolean, and External Pulse registers.

Modifying an Address Setup Register

1. Right-click on a Distributed Numeric, Distributed Boolean or Distributed Pulse. The **ION Module Setup** dialog box appears.
2. In the Setup Registers section, select a register then click **Modify**. The **Modify Address Register** dialog box appears.



3. In the **Modify Address Register** dialog box, double-click on the node, manager, module and output register you want to use. Click **OK** to continue.
4. In the **ION Module Setup** dialog box, click **OK**.

NOTE

You can clear the value of an address setup register. On the **Modify Address Register** dialog box, select the Reset Register Value box, and then click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Parent Module and Shared Setup Registers

Setup registers that are surrounded by asterisks (e.g., "**PM1 PT Sec**") indicate that the module shares its setup registers with another ("parent") module. An example of this is the High-Speed Power Meter or Meter Units Power Meter module ("HS Power Meter", "MU Power Meter"). They share their setup registers with the parent Power Meter module.

If you try to modify a shared setup register, a prompt identifies the register as shared and gives the name of the parent module.

Navigate to the parent module and change the setup register there.

Using Custom Labels

You can assign custom labels to modules, setup registers, output registers, and Boolean ON/OFF conditions. All modules and registers have a default label and this label is what you see in node diagrams, user diagrams and event logs unless you specify a custom label.

Creating custom labels allows you to clearly describe what the module and its registers have been set up to do.

However, carefully consider which modules and registers should be assigned custom labels. There is a fixed number of labels available, but there are thousands of registers you can assign them to. Many of these registers do not benefit from custom labels. For example, most setup registers can be left at their default names since the only place their names might appear is in the event log.

NOTE

Some devices, such as the ION7300 and ION7700, have a 15-character limit for labels.

Customizing a Module Label

The ION Module Setup dialog box allows you to edit the module label. The module label is the text that appears across the top of the module icon in the node diagram. It is also the label that is used in event logs and in the dialog box for the ION tree.

1. In the **ION Module Setup** dialog box, do one of the following:
   - To create a custom label, select **Use Custom Label** and then type a name for the label in the box.
   - To use the default label, select **Use Default Label**.
2. Click **OK** to return to the node diagram.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Customizing an Output Register Label

By providing a custom label for an output register, you can clearly indicate the information that register contains. For example, if you have linked the Vlna output register of a Power Meter module to a Thermal Demand module, and in turn linked the *ThrmDemand* output register to a Maximum module, you may want to label the Maximum module's output register as "Va TD Maximum" (instead of using the default name of "Maximum 1").

1. In the **ION Module Setup** dialog box, select the output register in the Output Registers box and then click **Modify**. The **Modify Label** dialog box appears.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To create a custom label, select **Use Custom Label** and then type a name for the label in the box.
   - To use the default label, select **Use Default Label**.
3. Click **OK** to return to the **ION Module Setup** dialog box.

Customizing Boolean ON/OFF Labels

If the output registers of the module are Boolean, you can create custom labels to associate with the ON and OFF conditions of these registers. These labels can clarify exactly what the ON or OFF conditions represent. For example, if a Boolean output register is used to switch a fan on and off, you could create a Boolean ON label called "Fan Running" and an OFF label called "Fan Not Running."

1. In the **ION Module Setup** dialog box, select the Boolean output register and then click **Modify**. The **Modify Boolean Register** dialog box appears.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To create custom labels, select **Use Custom Labels** and then type names for the Register Label, ON Label and OFF Label in the appropriate boxes.
   - To use the default labels, select **Use Default Labels**.
3. Click **OK** to return to the **ION Module Setup** dialog box.

Customizing a Setup Register Label

1. In the **ION Module Setup** dialog box, select the setup register and click **Modify**.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To create a custom label, select **Use Custom Label** and then type a name for the label in the box.
   - To use the default label, select **Use Default Label**.
3. Click **OK** to return to the **ION Module Setup** dialog box.

Resetting ION Modules in a Node Diagram

Designer allows you to undo certain changes you have made in a node diagram since the last time you saved and sent your changes to the node. It refreshes the selected module icons so they reflect what is actually on the node. Reversible changes include:

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- Changing the value of a setup register.
- Changing module or register labels.
- Changing the links between modules.

NOTE

Since adding and deleting modules happens immediately on a node, you cannot undo the deletion or the creation of a module.

To reset ION Modules:

1. Select the module(s) you want to reset.
2. Select **Edit > Reset**.

All the changes made to the selected modules since the last time you sent and saved the node diagram are discarded. Modules not included in the selection are unaffected (that is, if they had pending changes, the changes are still pending.)

Fast-linking ION Modules in the Log Inserter

When linking modules in the Log Inserter, you can save time by using the Fast Linker utility. The Fast Linker automates much of the linking process, enabling you to quickly link any combination of event, data or waveform recorders. To access the Fast Linker options, press the CTRL key and click on the Log Inserter inputs.

For more information on using the Fast Linker utility, refer to the description for the Log Acquisition module in the *ION Reference*.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Copying and Pasting ION Modules

You can easily create a new function in a node diagram by copying and pasting modules. You can copy and paste a single module, a group of modules, grouping icons, text objects, or the entire node.

You can copy modules from one node and paste them into another, as long as the node you are pasting to supports the selected modules and has sufficient resources. When pasting modules, you can replace existing modules or add new ones.

You can also copy modules and save them as a framework. You and other users can then reuse this framework in other nodes. Saving a node's configuration as a framework provides a fast and easy way to program a large number of nodes at once.

NOTE

Persistent modules cannot be deleted, but they can be overwritten during a framework paste. Overwriting a persistent module effectively relinks its outputs and rewrites its label, but its core functionality remains intact (e.g., the Master Reset module may be relabelled, but pulsing this module still initiates a master reset). When pasting a default framework onto a meter, use lock-paste to ensure that all persistent modules in the "old" default framework are overwritten by the corresponding persistent module in the "new" default framework. Persistent modules are listed in the "ION Device Template Reference".

Copying Modules

Designer offers two ways to create copies of modules: copy and paste using the ION Enterprise clipboard or copy or paste using a framework.

NOTE

The ION Enterprise Clipboard is a temporary storage area that holds any information cut or copied from Designer. This clipboard should not be confused with the Windows Clipboard.

When you copy a selection of ION modules, you can use **Copy**, **Cut**, or **Copy to Framework**:

- **Copy** saves the selection to the clipboard and leaves the original module(s) intact.
- **Cut** saves the selection to the clipboard and removes the original module(s).
- **Copy to framework** saves the selection as a file and leaves the original modules intact.

Additional considerations include pasting with shortcuts, modules that cannot be pasted, and cloning a node (copying and pasting a complete node configuration from one node diagram to another).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Cutting or Copying ION Modules to the Clipboard

Use the Cut or Copy command to save a temporary copy of the selected modules to the clipboard. You can then use the Paste command to transfer the selection from the clipboard into any node diagram. Each copy retains the setup register values, custom labels, link information and layout of the original selection.

NOTE

When selecting modules to be cut or copied, you can also include grouping icons and text objects. If you select a grouping icon, all modules within the group are copied, as well as any nested grouping icons.

1. Select the module(s) you want to cut or copy.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To cut the selection to the clipboard and remove the original, select **Edit > Cut**.
   - To copy the selection to the clipboard and retain the original, select **Edit > Copy.**

   Designer copies the requested information to the clipboard.

After the selection has been copied to the clipboard, you can select **Edit > Paste** to paste it into any user diagram.

Copying ION Modules to a Framework

You can use the **Copy to framework** command to create a framework from the selected modules. A framework is a template that you can use to reproduce a group of modules. Unlike regular copying and pasting, a framework is stored as a file so you can paste it later.

When you select **Edit > Copy to framework**, Designer copies the layout, linking and configuration information of each module in the selected group. It saves the framework as an .fwn file. You can then use the **Paste from framework** command to paste the group in another node diagram.

You can use frameworks to simplify the process of programming multiple devices with similar configurations. For example, if you wanted to program a single function into several nodes, you could program the first node and then copy the configuration to a framework. You could then quickly program the other nodes by simply opening their node diagrams and pasting the framework you created. You can also use frameworks to program an entire node at once, considerably reducing the amount of time required to set up a large installation.

Before you save a group of modules as a framework, consider carefully which modules you want to include. If you include core modules in your framework, you will not be able to paste them unless you overwrite the existing core modules that correspond to those in your framework. Another approach is to select the modules "downstream" of the core module and save them as a framework. Then when you paste the framework into another node diagram, you can use the Maintain External Inputs option to preserve your links to the original core modules. (See "Using the Paste Summary Dialog Box" on page 233 for more information.)

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

After you have saved a framework, it can be used in another node diagram, as long as the node supports the modules included in the framework. Although it is possible to create a framework from one node type and use it with another node type, it is advisable to restrict your use of frameworks to nodes of the same type.

Copying a Group of ION Modules to a Framework

1. Select the group of module icons you want to copy.
2. Select **Edit > Copy to Framework**. The **Copy to Framework** dialog box appears.
3. In the File Name box, type a name for the framework, then click **Save**. The framework filename extension (.fwn) is added automatically and the selection is saved as a framework file.

After you have copied a group to a framework, you can select **Edit > Paste from framework** to paste it into a node diagram.

Pasting ION Modules

You can paste a saved copy of one or more modules into any node diagram. Designer offers two ways to paste modules:

- **Paste** inserts a selection that has been placed on the clipboard using the **Cut** or **Copy** command
- **Paste from framework** inserts a selection that has been saved as a file.

Pasting modules is a little more complicated than copying them, because the action of adding modules to the node may require you to replace existing modules. Whether you choose Paste or Paste from framework, Designer displays a Paste Summary dialog box that explains each aspect of the proposed changes.

You can use the Paste Summary box to define how to integrate the source modules into the destination modules. For example, if a source module is being pasted to a destination that is already occupied, you can either lock paste the new module over the existing one or free paste the new module into the next available destination.

If you paste a selection that contains a shortcut, Designer may paste the shortcut as a module. (See “Pasting Shortcuts” on page 236 for more information.)

In some cases, Designer may not paste every module in your selection. (See “Modules that Cannot be Pasted” on page 237 for more information.)

Pasting ION Modules from the Clipboard or a Framework

When pasting modules, the first thing to do is select the node diagram and window where you want the modules to go. If you have more than one window open, you can click on the title bar of the window you want to make it the active window.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

You can paste modules into the same node diagram they were copied from or into a different one.

You can paste modules from two sources: the clipboard or a framework. When you paste a selection from either source, Designer describes the proposed changes in the Paste Summary dialog box. You can use the Paste Summary box to review your changes and make modifications as necessary.

NOTE

The lock paste option in the Paste Summary box instructs Designer to overwrite existing destination modules as necessary. Use lock paste with caution to avoid accidentally overwriting required modules. (See "Using the Paste Summary Dialog Box" on page 233 for more information.)

Pasting ION Modules into a Node Diagram

1. Open the window where you want the modules to go. Click in the background of the window to clear any selected modules.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To paste a selection from the clipboard, select **Edit > Paste**.
   - To paste a selection from a framework, select **Edit > Paste from Framework**. In the Paste from Framework box, select the file you want and then click **Open**.
3. The **Paste Summar**y dialog box appears. Use the Paste Summary box to review the proposed changes (see "Using the Paste Summary Dialog Box", below, for more information). When you are satisfied with the summary, click **OK** to complete the procedure.

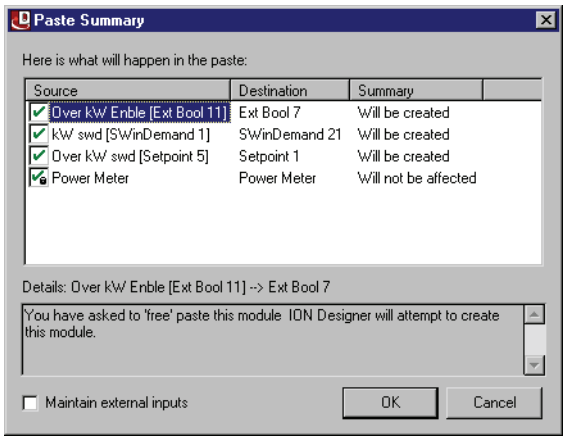
The selection is pasted into the active window. The entire selection is automatically selected so you can easily move it to a clear area in the window. All module icons in the selection appears as pending until you click **Send & Save** to save the changes to the node.

Using the Paste Summary Dialog Box

Before Designer pastes a selection, it displays the Paste Summary dialog box. Use the Paste Summary dialog box to review and modify the proposed changes to the node diagram.

The Paste Summary dialog box lists each module to be pasted and indicates its destination in the node. For each module, this box provides a short summary of the proposed modification as well as a more detailed description of how the module is pasted or why it cannot be pasted as requested.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



The following sections describe the various areas of the Paste Summary dialog box.

Source

The Source column lists each module that was copied to the clipboard or framework. Each source module is listed by its default label unless a custom label has been specified (in which case the default name appears in brackets after the label). Select a module in this column to view additional information in the Details box at the bottom of the dialog box.

Destination

The Destination column indicates where the copy of each source module will be placed in the node diagram. The module label listed in the Destination column may or may not match the module label listed in the Source column. (If the destination module is to be overwritten, it is reused; otherwise, the next available module is used.)

Summary

The Summary column indicates whether the source module is copied into the destination as a new module or if it replaces (overwrite) an existing module. This column also indicates if a module will not be pasted.

NOTE

You can sort the paste summary information alphabetically by source or destination, or by importance of summary. Click on the Source, Destination, or Summary column headers to sort the list by the chosen criteria.

Details

The Details box located at the bottom of the dialog box provides more detail than the description in the Summary column. When you click on a module in the Source column, you can view a description of the proposed transaction in the Details box. This description explains how a module is pasted or offers reasons why it will not be pasted.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

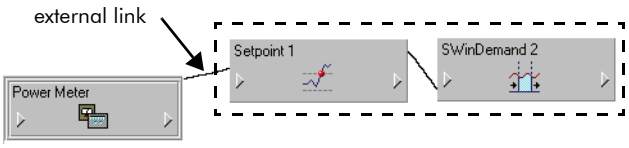
TIP

You can create a copy of the information displayed in the Details section of the Paste Summary box. To copy it, use the mouse to highlight the text you want, right-click on the selection, then select Copy. You can then paste this selection into a word-processing program.

Maintain External Inputs

The Maintain External Inputs check box allows you to paste the module selection with all external links intact. If this check box is cleared, all external links (links to modules outside the selection) are discarded.

The following example depicts an external link to a Power Meter module.



If you copied the two modules on the right but omitted the Power Meter module from the selection, the link to the Power Meter module would be external. Upon pasting the selection, the external link to this module would be lost unless you selected "Maintain external inputs" on the Paste Summary box.

Check Boxes (Free Paste/Lock Paste/No Paste)

The check boxes to the left of each module indicate the proposed action (that is, how the module will be pasted):

- A green check mark indicates a free paste.
- A check mark with a lock symbol indicates a lock paste.
- A red "X" symbol indicates the module will not be pasted.
- An "X" symbol without a check box identifies a module that has no possible destination and cannot be pasted.

You can click on a check box to change the proposed action. For example, if you click on a "free paste" or a "will not be pasted" symbol, it changes to a "lock paste" symbol. When you change the type of paste, the descriptions in the Summary column and the Details box also change to describe the new action. (See "Free Paste or Lock Paste?", below, for more information.)

Free Paste or Lock Paste?

You can use the free paste and lock paste options to instruct Designer how to respond to potential conflicts. For example, if you want to paste the module "Setpoint 1" into a diagram that already has a "Setpoint 1" module, you have two options. You can either add the new module under a new name (for example, "Setpoint 2") or you can overwrite the existing module with the new one and reuse the old name.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The first option in the above example is a free paste. It can be used to paste new modules into a diagram without deleting any existing modules. This is useful for integrating new functions into a node without disrupting the node's existing functionality. Although this may seem desirable, it is not always the best option. By leaving existing modules intact, a free paste can result in needless duplication of functions. In addition, some groups of modules are interdependent and may require a lock paste to operate correctly.

The second option in the above example is a lock paste. It instructs Designer to recreate the source modules exactly, even if this requires Designer to overwrite existing modules in the diagram. When used to quickly replace old modules with new ones, lock pasting is an efficient alternative to the time-consuming process of deleting a module, adding a new one and then configuring it.

You can use a combination of both free paste and lock paste within a single paste operation.

NOTE

You can pre-select modules for Designer to reuse when free pasting. In the actual diagram where you paste the selection, press the SHIFT key and then click on any module icons that you don't want. When you paste the new selection, Designer has the option of replacing any of the selected modules with the new ones.

NOTE

Overwriting a module is not the same as deleting the module and then pasting a replacement module. If a module is overwritten, links from the outputs of that module are retained at the inputs of other modules. If a module is deleted, these links are also deleted and do not exist after the replacement module is pasted.

Pasting Shortcuts

Identified by the symbol ↗, a shortcut icon is a representation of a module icon that is located in another window.

You can copy a shortcut in the same way you copy the original module, but when you paste a shortcut, one of two things happens: It is either pasted as a shortcut to an existing module (if one is available) or as a new module. In either case, it continues to perform its function as before.

There is a basic reason for replacing a shortcut with a module: a shortcut cannot exist in a node without the module it represents. When you paste a selection containing a shortcut, Designer searches both the selection to be pasted and the destination to locate the module the shortcut represents. If it finds the module, it pastes the shortcut as a shortcut. If it doesn't find the module, it replaces the shortcut with a copy of the module. In this way, Designer ensures that the pasted selection is complete and not dependent on a module that is unavailable in the destination node.

Designer performs this process automatically; it requires no input from you.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Modules that Cannot be Pasted

Some modules cannot be pasted because their settings are non-transferable between nodes. All Factory, Communications, and Diagnostics modules must be individually configured for each node.

When pasting a selection that contains a Factory, Communications or Diagnostics module, Designer pastes the location of the icons only.

Cloning a Node

You can quickly configure multiple nodes by cloning a node. Essentially, cloning a node involves copying a node's complete configuration to a framework then pasting it onto another node. This effectively reprograms the node receiving the framework as an exact copy of the original.

NOTE

When you paste an entire node's configuration, the Factory, Communications, and Diagnostics modules are not pasted because they could disrupt the operation of the device's communications. If you need to change the settings of these modules, you can do so manually.

Copying a Node's Complete Configuration

1. Open the node diagram of the node you want to copy. Ensure that you are in the main or root window of the diagram.
2. Select **Edit > Select All**. All core modules, standard modules, grouping windows and text icons are selected.
3. Select **Edit > Copy to framework**. The **Copy to framework** dialog box appears.
4. In the File name box, type a name for the framework and then click **Save**. The framework filename extension (.fwn) is added automatically and the complete node configuration is saved in this framework file.

After you have saved the source node's configuration as a framework, you can paste it to other nodes of the same type. This file can also serve as a backup in case you want to restore the configuration of the source node.

Pasting a Node's Complete Configuration into Another Node

1. Open the node diagram of the node to which you want to paste the configuration. Ensure that you are in the main or root window of the diagram.
2. Select **Edit > Select All**. Press the **Delete** key to remove the node's existing configuration. A dialog box appears listing the standard modules that will be deleted and the core modules that cannot be deleted. Click **OK** to continue.

   The standard modules and text icons are deleted, and the core modules (and any grouping windows containing core modules) remain.
3. Select **Edit > Select All** to select the remaining module (and grouping) icons.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

4. Select **Edit > Paste from framework**. In the **Paste from framework** dialog box, select the framework file that contains the node configuration you want to paste and then click **Open**.

   The **Paste Summary** dialog box appears. (See "Using the Paste Summary Dialog Box" on page 233 for information on using the Paste Summary box.)

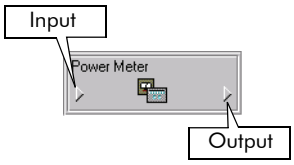
5. Select all modules in the list (click last item, hold the SHIFT key, and then click first list item - the entire list appears highlighted).
6. Change the paste type to lock paste (hold the SHIFT key and then click the paste type check box until all modules are set to lock paste).
7. Click **OK** to complete the procedure.

The selected framework is pasted into the node diagram. All module icons in the selection appear as pending until you select **Send & Save** to save the changes to the node.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Output Registers, Setup Registers, and Inputs

Each module icon has an input symbol and an output symbol. The input symbol (on the left) provides access to the module's inputs and the output symbol (on the right) provides access to the module's output and setup registers.



A register is a type of memory bank that stores a module's linking and configuration information. Each module uses two types of registers:

- Output registers store data that has been processed by the module (such as numeric values, event log entries, and waveform data).
- Setup registers store the module's configuration information.

Both types of registers serve as storage locations for the module.

Viewing Output Register Information

Output register information includes the module's available output registers, the real-time values of the output registers and the owners of the output registers. Each of these can be accessed from the output symbol located on the right side of the module icon.

Viewing Available Output Registers

Click the output symbol.

Viewing the Real-time Values of Output Registers

Press the SHIFT key and click the output symbol.

Viewing the Owners of Output Registers

Right-click the output symbol. This displays an output register's owners so you can identify all dependent modules on the node and determine the purpose of each dependent module. This is useful when determining the effects and consequences of deleting a module.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Setup Register Information

A module's setup registers contain its configuration information. When a module processes data, it manipulates the data according to the guidelines stored in its setup registers. Setup register information includes the module's available setup registers, the setup register settings, and the setup register owners. Each of these can be accessed from the output symbol located on the right side of the module icon.

Viewing Setup Registers

Press the CTRL key and click the output symbol or right-click the graphic in the center of the module to display the ION Module Setup dialog box.

Viewing Setup Register Settings

Press CTRL+SHIFT and click the output symbol or right-click the graphic in the center of the module to display the ION Module Setup dialog box.

Viewing Setup Register Owners

Press the CTRL key and right-click the output symbol.

Viewing Input Information

Input information includes the module's inputs and a sample of its real-time input values. Each of these can be accessed from the module's input symbol.

Viewing Inputs

Click the input symbol.

Viewing Real-time Input Values

Press the SHIFT key and click the input symbol.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Time of Use (TOU) Program Management

Tariff schedules, or Time of Use programs, are easily created. After you have created a tariff schedule, you can manage these files using the TOU Program Manager.

Creating a Time of Use Schedule

1. In Designer, select **Options** > **Edit TOU Programs**.
2. Click **Make a New TOU Program**.

   A New Program appears in the left window of the display. Click on this to rename it.
3. Click **Edit (Launch Program Editor)**.
4. Follow the instructions on screen and click **Finish** when you are done and **Close**.

Downloading a Time of Use Schedule into an ION meter

1. Start Designer and connect to your meter.
2. From the Factory Configuration screen (root window of the node diagram), right-click the Sample TOU module under Time-Of-Use Setup. The **ION Module Setup** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Quick TOU** button.
4. Select the TOU schedule you want and click **OK**.

Advanced TOU Schedule Configuration

The TOU program editor provides an advanced mode that lets you make configurations supported by the meter but that are not provided in the TOU Editor described above. The advanced TOU is useful in the following cases:

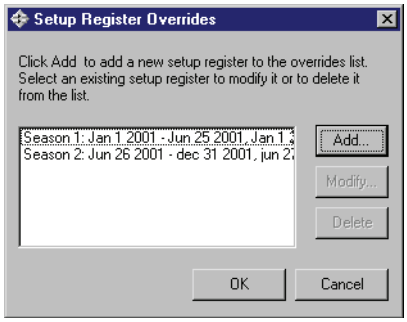
- When TOU seasons do not use a fixed start or end date that is the same in every calendar year.
- Alternate days defined as a specific date and are not a particular day of the week.

Accessing Advanced TOU Mode

1. In Designer, select **Options > Edit TOU Programs**. Select a TOU Program or create a new one and click **Edit (Launch Program Editor)**.
2. Hold the CTRL key and right-click on the text in the Seasons section of the Seasons and Rate Definitions screen.

   A dialog appears that lets you add a setup register override or delete or modify an existing setup register override.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.


Setup Register Overrides
Click Add to add a new setup register to the overrides list. Select an existing setup register to modify it or to delete it from the list.
Season 1: Jan 1 2001 - Jun 25 2001, Jan 1
Season 2: Jun 26 2001 - dec 31 2001, jun 2
Add...
Modify...
Delete
OK
Cancel

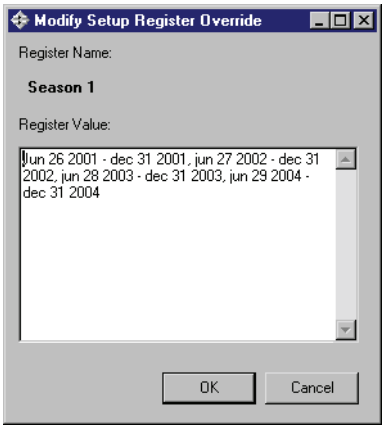
3. To add a new setup register override, click **Add**.

4. Select a setup register from the drop-down list then type in the register value (available registers are: Seasons 1, 2, 3, and 4, and Alt 1, and 2 Days).

NOTE

Be sure to follow the syntax rules described in the TOU module section of the *ION Reference*. If the syntax is incorrect, the meter will not accept the configuration.

- To delete an existing setup register override, select it from the list and click **Delete** then **OK**.
- To modify a register, select it from the list and click **Modify**. Make your changes and click **OK**.


Modify Setup Register Override
Register Name:
Season 1
Register Value:
Jun 26 2001 - dec 31 2001, jun 27 2002 - dec 31 2002, jun 28 2003 - dec 31 2003, jun 29 2004 - dec 31 2004
OK
Cancel

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

5. Click **OK** to return to the TOU Program Editor.
6. Click the **Summary** tab in the TOU Program Editor. This compiles the schedule to include the setup register overrides you just defined.

   The Device Setup Register Values section of the summary displays the register values that will be sent to the meter and includes the configured values. The TOU Program Log Output section of the summary displays the log generated while the TOU schedule is compiled. Any setup register overrides that are defined appear as entries in this log file.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Virtual Processor Service

The Virtual Processor is a service that operates on the ION Enterprise server, providing coordinated data collection, data processing, and control functions for groups of meters. This makes distributed operations possible, providing customized solutions to a variety of industrial, commercial, and power utility needs.

The Virtual Processor lets you to gather the information available from your network of power monitoring devices, and enables you to categorize, manipulate, and/or customize the data before distributing the information to the different departments in your company. You could think of the Virtual Processor as a virtual device, capable of collecting and processing data from several power monitoring devices, analyzing the information and performing control functions as required. The Virtual Processor's name implies its characteristics:

- **Virtual** - The Virtual Processor runs in the memory of your PC, not as a remote device.
- **Processor** - The Virtual Processor contains a wide selection of ION modules, which it uses to process information.

Using the Virtual Processor

The Virtual Processor is not configured at the factory. To perform data collection, data analysis, Modbus communications, or distributed control, you must first create ION module frameworks, using Designer. Refer to the *ION Reference* for information on ION modules.

Configuring the Virtual Processor with Designer

Use Designer to perform all Virtual Processor configuration, including adding new modules, configuring module setup registers, and linking module inputs and output registers to other modules.

Creating a Second Virtual Processor

Create a second ION Virtual Processor Service and start it using the following steps:

1. Open a command prompt window.
2. Register the Virtual Processor as a service from the ION Enterprise\system\bin folder by typing: **vip.exe -Service -N<custom Virtual Processor name>**
3. Open **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services** and start the new registered Virtual Processor.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Virtual Processor Data with Vista

After you have used Designer to add and link modules in the Virtual Processor, you can create a user diagram in Vista and link it to the modules in the Virtual Processor. You can then use your user diagram to display system data, monitor alarms, and control basic functions in your Virtual Processor framework.

Configuring the Virtual Processor to Interact with the Desktop

1. Open **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**.
2. Right-click the ION Virtual Processor Service and select **Properties**.
3. Select the **Log On** tab.
4. Select the "Allow service to interact with desktop" check box and click **OK**.
5. Stop and restart the ION Virtual Processor Service.

Distributed Control

Virtual Processor Distributed Control modules are a means of transferring information between the different devices in your network. These modules can be used to build frameworks for control processes such as alarm annunciation, plant-wide demand control, power factor control, load shedding, paging, and generator switching.

Before you decide to use a Virtual Processor to implement a control system, it is important to understand the various factors that influence the speed with which the Virtual Processor is able to generate a control action. Some of these factors include network traffic, the number of polled devices in your network, the reliability of your communications network, and the Virtual Processor workstation's CPU usage.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the Virtual Processor in any capacity where a failure to execute an expected control action could result in equipment failure or danger to personnel. Do not use the Virtual Processor for time-critical functions.

The information presented in this section assumes that you are familiar with the various ION modules and their functions. Refer to the *ION Reference* for details on Distributed Control and other modules.

Distributed Control Modules

The Virtual Processor uses four modules to implement Distributed Control frameworks. Three types of Distributed Control modules (Distributed Boolean, Numeric, and Pulse modules) receive data from devices or other Virtual Processors within your network and transfer this data to the node address specified in the module's setup registers. The Data Monitoring module is used as a means of disabling a control module, if the data at the source input (which is used to make the control decision) becomes "stale".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Distributed Control Module Setup Registers

All Distributed Control modules (Distributed Boolean, Distributed Numeric, and Distributed Pulse modules) have a *Source* input and an *Activate* input. The *Activate* input must be linked to another module, and it must be on for a Distributed Control module to function. These modules also contain a *Destination* setup register that specifies the node receiving the data.

Distributed Boolean Module

All Distributed Boolean modules have one input that must linked to an External Boolean output register. Whenever this register's Boolean value changes state, the new value is sent to the node defined in the *Destination* setup register.

Distributed Numeric Module

A Distributed Numeric module's input must be linked to an External Numeric module. This input's value is sent to the node specified in the *Destination* setup register. This module has two additional setup registers that are used to determine when and how often new data is sent to the *Destination* node.

Distributed Pulse Module

All Distributed Pulse modules have one input that must link to an External Pulse module. This module's pulse is sent to the node defined in the *Destination* setup register.

Data Monitoring Module

The Data Monitor module provides a means of alerting you to communication problems that may occur between the Virtual Processor and any ION node referenced by the Data Monitor's *Source* inputs.

NOTE

ION meters with Advanced Security enabled do not accept control operations from the Virtual Processor. In order to enable these control operations, you need to provide a device password in Management Console for these applications to use. See "Accessing Meters with Advanced Security" on page 38 for information on configuring Advanced Security.

Distributed Control Network Performance

It is important to maximize the speed at which the Virtual Processor receives the data used to make control decisions. The performance of a Virtual Processor using Distributed Control is sensitive to factors such as network traffic, the Virtual Processor's global parameters, and the workstation's CPU usage.

The following sections provide some guidelines for improving a distributed control network's performance.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

System Configuration

- Minimize the number of devices per site for sites including devices used for distributed control.
- Minimize the number of applications (such as Vista diagrams) that are requesting data from the control site.
- Decrease the Virtual Processor's Client Polling Period.
- Maximize the site's baud rate.

CPU Performance

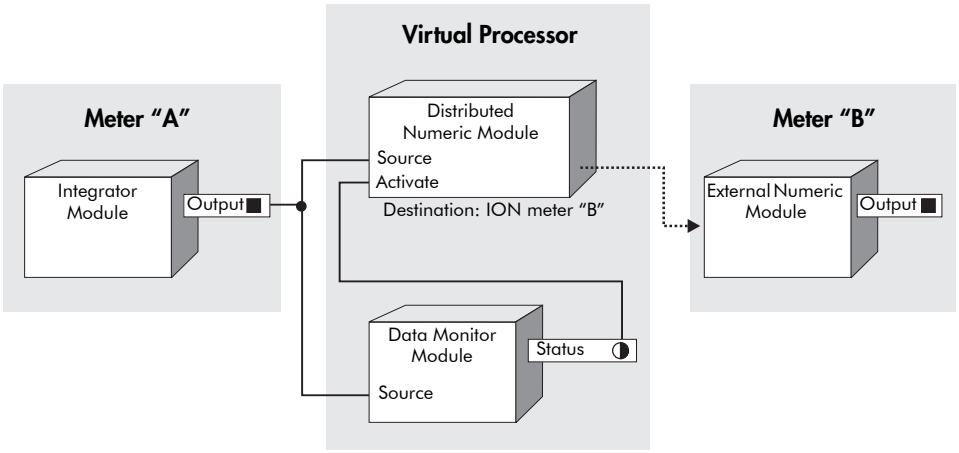
- Dedicate a single Virtual Processor for control purposes; an additional Virtual Processor can be run for less critical functions.
- Do not run CPU intensive functions on the same workstation as your distributed control Virtual Processor.

Distributed Control Applications

The Virtual Processor's Distributed Control frameworks can perform various control processes; two examples are presented below. Ensure that you are familiar with the sections above before using any of these module frameworks in a control system.

Example: Passing a Value Between Devices

The following example shows how the numeric output of the Integrator modules in meter "A" is sent to an External Numeric module in meter "B".

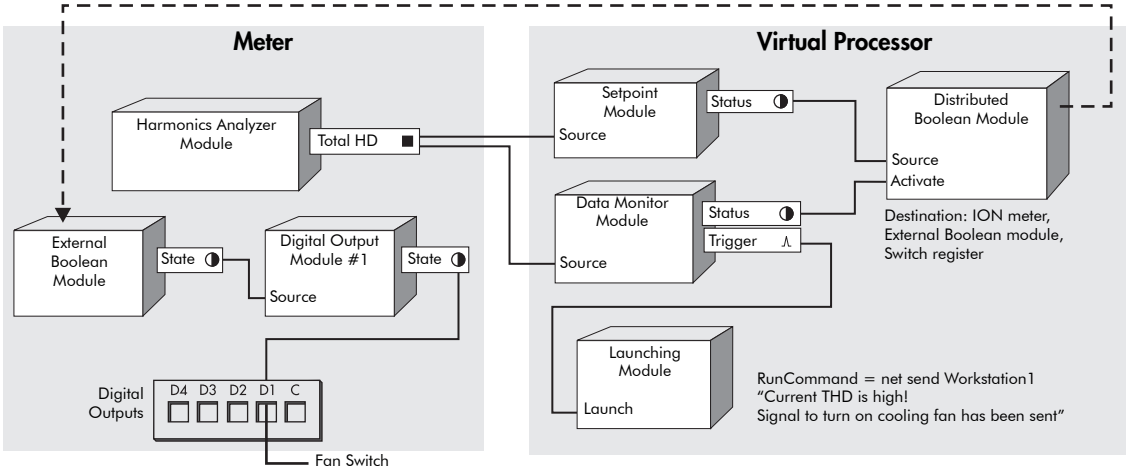


Note that the Distributed Numeric module is disabled if the Data Monitor module detects a communication problem between the meter "A" and the Virtual Processor (e.g., timeouts or slow network connections). This helps to ensure that control actions are only performed based on up-to-date data.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Example: Device Control

This example framework monitors total harmonic distortion (THD), which could cause a piece of equipment (like a power transformer) to overheat. When a setpoint is reached, the system sends a network message to a workstation and turns on a fan.



Modbus Communications

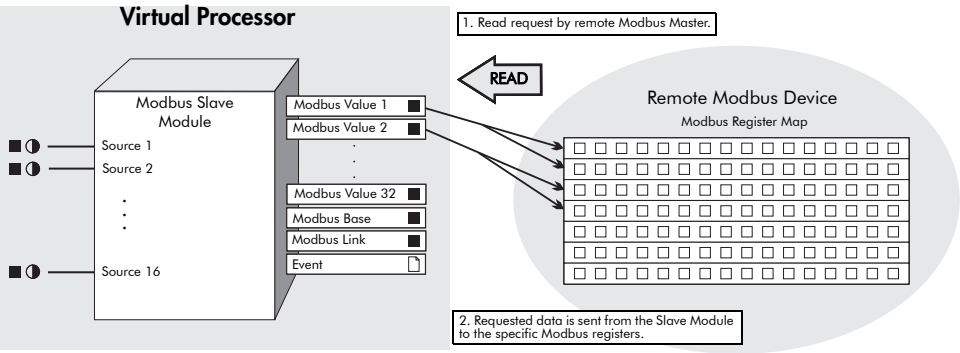
Modicon Modbus RTU is an industry standard communications protocol used in control and power monitoring industries. The devices in a Modbus network have a Master/Slave relationship with communication transactions occurring between the Master and one or many slaves (up to 247 slave devices can exist in one site).

The Virtual Processor can act as a Modbus Slave by responding to requests from a Modbus Master and providing it with power monitoring system data.

Providing Data for a Modbus Master

The following diagram illustrates how the Virtual Processor can make values in ION module registers available to a Modbus Master device. Assume the Modbus Slave module's source inputs are linked to numeric or Boolean output registers from other ION modules. In this example, the values obtained from those registers are converted to the proper Modbus format (according to how the Modbus Slave module's setup registers are configured). The Modbus Slave module responds to a read request from the remote Modbus Master device and sends the Modbus data to the specified Modbus registers (again, according to how the Modbus Slave module's setup registers are configured).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



The Virtual Processor's Modbus Slave Module

A standard Modbus Slave module can take up to 16 ION register values and make them available to a Modbus master. In the Virtual Processor, the Modbus Slave module can also be used to bring Modbus data into your power monitoring system (it permits a Modbus master to push data into the Virtual Processor).

NOTE

Refer to the *ION Reference* for more information on the Modbus Slave module.

When a Modbus Slave module in the Virtual Processor has no links to its inputs, the output registers of the module show the contents of the Modbus register map. Currently, only the Modbus Slave modules in the Virtual Processor have this additional capability (the Modbus Slave modules in ION meters cannot do this).

Use the Modbus Slave module to bring Modbus data into your power monitoring system as follows:

1. Start the Virtual Processor and open it in Designer.
2. Drag a Modbus Slave module from the toolbox.
3. Leave the inputs of the Modbus Slave module unlinked. The Modbus Slave module will not read the Modbus register map if any of its inputs are linked (the module provides the linked data to the Modbus register map).
4. Configure the Modbus Slave module's setup registers.
   - The Modbus Slave module reads the register map starting at the address specified in *BaseAddr* setup register until each output register is filled.
   - If the *Format* setup register is a
     - 16 bit format, 16 bit data is put into each of the *ModVal* output registers.
     - 32 bit format, two pieces of 16 bit data are combined into one 32 bit *ModVal* output register.
     - Packed Boolean, then the data is put into the *ModVal 1* output register in Packed Boolean form.
   - Ignore the *Scaling*, *InZero*, *InFull*, and *OutZero*, *OutFull* setup registers; there is no scaling applied to any of the Modbus register map values.
5. Link the outputs of the Modbus Slave module to the inputs of other modules in the Virtual Processor.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Three examples of modules to link to are:

- Data Recorder modules for data logging
- Setpoint and Relative Setpoint modules for alarming
- Distributed Numeric module for redistribution to ION meters (for automated plant-wide demand or power factor control)

Common Virtual Processor Applications

The Virtual Processor can be used to create numerous analysis, recording, and control functions. This section describes three common Virtual Processor applications:

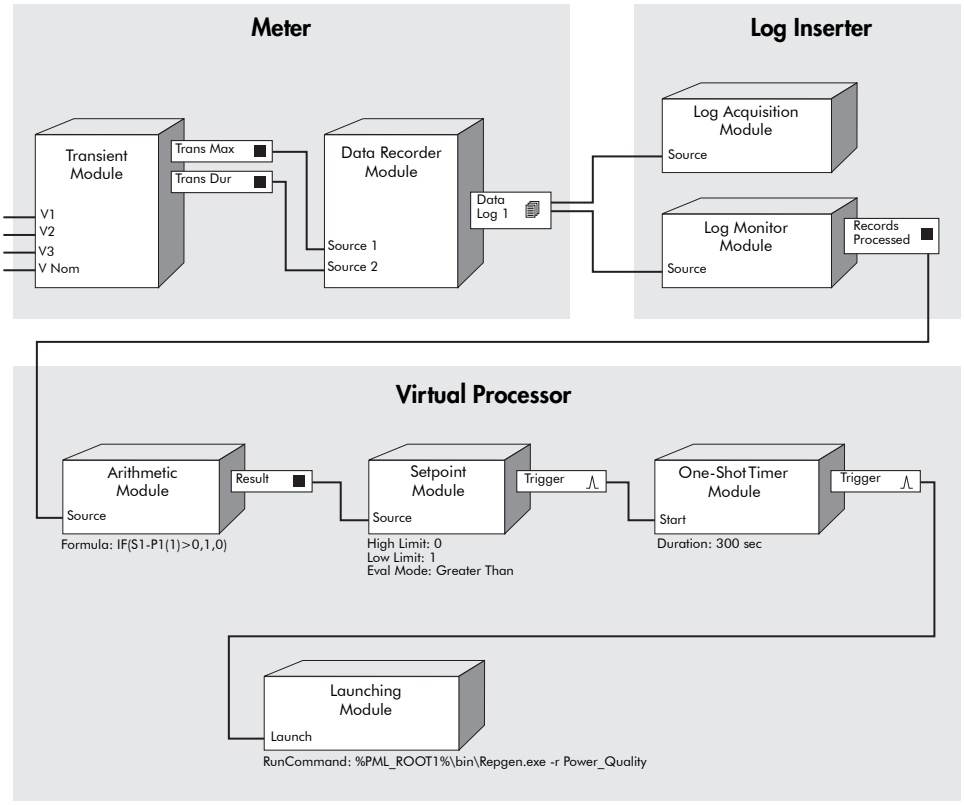
- Event Driven Report Generation using Reporter
- Data Aggregation
- Logging Data from Meters

The examples shown on the following pages assume that you understand the functions and options of the various modules used. Refer to the *ION Reference* for module details. See the previous sections for common Modbus and Distributed Control applications.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Example: Event Driven Report Generation using Reporter

The Virtual Processor can be used in conjunction with a device and the Log Inserter to generate reports in response to system events. In the following example, a Power Quality report is automatically generated in the event of a system disturbance.



As transients often occur in groups, the five minute delay setup with the One-Shot timer module allows multiple transients to appear in one Power Quality report.

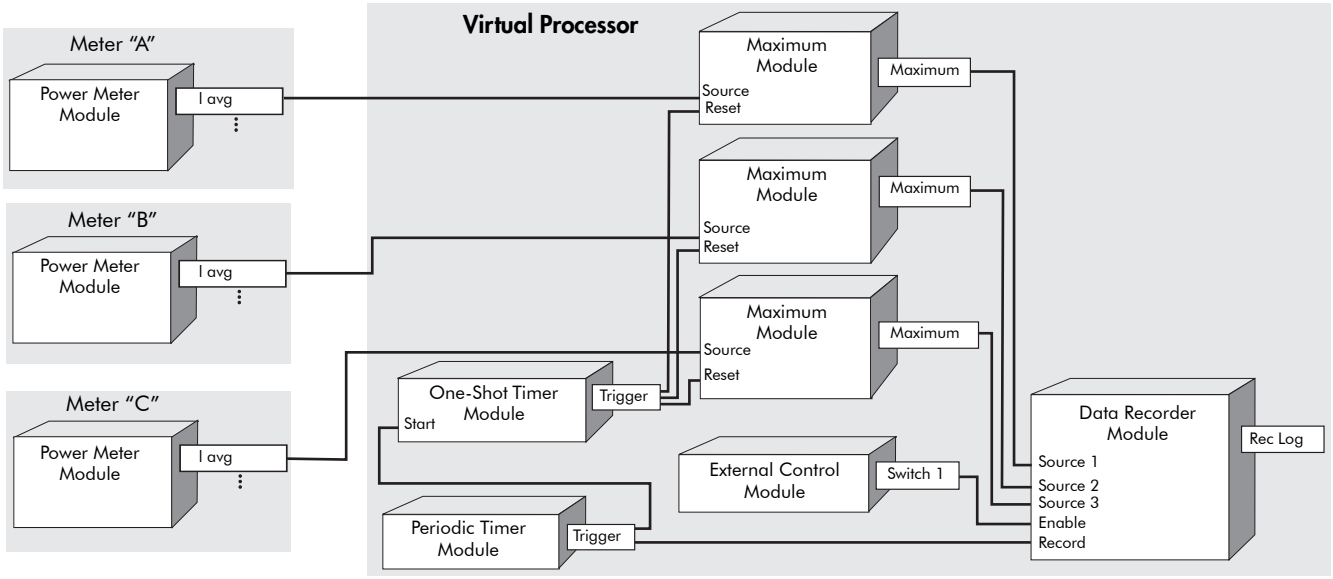
NOTE

Using the Virtual Processor's Launching module may require that the Virtual Processor be run as an application instead of a service. Contact Technical Support if you require more information.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

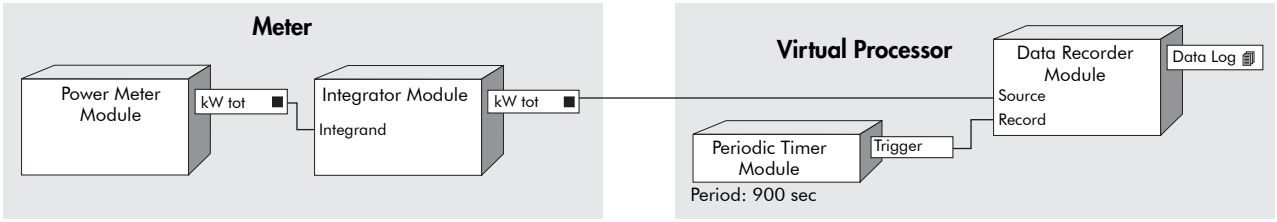
Example: Data Aggregation

In the following example, meters monitor average current values (I avg). Every day at a specified time (determined by the Periodic Timer module), the Data Recorder Module stores the maximum average current value for each meter.



Example: Logging Data from Meters

The Virtual Processor can be used to log data from meters that do not have Data Recorders. In the following example, the total kWh from a meter's Integrator module is recorded every 15 minutes by a Virtual Processor's Data Recorder module.



Setting Global Parameters

The Virtual Processor global operating parameters and Modbus network setup are configured using Virtual Processor Setup.

The global parameters do not need to be changed for normal operation. The Virtual Processor operates properly in most applications with the default settings. See "Modifying the Global Parameters" on page 79 for details.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

To set up the Virtual Processor's Modbus network, see "Configuring the Virtual Processor's Modbus Service" on page 75.

NOTE

The ION Virtual Processor Service must be restarted for any changes to take effect, as the Virtual Processor only reads the vipsys.dat file once on startup. The ION Virtual Processor Service can be restarted, like any other service, using the Services window found via the Control Panel service applet.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
8

Database Manager

Database Manager helps you maintain the information contained in your databases through periodic backups and archives.

In This Section

- "Database Manager Interface" on page 256
- "Common Database Management Procedures" on page 258
- "Manual Tasks" on page 260
- "Scheduled Jobs" on page 267
- "Optimizing Database Query Time" on page 273
- "Log Inserter" on page 274
- "Accessing the ION Database with 3rd-Party Applications" on page 275

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

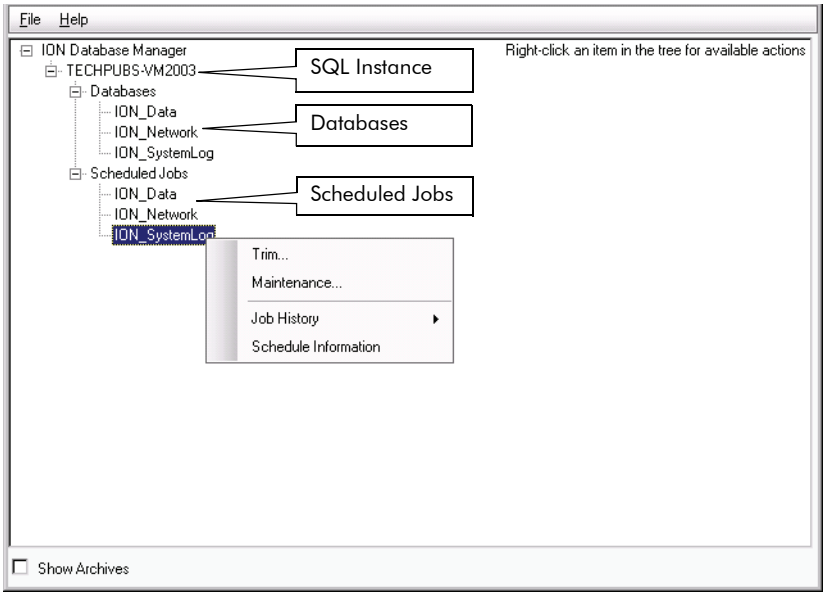
Database Manager Interface

Use Database Manager to manually perform maintenance operations on the ION Enterprise databases or to configure scheduled tasks to perform these operations.

To access Database Manager:

- Start Management Console then click **Tools > Database Manager**, or
- Open the ION Enterprise Tools folder on the desktop and double-click the Database Manager icon.

Expand the items in the navigation tree to display the **Databases** and **Scheduled Jobs** items for each instance.



SQL Server Instance

The default SQL Server instance that ION Enterprise uses for its databases is named **COMPUTERNAME\ION**, where COMPUTERNAME is the name of the server where the database resides.

Databases

Use the **Databases** section of the tree to view information about the databases or to perform manual tasks.

For information on the manual tasks you can perform, see "Manual Tasks" on page 260.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing Database Properties

To view the properties of a particular database, right-click on that database and select **Properties**. The properties listed are:

- **Size**: The current size of the database.
- **Primary File Location**: The file path for the primary database (.mdf) file.
- **Transaction Log Location**: The file path for the transaction log (.ldf) file.
- **Creation Date**: The date and time when the database was created.
- **Last Backup Date**: The date when the last backup was performed.
- **Disk Space Available**: The amount of free space available on the disk where the database resides.
- **Server Version**: The type and version of the SQL Server instance that is hosting the database.

Scheduled Jobs

Use the **Scheduled Jobs** section of the tree to configure scheduled tasks or view information about the scheduled tasks.

For more information on scheduled tasks, see “Scheduled Jobs” on page 267.

Show Archives

Select this check box (lower left-hand corner) if you want the **Databases** list to include all archived databases along with the live databases. After **Show Archives** is selected, you have the option to perform any of the tasks available for the live ION databases on your archived databases (archive, backup, restore, detach, attach, and trim, depending on the type of database).

Clear the **Show Archives** check box to hide the archived databases from view and to prevent the tasks mentioned above being performed on database archives.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Common Database Management Procedures

The following sections outline common procedures that you can perform using the manual tasks. For more details on individual manual tasks, see "Manual Tasks" on page 260.

Detaching then Re-attaching Databases

The following procedure explains how to detach a connected database and then re-attach a new database in its place.

Detaching and re-attaching a database

1. Stop all ION Enterprise services that are running.
2. Right-click **Databases** then select **Detach**. The **Detach Database** dialog box appears.
3. Select the database you want to detach. Click **Clear** to ensure there are no connections to the database. In the "Detach options" section, select whether or not you want to update statistics prior to detach. Click **OK**.
4. Right-click **Databases** then select **Attach**. The **Attach Database** dialog box appears.
5. Click the browse button ... and navigate to the database you want to attach. Edit the **Attach as** field or leave the default name. Click **OK**.
6. Restart ION Enterprise services.

Attaching a Database Using Database Manager

If you attach a database to the ION Enterprise system via Database Manager, you must keep all ION Enterprise services running. This differs from the Detach/ Attach procedure described in "Detaching then Re-attaching Databases", above.

Attaching a Database Using Database Manager

1. Right-click **Databases** then select **Attach**. The **Attach Database** dialog box appears.
2. Click the browse button ... and navigate to the database you want to attach. Edit the **Attach as** field or leave the default name.
3. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Restoring an ION Database from a Backup

To recover a database after a full backup, replace the lost or corrupted database with the backup database file.

Restoring a Database Using Database Manager

1. Stop all ION Enterprise services.
2. Right-click **Databases** then select **Restore**. The **Restore Database** dialog box appears.
3. Select the appropriate database to restore from the list in the "Select the backup to restore" section. To see the properties of the selected database, click **Properties**.
4. Click **Clear** to ensure there are no connections to the database.
5. Edit the **Restored database name** field or select from the dropdown list.
6. In the "Database file location" field, click the browse button ... and navigate to the location where you want to store the restored database.
7. Restart ION Enterprise services.

NOTE

There are blank database and transaction log backup files available in the event of a complete database loss or corruption. They are located in the ...\ION Enterprise\system\etc\ directory. The task in Database Manager called New ION Database uses these files.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Manual Tasks

The following sections provide information on the manual tasks that can be used to manage your databases.

To perform a manual task, do one of the following:

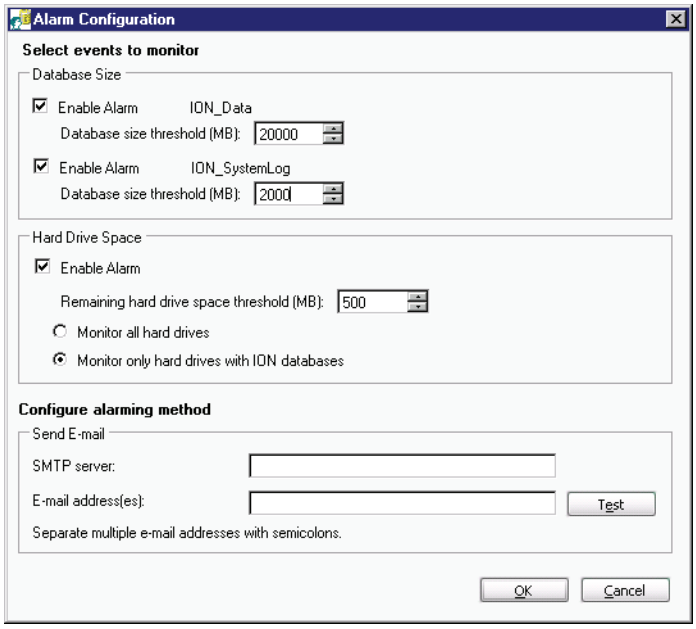
- Right-click **Databases** and select the task from the pop-up menu, or
- Right-click the database on which you want to perform the task and select the task from the pop-up menu.

When you right-click on Databases to select a task, a task dialog box appears. You can select the database on which you want to perform the task. If the task can only be performed on one database, the database is pre-selected.

When you right-click on a database, only the tasks that apply to that database appear in the pop-up menu and the database is pre-selected in the task dialog box.

Alarm Configuration

Right-click **Databases** and select **Alarm Configuration** to display the Alarm Configuration dialog box.



Select Events to Monitor

- **Database Size**: This section lets you enable or disable local alarms that monitor the size of the ION_Data and ION_SystemLog databases. You can also set the size threshold that the ION_Data or the ION_SystemLog database must exceed before you receive an alarm notification. The ION_Network database is not monitored.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Hard Drive Space**: This section lets you enable or disable the alarm that monitors your hard drive(s). You can monitor all hard drives or just the hard drives that contain the ION Enterprise databases. You can also adjust the threshold for the minimum amount of space remaining before you receive an alarm notification.

Configure Alarming Method

This section lets you specify the name of the SMTP server as well as the email addresses of the recipients you want to send alarm notifications to.

Archive

Use this task to create an archive of the selected database.

NOTE

The **Database to archive** list only shows your live ION_Data database unless **Show Archives** is selected.

1. Right-click on **Databases** or **ION_Data** and select **Archive** to display the **Database Archive** dialog box. If necessary, select the database that you want to archive.
2. Click the browse button to select a location to save the archive to.

   The directory ...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg\Archives\Data is the default location where the archive is saved, but you can specify another local directory (you can only save an archive to directory on the local machine, not to a location on the network).
3. Type a name for the archive.

   After you select the location, the archive is given a default filename, but you can rename the archive to follow your conventions.
4. Select the data types you want to archive.
5. Specify the date range of the data that you want to archive. For the Start Date, select “The beginning of the database” or select “Date” and enter a date and time. Enter a date and time for the End Date.
6. Select whether or not you want to trim the database after the archive.

   When you select a start date for the archive procedure instead of using the beginning of the database, the option to trim the live database is disabled, even if you selected the trim option before you set the date range.
7. Click **OK**.

The Progress field displays the current progress of the archive task. If a manual archive fails, a message appears and the Database Archive dialog remains open with the OK button grayed out — you can examine the Progress field to discover where the task failed. If the archive is successful, the dialog box closes automatically.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Attach

Use this task to reattach a detached database.

1. Stop all ION Enterprise services.
2. Right-click **Databases** then select **Attach**. The **Attach Database** dialog box appears.
3. Click the browse button ... to navigate to the database that you want to attach. Specify a name in the **Attach as** field.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Restart ION Enterprise services.

Backup

Use this task to create complete backups for the ION_Data, ION_Network, and ION_SystemLog databases.

1. Right-click on **Databases**, **ION_Data** or **ION_Network** and select **Backup**. The **Backup Database** dialog box appears. If necessary, select the database that you want to backup.

   If you have **Show Archives** selected, you can also backup your archives.
2. Click the browse button ... to specify a location to which you want to save the backup.

   Backups are stored in the directory ...\config\cfg\DBBackups\Data\ by default. You can save the backup to your local computer or to your network using a Universal Naming Convention (UNC) path or a mapped drive.
3. Type a description in the **Description of backup** text field, if you want to provide information about the nature of the manual backup.
4. Click **OK**.

Defragment

Right-click on **Databases** and select **Defragment** to display the **Defragment Database** dialog box. Select the database you want to defragment and click **OK**.

You can defragment the ION_Data, ION_Network, or ION_SystemLog database. These databases are defragmented as part of the scheduled maintenance if 10% or more of the database is fragmented. See “Scheduled Jobs” on page 267 for more information.

Detach

This task lets you detach a database from SQL Server so that the existing database files can be copied, allowing the option to reattach alternate or default copies of these files if necessary.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

To detach a database:

1. Stop all ION Enterprise services.
2. Right-click on **Databases**, **ION_Data**, **ION_Network** or **ION_SystemLog** and select **Detach**. The **Detach Database** dialog box appears. If necessary, select the database that you want to detach.
3. Click **Clear** to clear any existing connections to the database. In the "Detach options" section, select whether or not you want to update statistics prior to detach.
4. Click **OK** to detach the database.
5. Restart ION Enterprise services.

NOTE

Do not move the ION_Network or ION_SystemLog databases unless absolutely necessary.

Export Registry Setting

This task lets you export settings to a registry (.reg) file. This task is useful if you need to set up ION Enterprise clients in a system where the primary ION Enterprise server's database settings (server instance name, database name, or password) are customized. After you export the settings to the registry (.reg) file, you can run that registry file on the client machine.

1. Right-click on **Databases** and select **Export Registry Setting**. The **Database Registry Key Export** dialog box appears.
2. Type the path and filename for the file or click the browse button ... to specify the location to which you want to save the database registry key.

   The directory ...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg\ is the default save location for the exported database registry key.
3. Click **OK**.

Modify Login

Use this task to change the password for the SQL Server instance used for the ION Enterprise databases.

1. Stop all ION Enterprise services.
2. Right-click **Databases** then select **Modify Login**. The **Modify Login** dialog box appears.
3. Type your password in the **Password** field (this must be a SQL administrative password). Click **OK**.
4. From the Login Name dropdown list, select the instance for which you want to modify the login. Type the new password in the New Password and Confirm New Password fields. Click **OK**.
5. Restart ION Enterprise services.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

New ION Databases

Use this task to create a new, blank version of the ION_Data database.

1. Right-click on **Databases** and select **New ION Databases**. The **New Historical ION Enterprise Database** dialog box appears.
2. Type a name for your new database.

NOTE

Do not name it "ION_Data" as this is the default name for the existing ION database.

3. Click the browse button ... to specify a location for the database.
4. Click **OK**.

Restore

Right-click on **Databases**, **ION_Data** or **ION_Network** and select **Restore** to display the **Restore Database** dialog box.

Depending on the database you are restoring, this procedure replaces the existing ION_Network database, ION_SystemLog database, or ION_Data database with the database from the appropriate backup file. By default, these backup files are located in the directory ...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg\DBBackups\.

NOTE

It is not possible to simply detach the live file, copy the backup file into the live file location, and reattach the file. The backup file is a file copy of the live database, but it must have some operations performed on it to allow it to replace the live database. The **Restore** command performs these operations.

The Restore Database dialog box has the following sections and fields:

- **Select the backup to restore**: This section of the dialog box lists the available database backups. Click on a backup to select it. The selected database backup has an arrow next to it in the list.

  Click **Properties** to display the name, size, start date, finish date, location, and description of the selected backup.
- **Restored database name**: Select or type a name for the restored database.
- **Database file location**: Select the location where you want to save the restored database.

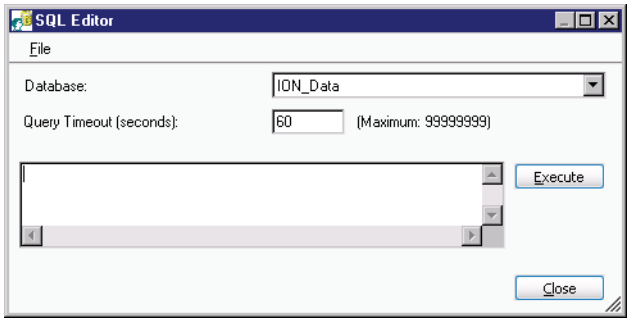
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

SQL Editor

Right-click on **Databases** and select **SQL Editor** to display the **SQL Editor** dialog box.

⚠ CAUTION

When you select this task, the following warning appears: "Any alterations made using the SQL Query Editor may be irreversible". Click **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to cancel. The SQL Editor is intended only for advanced users who have a solid understanding of SQL and ION Enterprise databases — changes made through the SQL Editor are, in some cases, irreversible.



The SQL Editor task is included within Database Manager for a number of reasons:

- The SQL Editor lets you export database information for troubleshooting purposes.
- With the SQL Editor, you can write custom queries that let you view whatever data you want.
- The SQL Editor provides a method for implementing custom changes to the databases. For example, this allows you to execute a custom SQL script provided by Schneider Electric.

NOTE

Ensure that you select the appropriate database before you execute your SQL statement.

Trim

Use this task to remove data from a database. If **Show Archives** is selected, you can also perform a trim on archived databases.

⚠ CAUTION

Trimming data from the database is permanent. It is recommended that you backup or archive data before trimming.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

1. Right-click on **Databases**, **ION_Data** or **ION_SystemLog** and select **Trim**. The **Trim Database** dialog box appears.
2. Select the database you want to trim from the "Database to trim" list.
3. In the Trim Range section, specify the date range of data you want to trim (for the ION_Data database) or set the maximum data age in days (for the ION_SystemLog database).
4. For the ION_Data database (or an archive), select the data types you want to trim (Data Records, Waveforms, Events) in the Data Types section. You can select any combination of data types to trim.
5. Click **OK**. A warning appears to notify you that the selected data will be permanently removed. Click **Yes** to continue or **No** to cancel.

Update Statistics

Right-click on **Databases** and select **Update Statistics** to display the Update Statistics dialog box.

Statistics on numbers of rows and ranges of key values in the data provided can be used by SQL Server to determine the most efficient way to access the base tables, thus improving the performance of distributed queries. **Update Statistics** recalculates these values for better performance.

To update statistics, select the database you want to update and click **OK**.

Upgrade Database

Right-click on **Databases** and select **Upgrade Databases** to display the **ION Database Upgrade** dialog box.

This task upgrades the selected database with the latest database schema.

The ION Enterprise installer automatically upgrades your databases with the new database schemas when you install ION Enterprise on an existing ION Enterprise server. If you install the latest version of ION Enterprise on a different server so that you can manually copy older database files to the new computer, you can run this task on the older databases (i.e., the ION_Data, ION_SystemLog, and ION_Network databases, and archives) to upgrade them with the new schema.

To upgrade a database, select the database you want to upgrade and click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Scheduled Jobs

Database Manager has a number of preconfigured scheduled tasks, most of which are configurable and enabled by default. See the following table for details:

Database	Scheduled Task	Enabled by Default?	Default Time	Configurable
ION database (ION_Data)	Archive	No	12:00 am, 1st Saturday of every third month or of every quarter (depending on the version of SQL Server ION Enterprise is using)	Yes
	Backup	Yes	12:00 am, Friday	Yes
	Maintenance	Yes	2:00 am, daily	No
Network Configuration database (ION_Network)	Backup	Yes	1:00 am, daily	Yes
	Maintenance	Yes	7:30 am, daily	No
System Events database (ION_SystemLog)	Trim	Yes	1:30 am, daily	Yes
	Maintenance	Yes	7:05 am, daily	No

Viewing Schedule Information

To view schedule information:

- For all databases, right-click on **Scheduled Jobs** and select **Schedule Information**, or
- For a specific database, right-click on the database for which you want to view information and select **Schedule Information**.

The Scheduled Jobs window appears. This window lists the following information for scheduled jobs: database name, job type, whether or not the job is enabled, the last run date and the next run date.

Editing Scheduled Tasks

To edit a scheduled task:

- Double-click a scheduled task in the Scheduled Jobs window,
- Right-click on a database and select the task you want to edit, or
- Right-click on Scheduled Jobs and select the task you want to edit.

The scheduled task's dialog box appears. See "Scheduled Archive" on page 268, "Scheduled Trim" on page 270 and "Scheduled Backup" on page 271 for information on editing these scheduled tasks.

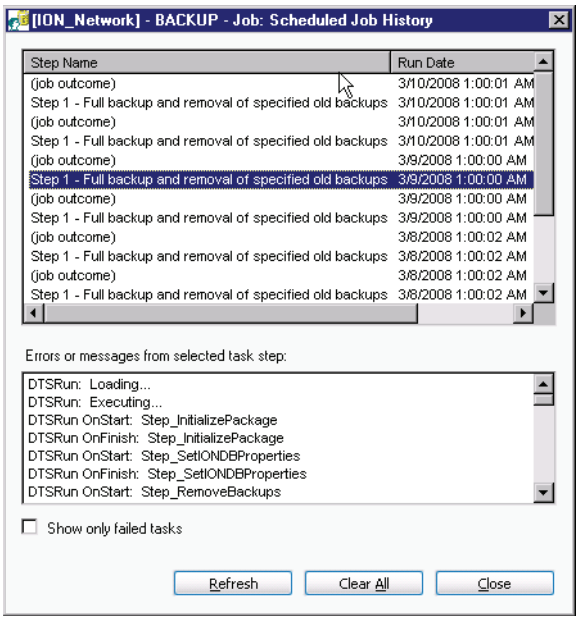
NOTE

You cannot configure scheduled Maintenance tasks.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Viewing History for a Scheduled Task

To view the history of a scheduled task, right-click a database, select **Job History** then select the task for which you want to view the history. The **Scheduled Job History** window appears.


[ION_Network] - BACKUP - Job: Scheduled Job History
Step Name
Run Date
(job outcome) 3/10/2008 1:00:01 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/10/2008 1:00:01 AM
(job outcome) 3/10/2008 1:00:01 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/10/2008 1:00:01 AM
(job outcome) 3/9/2008 1:00:00 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/9/2008 1:00:00 AM
(job outcome) 3/9/2008 1:00:00 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/9/2008 1:00:00 AM
(job outcome) 3/8/2008 1:00:02 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/8/2008 1:00:02 AM
(job outcome) 3/8/2008 1:00:02 AM
Step 1 - Full backup and removal of specified old backups 3/8/2008 1:00:02 AM
Errors or messages from selected task step:
DTSRun: Loading...
DTSRun: Executing...
DTSRun OnStart: Step_InitializePackage
DTSRun OnFinish: Step_InitializePackage
DTSRun OnStart: Step_SetIONDBProperties
DTSRun OnFinish: Step_SetIONDBProperties
DTSRun OnStart: Step_RemoveBackups
Show only failed tasks
Refresh
Clear All
Close

The run date, status (success or failed), and duration are available for all scheduled tasks.

Select a task from the list to view further information in the "Errors or messages from selected task step" text field.

Select **Show only failed tasks** to filter out completed tasks from the list.

Click **Clear All** to clear the job history for the selected scheduled task.

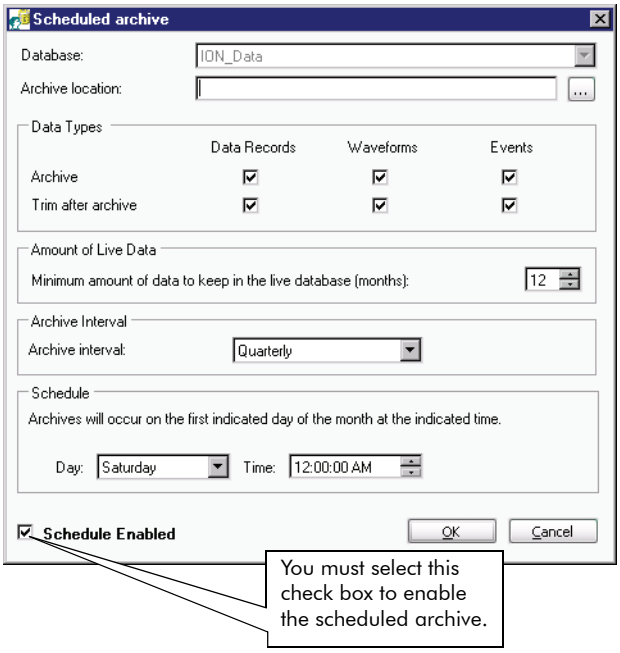
Scheduled Archive

Right-click **Scheduled Jobs** or **ION_Data** and select Archive to display the **Scheduled archive** dialog box.

NOTE

When ION Enterprise is first installed, Scheduled Archive is disabled by default. You must open the **Scheduled archive** dialog box and select the **Schedule Enabled** check box to enable it.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



Data Types

A scheduled archive is preconfigured to archive all data types and to trim each of the data types after the archive is complete. Clear the **Trim after archive** check box for a data type if you only want to perform an archive without subsequently deleting that data.

⚠ CAUTION

Trimming data permanently removes it from the database. Trimming without archiving is not recommended for data records.

Amount of Live Data

This setting determines the number of *complete* months of live data that you want to keep in the ION_Data database.

Archive Interval

For SQL Server 2005 Express, click **Select Months**, then specify the months for which you want the archive to occur.

For SQL Server 2005 (Standard Edition), select one of the following options: Monthly, Bi-monthly (every 2 months), Quarterly, Semiannually, Annually, Every 2 years, Every 3 years, Every 4 years, and Every 5 years.

NOTE

The Database Manager scheduled jobs use the year and month in the archive file name. If you use SQL Server Manager Studio or SQL Server Enterprise Manager to schedule the database archives, do not set the archive frequency to more than once a month to prevent failures.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Schedule

You can select any day of the week for your scheduled archive (the default is Saturday). The archive is performed at the specified time on the first occurrence of that day in the month. For example, if you configure the scheduled archive to occur monthly on Sunday at 5:30:00 AM, then Database Manager archives the ION_Data database at 5:30 AM on the first Sunday of every month.

Scheduled Maintenance

The schedule for the maintenance tasks is pre-configured and cannot be changed. To view the history for a maintenance task, right-click the database, select **Job History > Maintenance**. See "Viewing History for a Scheduled Task" on page 268 for more information.

There are a number of tasks that are performed on the database when a maintenance job is executed. The following is an ordered breakdown of a scheduled maintenance:

1. Check database fragmentation and defragment if the fragmentation level is more than 10%.
2. Update statistics for all the tables in the database.
3. Check and track the database size.
4. Send an email alert if any maintenance step fails.

The maintenance schedule for each database is as follows:

- **ION_Data** maintenance job occurs daily at **2:00 AM**.
- **ION_SystemLog** maintenance job occurs daily at **7:05 AM**.
- **ION_Network** maintenance job occurs daily at **7:30 AM**.

(Note that the disk usage monitor starts at 7:00 AM and takes only a few seconds to complete.)

Scheduled Trim

Right-click **Scheduled Jobs** or **ION_SystemLog** and select **Trim** to display the **Scheduled Trim** dialog box.

Ensure that "Schedule enabled" is selected if you want to enable the scheduled trim.

The System Events database has the scheduled trim task configured and enabled by default.

Changing the Schedule

Click the **Change** button in the Schedule section. The **Edit Schedule** dialog box appears where you can reconfigure the frequency and time of the scheduled trim.

The Edit Schedule dialog box differs depending on what you select in the Occurs section.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Daily**: Set the frequency in days. For example, to set the trim to occur every seven days, set the frequency to 7.
- **Weekly**: Set the frequency in weeks and select the days of the week on which you want the trim to occur. You can select multiple days of the week. For example, to set the trim to occur every two weeks on Monday and Thursday, set the frequency to 2 and select Monday and Thursday from the list of days.
- **Monthly**: Set the frequency then select Fixed Day or Relative Day to set the day of the month on which the trim occurs.
  - Frequency: Depending on your version of SQL Server, click **Select Months** to select the months in which you want the trim to occur or set the Frequency in number of months.
  - Fixed Day: The trim occurs on the specified date at the frequency specified (in months). For example, to set the trim to occur on the 15th day of every month, select every month (or set Frequency to 1) then set Fixed Day to 15.
  - Relative Day: The trim occurs on the specified day of the month at the specified frequency (in months). For example, to set the trim to occur on the second Sunday of every third month, set Frequency to 3 (or select which months you want to trim to occur in) and select 2nd and Sunday from the Relative day dropdown lists.

Scheduled Backup

Right-click **Scheduled Jobs**, **ION_Data** or **ION_Network** and select Backup to display the **Scheduled Backup** dialog box.

Both the ION_Data and the ION_Network databases have scheduled backup tasks configured and enabled by default. The save location is a different folder for each database, although both databases share the same parent directory: \ION Enterprise\config\cfg\DBBackups\.

- From the "Database to backup" list, select the database for which you want to configure the scheduled backup.
- In the "Save backup to" field, enter the location where you want to save the backups.
- In the "Number of backups to keep" section, specify the number of backups — 1 to 4 — that Database Manager keeps available.
- Ensure that "Schedule enabled" is selected if you want to enable the scheduled backup.

Changing the Schedule

Click the **Change** button in the Schedule section. The **Edit Schedule** dialog appears where you can reconfigure the frequency and time of the scheduled backup.

NOTE

Do not schedule scheduled backups to begin at the same time (i.e., do not schedule a backup of the ION_Data and a backup of the ION_Network at the same time). This can cause problems with the task.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The Edit Schedule dialog box differs depending on what you select in the Occurs section.

- **Daily**: Set the frequency in days. For example, to set the backup to occur every seven days, set the frequency to 7.
- **Weekly**: Set the frequency in weeks and select the days of the week on which you want the backup to occur. You can select multiple days of the week. For example, to set the backup to occur every two weeks on Monday and Thursday, set the frequency to 2 and select Monday and Thursday from the list of days.
- **Monthly**: Set the frequency then select Fixed Day or Relative Day to set the day of the month on which the trim occurs.
  - Frequency: Depending on your version of SQL Server, click **Select Months** to select the months in which you want the backup to occur or set the Frequency in number of months.
  - Fixed Day: The backup occurs on the specified date at the frequency specified (in months). For example, to set the backup to occur on the 15th day of every month, select every month (or set Frequency to 1) and Fixed Day to 15.
  - Relative Day: The backup occurs on the specified day of the month at the specified frequency (in months). For example, to set the backup to occur on the second Sunday of every third month, set Frequency to 3 (or select which months you want to the backup to occur in) and select 2nd and Sunday from the Relative day dropdown lists.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Optimizing Database Query Time

There are steps you can take to optimize the database query time:

- Use Database Manager to defragment the appropriate database.
- Use Database Manager to Update Statistics on the appropriate database.
- Run only one instance of SQL Server 2005.
- Run SQL Server 2005 Standard Edition instead of SQL Server 2005 Express Edition.

NOTE

Instructions on how to perform the **Defragment** and **Update Statistics** operations can be found in the section "Manual Tasks" on page 260.

Limiting SQL Server Memory Usage

By default, SQL Server 2005 Standard Edition and SQL Server 2005 Express Edition are configured to dynamically adjust the amount of memory used based on demand.

Under some circumstances, it is possible for SQL Server to use up memory to a point where the overall system performance is affected. You can adjust the amount of memory reserved by using a configuration tool such as Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.

Using SQL Server 2005 Management Studio to Limit Memory Usage

1. On the Object Explorer pane, right-click the SQL Server instance that corresponds to the ION Enterprise database (i.e., the database icon at the root level of the tree-view), then select **Properties**.
2. In the "Select a page" section, select **Memory**.
3. Use the controls on the **Memory** page to adjust the memory allocation.
4. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Log Inserter

The Log Inserter component of ION Enterprise automatically configures itself to collect data from every available recorder in every device or ION Enterprise software component and inputs this data into the database. Log Inserter is typically run only on the Primary workstation.

Most systems use only a single Log Inserter which is automatically configured to perform all required logging functions. The default configuration will work for most systems. Situations where changes may be required include systems with large numbers of devices with logs, systems with primary and secondary servers or cases where only specific devices and/or logs need to be monitored for new records. If any of these situations apply to your system, contact Technical Support for more information on the operation of Log Inserter, its different modes of operation and the functions of its internal components.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Accessing the ION Database with 3rd-Party Applications

The following example uses Microsoft Excel 2007 to retrieve data from the ION_Data database.

NOTE

The database uses Universal Coordinated Time (UTC) time. When you import data into Excel, the meter's Clock module's Time Zone Offset register is applied.

1. To create a database query in Excel, click **Data > From Other Sources > From Microsoft Query**.
2. To create a new data source, select <New Data Source> from the list and click **OK**.
3. Type the name you want to give the data source. Once you type a name, the list of drivers for the database type becomes available. Select <SQL Server> from the list. Click **Connect**.
4. Choose your server from the list. Provide your LoginID and Password and click **OK**. Select a default table for your data source (optional). Click **OK** to continue.
5. Select the source name you created and click **OK**.
6. After you have selected the data you want to view, the Query Wizard appears. Use this to filter and sort the data.
7. Follow the steps in the Query Wizard to add data to the Spreadsheet.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
9

Modbus Device Importer

The Modbus Device Importer utility enables ION Enterprise software to recognize and easily integrate third-party Modbus devices into the ION Enterprise network.

In This Section

- "Introduction" on page 278
- "ION Object Descriptions" on page 281
- "Main Console Screen" on page 283
- "Main Toolbar" on page 284
- "Editing a Register" on page 291
- "Register Properties Defined" on page 291
- "Shortcut Keys" on page 296
- "Data Formats" on page 299
- "Configuring Logging and Calculation" on page 301

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Introduction

The Modbus Device Importer is a tool for advanced users that creates the files and software support necessary to display data from any Modbus device using the Vista component of ION Enterprise. The Modbus Device Importer user interface sets up useful common Modbus parameters by default, but also allows you to configure all Modbus-specific and device-related parameters. The Modbus Device Importer also has built-in error checking to validate the files you created, or those from other sources.

Process Overview

Creating a new Modbus device type involves the following steps:

1. Identify the new device type (device name, file name, etc.)
2. Create a Modbus map file for the device type:
   - Identify a Modbus register to be added.
   - Find an appropriate register to map to in the ION tree.
   - Select appropriate data format, scaling factors, etc.
3. Configure additional Modbus device functionality (if required).
4. Validate and check the device type.
5. Add the new Modbus device type to the ION_Network database.

After it is defined in the ION_Network database, the new Modbus device is available in ION Enterprise just like any other device. Simply select the Modbus device type from the dropdown list.

Default Modbus Device Types

ION Enterprise is shipped with numerous pre-configured Modbus device types. For a complete list, navigate to **Tools > View current Device Types** from the Modbus Device Importer main console. These pre-configured device types can also be modified as required, using the Modbus Device Importer.

The ION Tree File

The Modbus Device Importer creates and edits ION tree files (.ion) for the device, which are then saved and entered into the ION_Network, allowing ION Enterprise to recognize and use the device. The tree file defines the organization of the ION managers, modules and registers.

The Modbus Map File

The Modbus Device Importer creates and edits mapping files for the device, linking Modbus registers with ION registers. A Modbus map file is an XML file that must refer to the XML schema defined in /.../ config/translators/modbus-schema.xml.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

It also defines how to convert the module register value into the value shown in the ION register.

Map File Format

Each distinct Modbus device type has its own special address ranges and requires its own Modbus map file. *Vln avg*, on an ION6200, for example, is located at 40103. It could be in a different location on any other device. In either case, it would be most logically mapped to the Power Meter Module's *Vln avg* output register (0x5803) in the default tree.

The example map file shown below illustrates the map file format:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<!--Created by Modbus Device Importer v 3.21.0 at: 3/22/2007 10:41:56 AM-->

<ModbusMap xmlns="x-schema:modbus-schema.xml">

<DeviceInfo Type="Example Device" MultiplePresetSupported="0"
GlobalNotAvailable="NotSpecified" MaxRequestRegisters="125"
LowSpeedUpdateRate="30" HighSpeedUpdateRate="5"/>

<ModbusInfo IONHandle="134217729" Name="Baud Rate"
ModbusAddress="40001" RequestType="RW" Format="UINT16" Scale="1"
Offset="0" Multiplier="1" DefaultEnumValue="Invalid Data">

<Enumeration Value="300 Baud"/>

<Enumeration Value="2400 Baud"/>

<Enumeration Value="9600 Baud"/>

<Enumeration Value="115200 Baud"/>

</ModbusInfo>

<ModbusInfo IONHandle="134217985" Name="VoltsA@!!DeviceName!!Meter01"
ModbusAddress="40002" RequestType="R" Format="UINT16" Scale="1" Offset="0"
Multiplier="1"/>

<ModbusInfo IONHandle="134217986" Name="VoltsB@Meter01"
ModbusAddress="40003" RequestType="R" Format="UINT16" Scale="1" Offset="0"
Multiplier="1"/>

<ModbusInfo IONHandle="134217987" Name="VoltsC@Meter01"
ModbusAddress="40004" RequestType="R" Format="UINT16" Scale="1" Offset="0"
Multiplier="1"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="135266304" Name="Averaging 1"
Function="Averaging_Module"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="136314880" Name="Minimum 1"
Function="Minimum_Module"/>
```

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

<CalcInfo IONHandle="137363456" Name="Maximum 1"
Function="Maximum_Module"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="138412032" Name="Data Rec 1"
Function="DataRecorder_Module"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="139460608" Name="Feedback 1"
Function="Feedback_Module"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="140509184" Name="Periodic Tmr 1"
Function="PeriodicTimer_Module"/>

<CalcInfo IONHandle="131072000" Name="Diagnostics 1"
Function="Diagnostics_Module"/>

</ModbusMap>

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Object Descriptions

ION objects are software items that are recognized by ION Enterprise software. ION objects consist of device managers, modules, and registers. Managers separate different module types and groups together modules of the same type. Modules group registers into convenient or logical groups. Registers are the objects that actually hold the Modbus register information.

For more information on ION architecture, refer to the *ION Reference*.

Managers

Managers organize the Modbus map file into a formatted structure. There are three different types of managers supported in the Modbus Device Importer:

- **External Boolean Manager**: holds Boolean type registers
- **External Numeric Manager**: holds Numeric type registers
- **External Pulse Manager**: holds Pulse type registers

You can create up to 127 managers. After you create a manager, you cannot change its manager type.

Modules

Similar to managers, modules also help organize the map file structure. You can create up to 4095 modules inside a given manager. Use modules to arrange registers into logical groupings or similar register types. When naming a module, choose a name that is relevant to the type of registers it contains. Modules inherit the class type of their parent manager, so you cannot change a module type after is has been created.

Registers

A register is an object that can be linked to a physical register on a Modbus device, where data is read from or written to. You can map registers to a Modbus address, then use Vista to read and write data to this Modbus device.

When you create a register, it inherits the type of its parent module. You can create up to 255 registers per module.

There are three different register types:

Boolean Registers

Boolean registers hold Boolean data, i.e., a logical True or False (1 or 0). You can attach a label to the register to indicate an ON or OFF state. If a numeric register is mapped to a Boolean register, a value of "0" (zero) puts the Boolean register in an OFF state, while any other value turns the Boolean register ON (unless a mask is applied).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

If any of the bits exposed by the mask are set, the value is interpreted as a 'True'. Otherwise it is interpreted as 'False'. MaskedBool can be used to sift out individual Booleans that are stored as arrays of bits in Modbus. If no mask is specified, all bits are relevant. Boolean registers can be 16 or 32 bits long.

Numeric Registers

Numeric registers hold numeric data.

Pulse Registers

Pulse registers are used in Vista to send a pulse to the specified address. They are used specifically to write values to a device. The user can specify the exact value to send out as a pulse for each register. Pulse registers can only write 16 bits worth of data.

Factory Registers

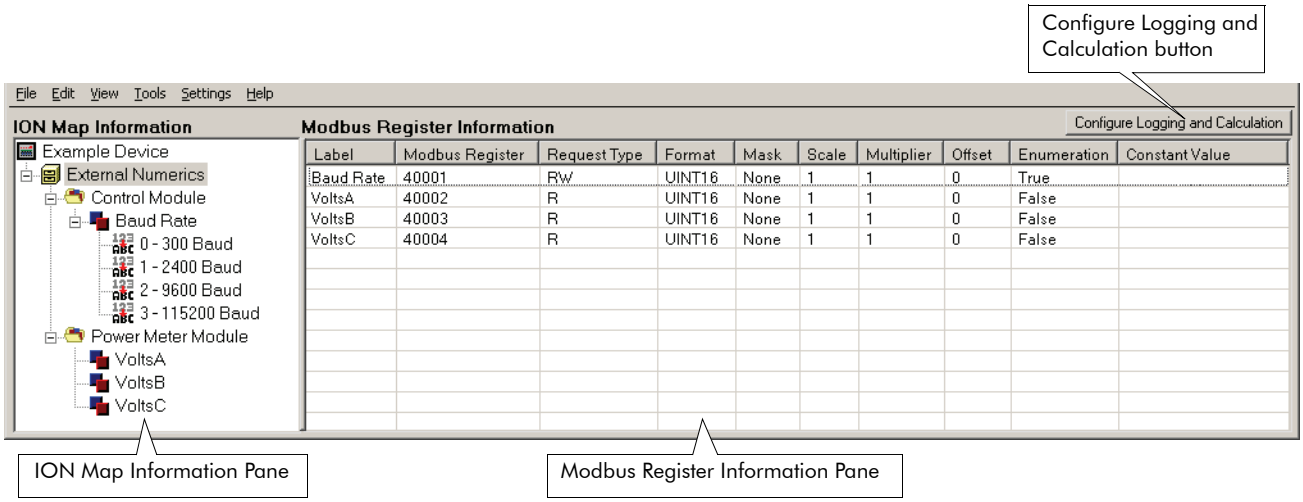
You cannot add or remove Factory objects but you can edit them. All Factory registers are initially set to a default constant value. You can change these constant values, or map the registers to a valid Modbus address (see "Editing a Register" on page 291). There are four user defined factory registers that you can change if the required registers are not already present in the default list.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Main Console Screen

To open Modbus Device Importer, start Management Console then select **Tools > System > Modbus Device Importer**.

The main console screen appears:


Configure Logging and Calculation button
File Edit View Tools Settings Help
ION Map Information
Modbus Register Information
Configure Logging and Calculation
Example Device
External Numerics
Control Module
Baud Rate
0 - 300 Baud
1 - 2400 Baud
2 - 9600 Baud
3 - 115200 Baud
Power Meter Module
VoltsA
VoltsB
VoltsC
Label | Modbus Register | Request Type | Format | Mask | Scale | Multiplier | Offset | Enumeration | Constant Value
Baud Rate | 40001 | RW | UINT16 | None | 1 | 1 | 0 | True
VoltsA | 40002 | R | UINT16 | None | 1 | 1 | 0 | False
VoltsB | 40003 | R | UINT16 | None | 1 | 1 | 0 | False
VoltsC | 40004 | R | UINT16 | None | 1 | 1 | 0 | False
ION Map Information Pane
Modbus Register Information Pane

The main console is where most actions are performed and ION objects are managed. The device managers, modules, and registers are displayed in the ION Map Information Pane on the left hand side of the screen. Information specific to registers is displayed on the right hand side of the screen in the Modbus Register Information Pane. If you select an object in the tree, all registers below it have their information displayed.

Navigate through the tree-view by clicking on the specific objects or by using the arrow keys on the keyboard.

When the application is started or the **File** > **New** menu is selected, a default configuration is loaded. The only object included in the default configuration is the factory manager and associated registers. By default you cannot specifically see the factory objects so a blank template is displayed.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Main Toolbar

File Menu

Select **File** on the main toolbar to access the following menu items:

- **New**: Creates a new, blank map file.
- **Open**: Opens an existing map file.
- **Save**: Saves the current map file template and the corresponding ION tree file template.
- **Save As**: Lets you save the current map template to a different location.
- **Exit**: Closes the program.

The File menu also lists the most recently opened device templates.

Edit Menu

You can add new objects by either right-clicking in the ION Map Information pane or selecting the appropriate option from the **Edit** menu.

Objects are placed either as children or siblings. For example, you may add a new manager to the device (sibling of an existing manager) or a new module to an existing manager (child of a manager). The same relationship applies to modules and registers.

- **New Manager**: Adds a new manager.

Adding a New Manager

1. Click **Edit > New Manager**. The **Add New Manager** dialog box appears.
2. Type a name for the manager.
3. Select a manager type from the drop-down list: External Boolean Manager, External Numeric Manager, or External Pulse Manager.

NOTE

The manager type you choose determines parameters in the modules and registers under it.

4. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **New Module**: Adds a new module.

Adding a New Module

1. Click **Edit > New Module**. The **Add New Module** dialog box appears.
2. Type a name for the module.

   The default is the next available number of that module type within the current manager (e.g., Ext Num 3). The name of the module determines the default names of the registers under it. Note that the module name can be changed later, if required.
3. Click **OK**.

NOTE

Duplicate names are permitted but not recommended.

- **New Register**: Adds a new register. See "Editing a Register" on page 291 for more information on using this dialog box.
- **New Register (Quick)**: Adds a new register, using all default settings. No dialog box is associated with this command unless no registers currently exist in the target module (in that case, it is treated as creating a new register with a dialog box).

  The Modbus address is automatically incremented as appropriate based on the register type and size.

Copying and Pasting Objects

You can copy and paste modules and registers. After you copy an object, you can paste it into a different location in the tree. You cannot paste registers or modules from one class type to another (i.e., you cannot copy a Boolean register and paste it into a numeric module).

- **Copy**: Copies your selection(s) to the clipboard.

There are three different paste options: Paste, Paste Clone and Paste Multiple.

- **Paste**: Pasting registers will normally automatically increments the Modbus address based on the register data type. In the case of MaskedBool, it increments the bit mask by one until it reaches 0x8000, when the Modbus address increments by one and the mask resets to 0x0001.

  The new register label is reset to a default label such as "Power Meter Module.0004".
- **Paste Clone**: Pasting a Clone is the same as pasting normally with the exception that the Modbus address of the register is not increased. This is a useful feature for pasting multiple registers with the same Modbus address but applying different masks.

  The new register label is reset to a default label such as "Power Meter Module.0004".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

- **Paste Multiple**: Pasting multiple copies simply performs a normal paste a determined number of times, each copy incrementing the address the appropriate number of addresses.

Moving Objects

You can move both modules and registers. This is done by selecting the desired object(s) in either the ION Map Information pane or Modbus Register Information pane and then holding down the ALT key. You can move the module or register to any other holding object, but it must be moved to the same data type.

Editing Objects

To edit objects in the Modbus Device Importer, right-click on them and select Advanced Properties. See "Editing a Register" on page 291 for more information.

Deleting Selected <type of object>

To delete objects in the Modbus Device Importer, right-click on them and select **Delete selected <type of object>**. If you delete an object, all children (objects beneath it) are also deleted. To delete multiple registers at once, select them in the Modbus Register Information pane and then click "Delete selected Registers".

Advanced Properties

Select this menu item to open the Device Properties dialog box. You can also open this dialog box using **View > Device Properties**. For more information regarding device properties, see "View Menu" on page 286.

View Menu

The following menu items are accessed by clicking **View** on the main toolbar.

- **Refresh**: Refreshes the main console screen.
- **Collapse All**: Collapses the tree view.
- **Device Properties**: Click **View > Device Properties** (or right-click on the tree-view root and select **Properties**). The **Device Properties** dialog box appears:

  Device Properties Tab

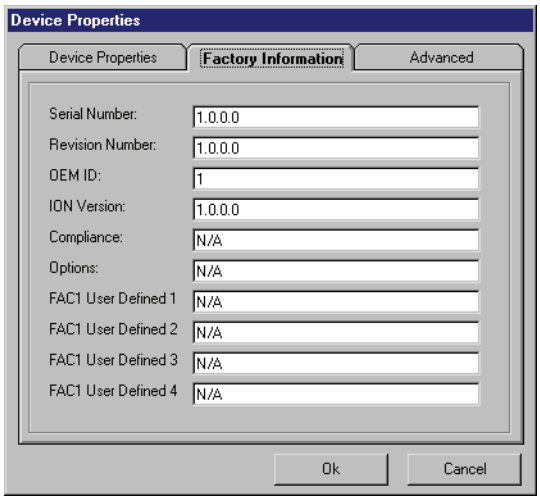
  - **Device Type**: Type the name of the Device Type.
  - **Default Diagram Template Label field**: This is used if the device has a default Vista diagram. The string entered in this field is an internal identifier and is only used if the "Add Generate Network Diagram Support" feature is used; see "Tools Menu" on page 287 for more information.

NOTE

Changes made here are not be reflected in ION Enterprise until you add or update the device type.

Factory Information Tab

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



These fields are used to identify the device type. By default, all values are constant values, but you can map them to Modbus registers if required.

Advanced Tab

- **Maximum number of registers for a single request setting**: The maximum number of registers requested for the device can be set anywhere from 1 to 125. It is recommended that you do not change this setting unless the specific device has special requirements.
- **Multiple Preset Write check box**: Be sure that you match this check box with the device type. Select the check box if the device type supports Multiple Preset Write for registers and coils; clear the check box if the device type only supports Single Preset Write.
- **Disable "-1" check box**: This is a special feature for ION meters. ION meters return a "-1" if a specified register is not available and the system interprets that value as a control signal. Most devices use the value of –1 as a valid data value, so it is recommended that this feature is turned off for all non ION meters.
- **Requested update period for any calculated registers setting**: Enter a number (in seconds) to specify how often the physical Modbus device is polled to update the registers used for calculations.

Tools Menu

Select the **Tools** menu on the main toolbar to access the following menu items:

- **Add Device Type**: After you correctly configure and save a device, you can add it to the ION_Network database.

  By adding a device to the ION_Network database, you can now create new devices of the device type in Management Console. Before you can add the device type, you must go to the Device Properties and configure the device (See "View Menu" on page 286).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

To add the device type click **Tools > Add Device Type**. After the device type is added, a new screen appears that shows the device types currently in the ION_Network database (See "View Current Device Types"). Ensure that the device type you added is present and the configuration is correct.

- **Update Device Type**: If you add a device type to the ION_Network database but changes were made to the template, then you can update the ION_Network database to reflect these changes.

  You are notified if the update is successful or not. If it fails, you must remove any devices of the specified device type from Management Console and then update to the ION_Network database again.

NOTE

The ION_Network database update may fail if the device type you are updating is currently being used in Management Console. If this occurs you must remove all devices of the specified type before the update will be successful, or contact Technical Support for possible workarounds.

- **Add "Generate Network Diagram" Support**: If a Vista diagram has been created for a device type, then you can set it up as the default network diagram in Vista.

  This enables all devices which are of the new device type to have default diagrams in Vista when the "Generate Network Diagram" feature is utilized. It is recommended that the default Vista diagram is created before running this feature.

  You must configure the following factory registers in order for this feature to work correctly:

  - **FAC1 Device Type register**

  This register must have a constant value. This is set in the Device Properties window as the Device Type. Use a descriptive name that easily identifies the device.

  - **FAC1 Template register**

  This register must have a constant value. Use something specific to the current register. For example, a device called "Test_Device" could be "Test_Device_Rev1.0.3". The template should reflect the device type, as well as the current version, to avoid future confusion if similar devices are added.

NOTE

Both of these registers must have constant values. Modbus Device Importer does not support the "Add Generate Network Diagram support" feature for devices that get either of these register values dynamically (i.e., mapped to a Modbus register).

After you enter the correct register values, you can find the "Add Generate Network Diagram support" feature under the **Tools** menu. This feature is very useful if you have multiple versions of a specific device type.

This feature creates the necessary registry keys and set up the required directory structure for generating a network diagram.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

By default, the diagram is a **blank** diagram. You must modify this diagram to actually correspond to the specified device.

- **Save ION Handle List**: This command saves a list of the registers along with their corresponding ION handles. You can use this list to create a Vista diagram without an active device connected.

  The list is saved as a text file in the current Modbus Device Importer installation folder. The name of the text file is in the format <currentDeviceName>.csv.

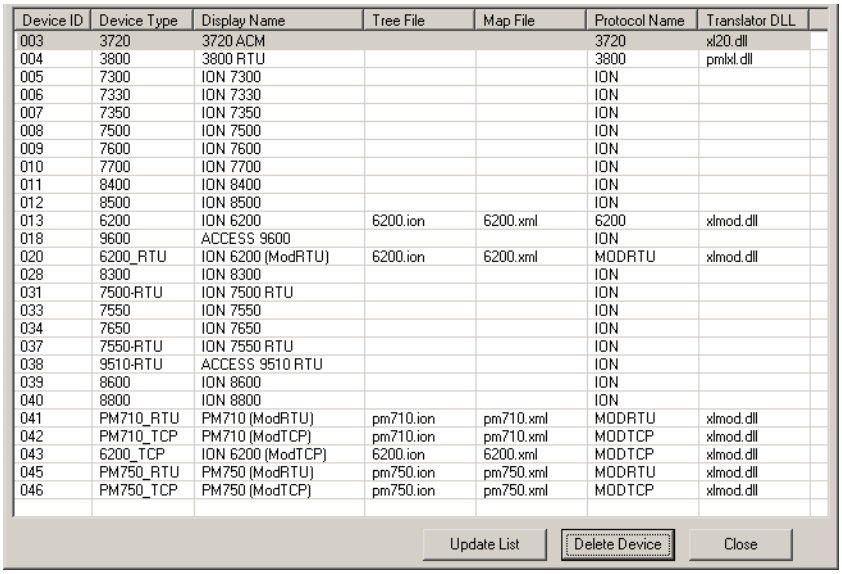
- **Validate Template**: This command lets you validate the current configuration.

  Doing this performs various validation and integrity tests on the current configuration of the ION and Modbus objects. It lists potential errors such as registers that share the same Modbus register address or registers that have conflicting masks. The error checks that are performed can be toggled on or off, using the check boxes in the dialog box: general issues, address conflicts, handle conflicts, label conflicts, and name conflicts.

NOTE

You must manually fix any errors or else you cannot add or update the device type.

- **View current Device Types:** This command allows you to view the device types currently in the ION_Network database.



Device ID	Device Type	Display Name	Tree File	Map File	Protocol Name	Translator DLL
003	3720	3720 ACM			3720	xl20.dll
004	3800	3800 RTU			3800	pmlxl.dll
005	7300	ION 7300			ION	
006	7330	ION 7330			ION	
007	7350	ION 7350			ION	
008	7500	ION 7500			ION	
009	7600	ION 7600			ION	
010	7700	ION 7700			ION	
011	8400	ION 8400			ION	
012	8500	ION 8500			ION	
013	6200	ION 6200	6200.ion	6200.xml	6200	xlmod.dll
018	9600	ACCESS 9600			ION	
020	6200_RTU	ION 6200 (ModRTU)	6200.ion	6200.xml	MODRTU	xlmod.dll
028	8300	ION 8300			ION	
031	7500-RTU	ION 7500 RTU			ION	
033	7550	ION 7550			ION	
034	7650	ION 7650			ION	
037	7550-RTU	ION 7550 RTU			ION	
038	9510-RTU	ACCESS 9510 RTU			ION	
039	8600	ION 8600			ION	
040	8800	ION 8800			ION	
041	PM710_RTU	PM710 (ModRTU)	pm710.ion	pm710.xml	MODRTU	xlmod.dll
042	PM710_TCP	PM710 (ModTCP)	pm710.ion	pm710.xml	MODTCP	xlmod.dll
043	6200_TCP	ION 6200 (ModTCP)	6200.ion	6200.xml	MODTCP	xlmod.dll
045	PM750_RTU	PM750 (ModRTU)	pm750.ion	pm750.xml	MODRTU	xlmod.dll
046	PM750_TCP	PM750 (ModTCP)	pm750.ion	pm750.xml	MODTCP	xlmod.dll

Update List | Delete Device | Close

From here you can delete old device types that are not being used.

Note that you may see multiple entries for the same physical device in the device type listings (for example, 6200 RTU and 6200 ModTCP). The Modbus Device Importer classifies each different protocol as a separate device type.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

You cannot delete a device type that is currently being used by Management Console.

- **Calculator**: This loads the default Windows calculator.

Settings Menu

Select **Settings** on the main toolbar to access the following menu items:

- **Change Default Template Path**: The default template path is used for loading a new template. Use this command to change the path if required.
- **Enable Auto-Validation:** This is selected by default.
- **Start Application Maximized**: This sets the Modbus Device Importer window to open in a maximized state.
- **Show Properties Window on Double-Click**: Allows an object's property window to open if the object is double-clicked in the ION Map Information pane.
- **Auto Select Text on Edit in Register Information**: Allows a field that is clicked on in the Modbus Register Information pane be fully selected when the edit screen opens. This is useful if you need to change the entire field.
- **Advanced**: You can access two features from this sub-menu:
  - **Show Factory Objects**: Makes the factory objects visible in the ION Map Information pane. With this feature enabled, you can edit the properties of the Factory objects.
  - **Show Modbus Addresses Offset in Hex**: With this feature enabled, all Modbus addresses in the Modbus Register Information pane are displayed in hexadecimal format.

NOTE

If this setting is enabled, registers cannot be edited in the Modbus Register Information pane.

Help Menu

Select **Help** on the main toolbar to access the following menu items:

- **About**: Provides version information for the program.
- **Modbus Device Importer Help**: Opens the Help file for the program.

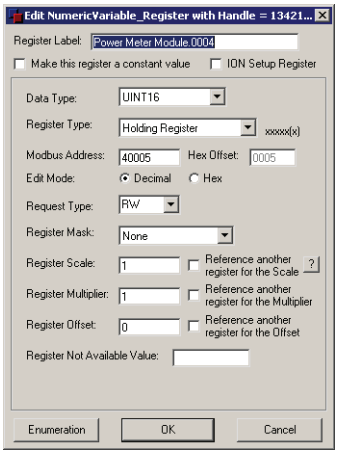
Configure Logging and Calculation Button

Click this button to enter the Configure Logging and Calculation utility. This screen allows you to configure advanced functions for Modbus devices, such as enabling logging, and should only be used by advanced users. See the "Configuring Logging and Calculation" on page 301 for more information.

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Editing a Register

To edit a register, right-click on the register in the ION Map Information pane and select **Advanced Properties**. The following dialog box displays the register information. Depending on the type of register being edited, different data fields may appear.



You can also double-click the register in the Modbus Register Information pane to edit it. This is a faster way to edit basic register properties. When the Edit Mode is initiated in the Modbus Register Information pane, the selected register opens up into an edit mode:

To scroll through the list in Edit mode, use the PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keys. After editing the values, press ENTER to save the changes.

NOTE

If you use the PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keys, the changes made are saved as if ENTER was pressed.

To cancel any changes, press the ESC key.

Register Properties Defined

The following register properties can be configured:

Register Label

The label is a description attached to the register. You can change this value at any time; it is only an identifier for the register.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The register label string has a **maximum character limit of 50**, including spaces. Keep this in mind especially when creating labels for downstream devices since they may require additional space in the label name.

Make this Register a Constant Value

If this check box is cleared, then the ION register is mapped to a Modbus register and, when viewing it in Vista, you see the real values from the meter. If this check box is selected, then it is set to a constant value. You can use a constant value to hold dynamic constant values, device identification or other values.

ION Setup Register

You can configure any register to be an ION setup register. Setup registers do not appear in the Vista register list unless you select to view the setup registers.

NOTE

This does not affect the read/write capabilities of a valid Modbus register; it is a feature specific to Vista.

Data Type

This data type is used for decoding the values returned from the meter. The selected data type format must match the format delivered by the device. Each supported data type is explained in "Additional Information" on page 299.

Register Type

This is a convenient way to change the Modbus register type. It only changes the most significant number in the Modbus address to correspond to the specified register type. This register type must match the register type specified by the device documentation. The register type also determines the Modbus function code used when talking to the device.

Modbus Address

This is the physical address of the specified register. You can find this number in the device documentation, and you can enter the number in either decimal or hexadecimal format. Address ranges correspond to register types as follows:

COIL STATUS = 0xxxx
INPUT STATUS = 1xxxx
INPUT REGISTER = 3xxxx
HOLDING REGISTER = 4xxxx

NOTE

When entered in hexadecimal format, the value is only the register offset and does not include the Register Type identification.

Request Type

This tells the system whether or not it can read (R), write (W) or do both (RW) actions to the specified register.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Register Mask

This mask is applied to the raw data received from the register. The mask is applied in an AND fashion.

For example, if the mask "0x4" is applied, then the register value displayed is only nonzero if the 3rd least significant bit in the register is a 1.

You can apply masks to both numeric and Boolean data types. To apply custom masks, scroll down the list and select Custom. When prompted, enter the value in Decimal, Binary, or Hexadecimal format.

NOTE

For integer values, the bit order of the mask corresponds to the bit order of the actual data and NOT the order in which the bytes representing the data are returned over Modbus. The high-order nibble of a 32-bit value is selected as '0xf0000000' regardless of whether the format is U32_4321 or U32_2143. It should also be noted that the resulting value of a masked integer is NOT bit shifted. A mask of '0xf000' applied to a 16-bit value of '0x1234' results in '0x1000' (4096 decimal) and NOT 1.

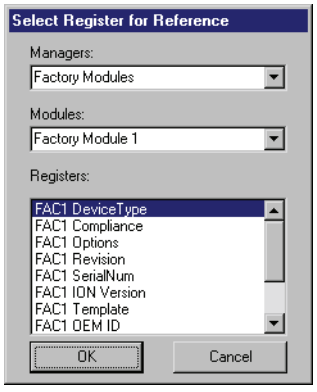
Register Scale and Register Multiplier

This specifies what the scale factor of the data being requested should be. The scale can be set to any constant decimal value within the range of -3.402823466 E + 38 to 3.402823466 E + 38. If you can obtain the scale for a specific register from the device, then you can map the scale value to another register. You can only map the scale factor to registers already created in the Modbus Device Importer.

The mapped register used can be a valid Modbus mapped register or a register with a constant value. Mapping the scale to a constant register is a convenient feature; you can change the scale for many registers by changing the constant value in one location.

Mapping the Scale Factor to Another Register

1. Select the **Reference another register for the scale** check box. The S**elect Register for Reference** dialog box appears.



2. Use the dropdown lists to navigate to the required register. Click **OK**.

   The scale to be used now appears in the Register Scale field.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Register Offset

The register offset is used if the register value returned must be offset by a value.

The scale can be set to any constant decimal value within the range of -3.402823466 E + 38 to 3.402823466 E + 38

NOTE

If "10" is entered, then 10 is subtracted from the received value. To add 10, enter "-10".

Scale / Multiplier and Offset applied:

$$\text{Modbus value} = \frac{\text{scale} * \text{ION value} + \text{offset}}{\text{multiplier}} \quad (1)$$

OR

$$\text{ION value} = \frac{(\text{Modbus value} - \text{offset}) * \text{multiplier}}{\text{scale}} \quad (2)$$

If the offset for a specific register can be obtained from the device then you can map the offset value to another register. You can only map the offset factor to registers already created in the Modbus Device Importer.

The mapped register used can be a valid Modbus mapped register or a register with a constant value.

Mapping the offset to a constant register is a convenient feature; you can change the offset for many registers by changing the constant value in one location.

Mapping the Offset Factor to Another Register

1. Select the **Reference another register for Offset** check box.
2. Use the drop-down menus to navigate to the required register. Click **OK**.

   The offset to be used now appears in the Register Offset field.

Register Not Available Value

If the register has a control signal value to indicate that the register is currently not available, then you can set the value here. The value must match the data that is received from the register on the device. If a value is received that matches this property value, the string "Not Available" is displayed when viewing the register in Vista.

Boolean Labels

This option is only available for Boolean registers. It allows you to set default labels for Status Objects in Vista.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Value to Send Out as a Pulse

This option is only available for pulse registers. It allows you to specify the exact Modbus value sent to the device when a pulse register is activated in Vista.

Constant String Value

A constant for manipulating data retrieved from the device.

Number of Registers to Request

This option is only available if the data type is set to ASCII, ASCII-Reverse or Packed BCD. It allows you to specify the number of registers to retrieve from the device on a request.

Enumeration

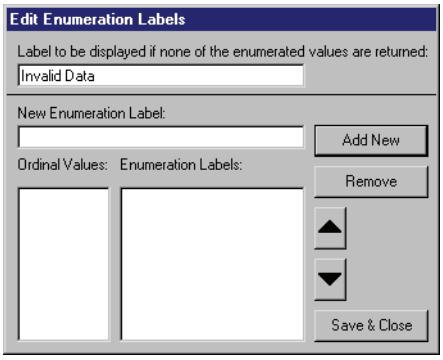
Enumeration is useful for converting numeric value representation into human readable string values.

For example, you can use enumeration on a Baud rate register. The value is represented as a number from 0 to 3, where 0 = 300 Baud and 3 = 115200 Baud. With enumeration you can map the return values to corresponding string values. In Vista, when you view the register, it displays the corresponding string value instead of the actual return value.

You can also use enumeration to generate non-contiguous scaling values for other registers. For example, a Modbus scale register returns -2, -1, 0, +1 and +2, which indicate scaling of 10^{-2}, 10^{-1}, 1, 10^{1} and 10^{2} respectively. In this case, use an enumerated ordinal of -2 through +2 with enumerated labels “0.01” through “100”.

You can access enumeration for a register from the register properties window, the Edit Mode window and also from the toolbar.

When selected, the following screen appears:



To add or remove enumeration values, select them and click **Add New** or **Remove**. When new enumerations are added, they are appended to the bottom of the list and are given the next sequential ordinal value. You can relocate values up and down with the up and down arrow and buttons.

To change the ordinal value for the enumerations, double-click in the Ordinal Values list. The change propagates down to the bottom of the list, ensuring that the list goes from smallest number to largest number.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Shortcut Keys

General Key Shortcuts

Keystrokes	Action
CTRL-N	Opens a new template (after a save prompt).
CTRL-O	Opens an existing template (after a save prompt).
CTRL-S	Quick saves the current template.
CTRL-A	Saves the current template in a new location.
CTRL-D	Adds the device to the ION_Network database.
CTRL-U	Updates the device in the ION_Network database.
CTRL-G	Adds Network diagram support for the device to the system.
CTRL-P	Opens the device properties window.
F5	Refreshes the ION Map Information pane, collapsing all nodes except the currently selected node.
F6	Collapses all nodes in the tree-view.
F11	Saves the current ION Handle list.
F12	Views the current device types in the ION_Network database.

Register Quick Edit Mode

Keystrokes	Action
TAB	Cycles through the data fields.
Enter	Saves the changes to the current register and exits edit mode.
Page Up	Saves the changes to the current register and displays the edit mode for the register above the current register.
Page Down	Saves the changes to the current register and displays the edit mode for the register below the current register.
Escape or Mouse-Wheel Click	Cancels the changes to the current register and exits edit mode.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Map Information Pane

Keystrokes	Action
Right Arrow	Expands a node or selects a child if children are already expanded.
Left Arrow	Collapses a node or selects a parent node if no children are expanded.
Up Arrow	Scrolls up through the list of nodes.
Down Arrow	Scrolls down through the list of nodes.
Mouse Right-Click	Brings up the pop-up edit menu.
Enter, Space Bar or CTRL-X	Opens the properties window for the selected object.
F1	If the root device type is selected, a new manager is created and the manager properties window is displayed.
F2	If a manager is selected, a new module is created and the module properties window is displayed.
F3	If a module is selected, a new register is created and the register properties window is displayed.
F4	If a module is selected, a new register is created but the register properties window is not displayed.
Insert	- It is equivalent to F1, F2 or F3 depending on which object is currently selected. - If a register is selected then the enumeration window is displayed.
Delete	- If a manager is selected, a prompt to delete the manager is displayed. - If a module is selected, a prompt to delete the module is displayed. - If a register is selected, a prompt to delete the register is displayed.
ALT + dragging an object	- If the object is a module it can be dragged and dropped into another manager of a similar class. - If the object is a register it can be dragged and dropped into another module of a similar class.
CTRL-C	- If a module is selected, then the module is copied. - If a register is selected, then the register is copied.
CTRL-V	- If a manager is selected and a module has been copied, then the module is pasted. - If a module is selected and one or more registers have been copied, then the registers are pasted.
CTRL-B	If a module is selected and one or more registers have been copied, then the registers are clone pasted.
CTRL-Z	If a module is selected and one or more registers have been copied, then a prompt comes up asking how many copies to paste.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Modbus Register Information Pane

Keystrokes	Action
Up Arrow	Scrolls up through the list of registers.
Down Arrow	Scrolls down through the list of registers.
Mouse Right-Click	Brings up the pop-up edit menu.
Enter, Space Bar or CTRL-X	Opens the quick edit window for the selected register.
Insert or F3	A new register is created in the module of the currently selected register and the register properties window is displayed.
F4	A new register is created in the module of the currently selected register but the register properties window is not displayed.
Delete	A prompt is displayed asking to confirm the delete of the selected registers.
ALT + dragging one or more objects	The selected registers can be dragged and dropped over to a new module of similar class in the tree-view.
Insert	It is equivalent to F1, F2 or F3 depending on which object is currently selected. If a register is selected then the Enumeration window is displayed.
Delete	- If a manager is selected a prompt to delete the manager is displayed. - If a module is selected a prompt to delete the module is displayed. - If a register is selected a prompt to delete the register is displayed.
Holding ALT while dragging an object	- If the object is a module it can be dragged and dropped into another manager of a similar class. - If the object is a register it can be dragged and dropped into another module of a similar class.
CTRL-C	The selected registers are copied.
CTRL-V	The registers that have been copied are pasted into the current module.
CTRL-B	The registers that have been copied are clone pasted into the current module.
CTRL-Z	The registers that have been copied are pasted multiple times into the current module. A prompt comes up asking how many copies to paste.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Additional Information

Data Formats

Typically, Modbus data is transmitted in big ENDIAN (big end in) format but alternates in which the individual 16-bit words are swapped are not uncommon. The formats supported by ION Enterprise 6.0 are:

Format Type	Description
SINT16	A 16-bit signed value in 2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format. The high order byte is first, the low-order byte second.
UINT16	A 16-bit unsigned value in 2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format. The high order byte is first, the low-order byte second.
SINT32 or S32-4321	A 32-bit signed value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. The high-order word is returned in the first register, the low order word in the second. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 4-3-2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format.
UINT32 or U32-4321	A 32-bit unsigned value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. The high-order word is returned in the first register, the low-order word in the second. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 4-3-2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format.
S32-2143	A 32-bit signed value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. Contrary to S32_4321, the high-order word is returned in the second register, the high-order word in the first. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 2-1-4-3 format.
U32-2143	A 32-bit unsigned value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. Contrary to U32_4321, the high-order word is returned in the second register, the low-order word in the first. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 2-1-4-3 format.
S32-MFP or S32-M10k-4321	A 32-bit signed value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. The word stored in the first 16-bit register is multiplied by 10000 and added to the word stored in the second 16-bit register. Also known as 'signed Modulo 10000'.
U32-MFP or U32-M10k-4321	A 32-bit unsigned value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. The word stored in the first 16-bit register is multiplied by 10000 and added to the word stored in the second 16-bit register. Also known as 'unsigned Modulo 10000' or mod-10K.
S32-M10k-2143	A 32-bit signed value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. Contrary to S32_M10k_4321, the word stored in the second 16-bit register is multiplied by 10000 and added to the word stored in the first 16-bit register.
U32-M10k-2143	A 32-bit unsigned value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. Contrary to U32_M10k_4321, the word stored in the second 16-bit register is multiplied by 10000 and added to the word stored in the first 16-bit register.
S48-M10k-21-65	A 48-bit signed value returned in three consecutive 16-bit registers. R3*10,000^2 + R2*10,000 + R1, where R3 is the last register and R1 is the first register. Each registers range is -9,999 to +9,999
U48-M10k-21-65	A 48-bit unsigned value returned in three consecutive 16-bit registers. R3*10,000^2 + R2*10,000 + R1, where R3 is the last register and R1 is the first register. Each registers range is 0 to +9,999
S64-M10k-21-87	A 64-bit signed value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. R4*10,000^3 + R3*10,000^2 + R2*10,000 + R1, where R4 is the last register and R1 is the first register. Each registers range is -9,999 to +9,999
U64-M10k-21-87	A 64-bit unsigned value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. R4*10,000^3 + R3*10,000^2 + R2*10,000 + R1, where R4 is the last register and R1 is the first register. Each registers range is 0 to +9,999
S64-87-21	A 64-bit signed value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. The highest order word is returned in the first register, the lowest order word in the fourth. In effect, the 8 bytes are returned in 8-7-6-5-4-3-2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format.
U64-87-21	A 64-bit unsigned value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. The highest order word is returned in the first register, the lowest order word in the fourth. In effect, the 8 bytes are returned in 8-7-6-5-4-3-2-1 (or big ENDIAN) format.
S64-21-87	A 64-bit signed value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. The highest order word is returned in the fourth register, the lowest order word in the first. In effect, the 8 bytes are returned in 2-1-4-3-6-5-8-7 (or little ENDIAN) format.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Format Type	Description
U64-21-87	A 64-bit unsigned value returned in four consecutive 16-bit registers. The highest order word is returned in the fourth register, the lowest order word in the first. In effect, the 8 bytes are returned in 2-1-4-3-6-5-8-7 (or little ENDIAN) format.
S16-1-15	A 16 bit signed value. Bits 1 to 15 bits are unsigned data. If bit 16 is 0 the value is positive, if bit 16 is 1 the value is negative.
IEEEFloat or F32-4321	A 32-bit IEEE floating point value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. The high-order word is returned in the first register and the low order word in the second. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 4-3-2-1 format.
SwappedFloat or F32-2143	A 32-bit IEEE floating point value returned in two consecutive 16-bit registers. Contrary to F32_4321, the high-order word is returned in the second register and the low order word in the first. In effect, the 4 bytes are returned in 2-1-4-3 format.
MaskedBool or PackedBool	A 16-bit value that is interpreted according to the bit pattern described by the Mask attribute. Bits exposed by the mask can be read or written without affecting the value of other bits. Unmasked bits are interpreted as 0 on a read and are unaffected on a write. Undeclared bits of a mask are interpreted as unmasked (i.e., mask="0x7F" is interpreted as 0x007F). The value that is read or written is determined by using enumeration ordinals, described below. If used for read-only Boolean data, enumerations are not required. If no mask is specified, all bits are relevant.
PF-Nexus	A 16 bit unsigned value, range 0 to 3999, representing 3 decimal places of accuracy.
BCD (Binary Coded Decimal)	A number is expressed as a sequence of decimal digits and then each decimal digit is encoded as an 8-bit binary number For example, decimal 92 is encoded as 00001001 00000010.
The following data types can have their length specified by the “Number of Registers to Request” setting.	
Packed BCD	A number is expressed as a sequence of decimal digits and then each decimal digit is encoded as an 4-bit binary number (nibble) For example, decimal 92 is encoded as 1001 0010.
ASCII	A sequence of bytes representing the ASCII character set. Each word stores two ASCII characters. Trailing spaces are removed.
ASCII-Reverse	Same as ASCII except every second character is in the reverse order.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Logging and Calculation

Use the Configure Logging and Calculation utility to perform additional Modbus device configuration, including:

- enabling register logging, including setting log frequency
- enabling low (minimum), high (maximum) and mean (average) calculations and logging
- configuring stale data settings
- appending downstream device information to labels

NOTE

Only numeric output registers can be calculated and logged. All other types of registers (for example, enumerated) do not appear on the Configure Logging and Calculation screen.

Screen Overview

Click the **Configure Logging and Calculation** button from the main Modbus Device Importer screen to open the application.

The following screen appears:

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

All the register information from the main MDI screen is pre-populated in this table when you open the application.

Show downstream device columns: Select this to show all the columns for selecting and setting the downstream device properties for registers.

Per-register area: Use this area to individually configure registers.

Low area: Use this area to enable calculation and set logging of low values.

High area: Use this area to enable calculation and set logging of high values.

Mean area: Use this area to enable calculation and set logging of mean values.

Global register edit area: Use the bottom half of the screen to edit individual registers or multiple registers, after selecting them in the list.

Help link: Click this link to open the Modbus Device Importer online help.

Stale data link (All): Click this link to open the Configure Stale Data Settings dialog.

Filtering and sorting columns

See "Sorting Data in a Column" on page 24 and "Filtering Data in a Column" on page 24 for instructions on filtering and sorting.

Configuring Register Logging

To edit registers on an **individual** basis, select the row of the register and edit the cells in the row or use the editing tools in the Global area.

To edit **more than one** register, select the rows you want to configure similarly and use the editing tools in the Global area.

Log: Select to enable logging of the register.

Interval: This value determines the logging frequency for the register. Note that this value also controls the reset interval for the min, max and averaging modules, even if these calculations are not being logged. The valid range is 1 to 4,000,000 seconds.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Low, High and Mean Calculation and Logging

To edit the suffix used for Low, High and Mean, click on the applicable link. For example, if you change the suffix to Maximum, VoltsA **High** becomes VoltsA **Maximum**.

Low

Select **Calculate** to enable calculation of low (minimum) values for this register. Select **Log** to enable logging of this value. Note how the label is appended to reflect that this is the low value.

High

Select **Calculate** to enable calculation of high (maximum) values for this register. Select **Log** to enable logging of this value. Note how the label is appended to reflect that this is the high value.

Mean

Select **Calculate** to enable calculation of mean (average) values for this register. Select **Log** to enable logging of this value. Note how the label is appended to reflect that this is the mean value.

Configuring Stale Data Settings

The "staleness" of data is measured from time data was last read from a physical device until the current time.

Click the **All** (Stale Data) link to open the **Configure Stale Data Settings** dialog box.

Mark data stale after: Enter the time you want to elapse before data from this register is marked stale in the data recorder. The valid range is 0 to 7200 seconds.

When data is stale: Select how you want stale data values logged. The setting "log an empty row" logs an empty row in the data recorder, while "use last known value" logs the last non-stale value in the data recorder until the end of the current interval.

NOTE

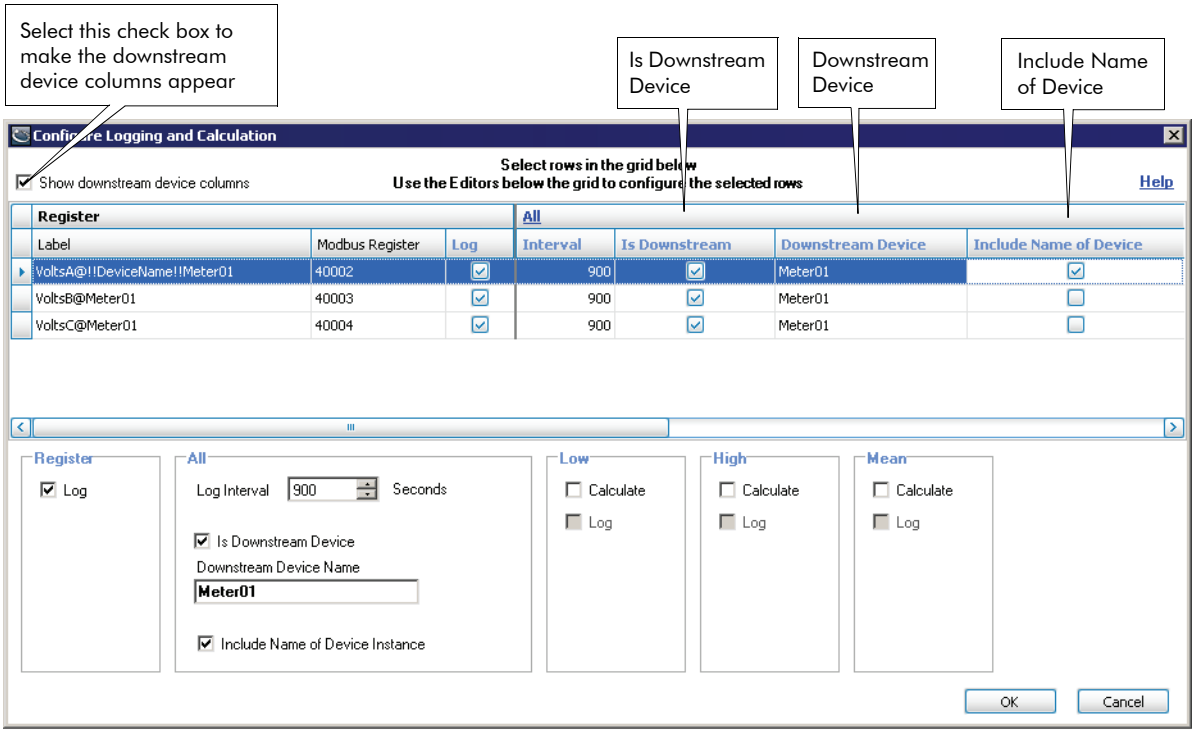
Stale data settings are global (they apply to all registers).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Configuring Downstream Device Functionality

You must select the **Show downstream device columns** check box before you can edit downstream device functionality.

The screen appears as follows:



Is Downstream Device: Select this to indicate the register belongs to a downstream device.

Downstream Device Name: Enter the name of the downstream device in this field. The register label is appended with this name. For example, if the device name is Meter01, the register label becomes VoltsA@Meter01.

NOTE

Using this option **without** also using the Include Name of Device Instance option causes multiple devices to appear as a single device in your energy management system. Do not use this option on its own unless only a single instance of this device is present in your system.

Include Name of Device Instance: Select this to append the actual device instance name to the register label. The placeholder !!DeviceName!! is then added to the label — the name of the actual device instance gets inserted when it is created in Management Console.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

For example, if the device instance is named Device01:

VoltsA@**!!DeviceName!!**Meter01

is replaced with

VoltsA@**Device01**Meter01

This allows easy creation of unique names within ION Enterprise, as well as enabling each device instance to appear in ION Enterprise as multiple virtual devices.

For more information on downstream devices and naming conventions, see "Downstream Device Assistant" on page 313.

Saving and Exiting

To exit the Configure Logging and Calculation screen:

- Click **OK** to save your settings.
- Click **Cancel** to exit without saving.

You are returned to the main Modbus Device Importer console screen.

1. Click **File > Save** to save the template files.
2. Click **Tools > Update Device Type** to send the template file changes to the ION_Network database.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
10

ION Alert Monitor

The ION Alert Monitor receives and processes alarm notifications coming from modem-connected meters on remote power monitoring locations.

In This Section

- "ION Alert Monitor" on page 308
- "How It Works" on page 308
- "Setting Up the ION Alert Monitor" on page 309
- "Starting the ION Alert Monitor" on page 312

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

ION Alert Monitor

ION Alert Monitor is a Windows service ("ION Alert Monitor") that replaced the "Alarm Server" program that was available in ION Enterprise 5.5 and earlier (the legacy alarmsrv.exe program is still functional and available in the ...\system\bin folder).

Alert Monitor resides on the ION Enterprise workstation, where it receives and processes incoming alarms from a remote ION meter's Alert module.

With the implementation of the ION Alert Monitor, alarm notification is improved and simplified:

- Since Alert Monitor runs as a Windows service, a user is no longer required to log in to ION Enterprise in order to start monitoring the system for alarm conditions.
- Alert Monitor can handle incoming calls from multiple communications ports.
- When alarms are received, Alert Monitor uses the ION Connection Management Service to establish a modem connection, rather than using the legacy command line executable "conman.exe".
- ION Connection Management Service allows you to set up specific modem connection request properties, such as Minimum/Maximum Connection Time, Disconnect on Caught-up, etc. These properties are set up in the Alert Monitor's configuration file — see "Setting Up the ION Alert Monitor" on page 309.

NOTE

Alert Monitor does not support TAPI modem drivers for Windows (WinModems).

How It Works

The ION Alert Monitor responds to alarm messages originating from the Alert module in an ION meter. For example, an alarm message is initiated as a result of a power quality event:

1. An alarm condition prompts the ION module (e.g., Setpoint module) to send a pulse signal to the *Trigger* input of the ION meter's Alert module. Refer to the description of the Alert Module in the *ION Reference* for more information.
2. The Alert module initiates modem communication, and calls the phone number specified in the Alert module's *Destination* setup register.
3. The ION Enterprise workstation answers the modem call from the ION meter and completes the communication connection. The meter then sends the following information to ION Enterprise: a timestamp indicating when the alarm condition occurred, the node name, and the message (i.e., contents of the Alert module's *Message* setup register).
4. Alert Monitor receives the alarm data and places it in the queue for processing. When the alarm is processed, the commands specified in the COM port configuration settings are executed. At the same time, a connection request is sent to the node specified in the alarm data.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

5. The new connection request is received and placed in the queue. If other connection requests to the same site already exist, the new request is merged with the others.
6. ION Connection Management Service establishes a connection to the meter that originated the alarm, then Log Inserter downloads all outstanding event and data logs.

NOTE

ION Connection Management Service uses a modem (from the modem pool) to establish connection to the remote site.

7. ION Connection Management Service disconnects after the ION Log Inserter Service has finished downloading all outstanding logs. When this has been completed, the status of the site is considered "Caught-up".

Setting Up the ION Alert Monitor

NOTE

This section is intended for advanced users. Contact Technical Support if you need assistance.

The configuration settings for Alert Monitor are stored in a config file that follows the file naming convention "{MachineName}.AlertMonitor.config". An example config file with this name is provided in the ...\ION Enterprise\config\AlertMonitor folder. An XML schema file named "AlertMonitor-Schema.xml" is also provided in the same folder, for your reference. You can use this schema to validate the config file using available XML validation tools.

Use a text editor or XML authoring tool to create and edit the configuration file. Remember to rename the config file to match the machine name (e.g., if the primary server is named "ComputerOne", rename the config file to "ComputerOne.AlertMonitor.config").

Configuration File Components

Channels define the communication port and modem that the Alert Monitor uses, while **Actions** define the commands to be carried out in response to an alarm.

A Channel contains the modem definition and configuration settings for the port.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

The following table lists the attributes you can assign for a Channel:

Channel attribute	Description
Name	Name of the communications port the modem is connected to. The default value is COM1.
ModemType	The type of modem. The value entered here must exactly match the displayed value under "Modem Type" property in the "Dial Out Modem Options" dialog.
BaudRate	The modem's baud rate. The default value is 9600.
AlertMonitorNodeName	The node name, as it appears in the system log messages. The text specified here defines the value for the %a command parameter (described below). The default value is AlertMonitor.[ComputerName]
NoLog	This controls whether all alarms are logged to the ION Enterprise system log. The default value is "YES" (log all alarms). A value of "NO" disables all alarm logging.
NumTries	This specifies how many times a connection attempt should be retried if there are communication errors.

TIP

Open the example file "{MachineName}.AlertMonitor.config" in a text editor program and refer to it when reading this section to see the proper usage of the elements and attributes in the ION Alert Monitor configuration file.

Actions are grouped inside **ActionSet** elements, which contain connection requests and/or commands to execute when alarms are received. Specify "ConnectionRequest" to set up an ActionSet to send a connection request; specify "Command" to set up an ActionSet to execute an operating system command when the alert is received. You can specify attributes for ActionSets:

- If the Channel attribute is used in the ActionSet (for example, <ActionSet Channel="COM1">), then the actions (commands) listed in the ActionSet are executed for all alarms coming through the communications port and modem specified for that Channel (i.e. ,"COM1").
- If the Location attribute is used in the ActionSet, then the actions (commands) listed in the ActionSet are executed for all alarms originating from the specified Location (regardless of Channel).
- If no attribute is specified, then the actions (commands) listed in the ActionSet are executed for all alarms originating from any communication port or location.

If there are two ActionSets (one specifying a Channel attribute, the other specifying Location attribute), then the one that specifies the Location attribute takes priority.

NOTE

The value of the "Location" attribute is specified in the *Location* setup register of the Alert module for the meter that is sending the alert. For details, refer to Alert Module description in the *ION Reference*.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Commands (i.e., command lines that run separate applications such as "net send") contained in the ActionSet can include parameters that return data values, as described in the following table:

Command Parameter	Description
%U	Universal time: seconds since January 1, 1970
%u	Universal time: YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.FFF
%T	Local time: seconds since January 1, 1970
%t	Local time: YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS.FFF
%n	Node name (e.g., device name)
%g	Gate name (e.g., site name)
%p	Priority name
%P	Priority number
%m	Alarm message without delimiters
%M	Alarm message with " " delimiters
%a	The value of the AlertMonitorNodeName attribute. If this attribute is not used, the default value is "AlertMonitor.[ComputerName]".

The "ConnectionRequest" element contained in the ActionSet has attributes that you can define, as described in the following table:

ConnectionRequest Attribute	Description
MaxConnectTimeSeconds	Maximum time (in seconds) a connection to the site is maintained. The default value is 300 seconds.
MinConnectTimeSeconds	Minimum time (in seconds) a connection to the site is maintained. The default value is 60 seconds.
RequestLifetimeHours	Defines how many hours a connection request remains valid before it is discarded (even if attempts to connect to the site fail). The default value is 0.
RequestPriority	Priority of the connection request, which ranges from 0 to 2000. The highest priority is 2000. The default value is 1999.
DisconnectOnCaughtUp	This specifies to automatically disconnect from the site after Log Inserter has finished downloading all outstanding logs, including event and data logs. The default value is "No".
Device	This explicitly defines which specific device to connect to in the site. This attribute overrides data contained in the alarm message.
Site	This explicitly defines which site to connect to. This attribute overrides data contained in the alarm message.

Multi-Station Setup

It is possible to run the ION Alert Monitor on more than one machine in the ION Enterprise system. However, the configuration files must be stored in the primary server, following the convention "ComputerName.AlertMonitor.config".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

For example, the Alert Monitor running on a secondary server named "ComputerTwo" uses the configuration file named "ComputerTwo.AlertMonitor.config" located in the primary server.

Diagnostics

Diagnostic and error messages are logged in the ION Enterprise system log, with the source "Alert Monitor".

Starting the ION Alert Monitor

By default, the ION Alert Monitor is stopped, and set to "Manual" startup type. To automatically start Alert Monitor on Windows startup, change the startup properties of this Windows service to "Automatic", then start the service. Refer to your Windows documentation for details.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Chapter
11

Downstream Device Assistant

Downstream Device Assistant lets you manage downstream devices. With this tool, you can rename downstream sources, change which measurement is associated with specific data from a source, and apply these changes to previously recorded data in ION_Data (historical database). You can also display and manage all the physical sources (devices) in your network.

Downstream Device Assistant is an advanced application and should only be used by users with advanced technical skills and a clear understanding of how data is interpreted and stored in the ION Enterprise databases.

In This Section

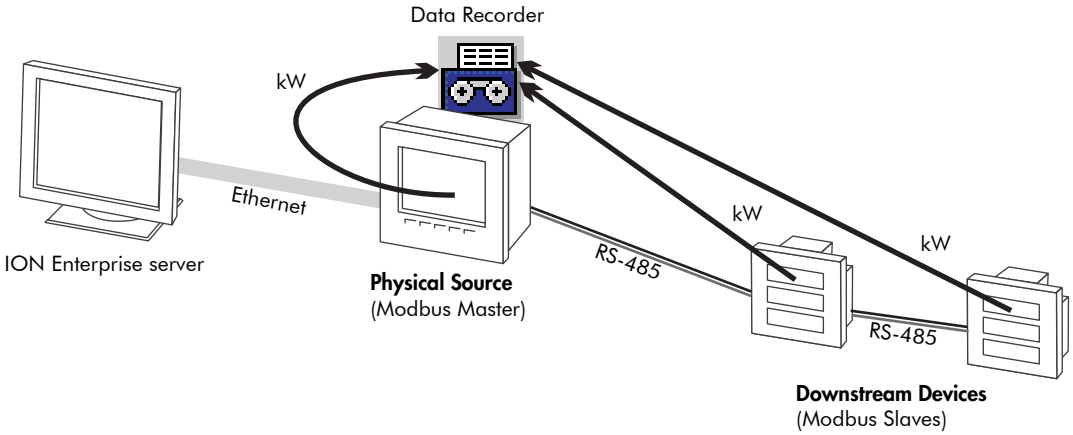
- "Detecting Downstream Devices" on page 314
- "Downstream Device Assistant Basics" on page 315
- "Basic View versus Advanced View" on page 315
- "Columns Descriptions" on page 316
- "Displaying Physical Sources" on page 318
- "Downstream Device Assistant Options" on page 318
- "Downstream Device Assistant Functions" on page 321
- "Renaming the Assigned Source" on page 321
- "Changing the Measurement Mapping" on page 322
- "Adding a New Downstream Device Mapping" on page 322
- "Updating the Historical Data at a Later Time" on page 323
- "Downstream Device Assistant Commands" on page 324

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Detecting Downstream Devices

A **downstream device** is one whose data is logged by a remote data recorder, for example:

- A Modbus slave device whose output registers are logged by a device with Modbus Mastering capability (see illustration below).
- A Modbus device whose outputs are logged by the Virtual Processor.
- Any of various multiple sources in which the same measurement is being logged on a single device, e.g., an RTU that is collecting kWh pulses from multiple sources or a single branch circuit monitor that is collecting current readings on multiple circuits.



ION Enterprise automatically detects downstream devices. The Log Inserter component does this by looking for devices (called "**physical sources**") that record or host data coming from various downstream devices (for example, an ION meter that utilizes a Modbus Import module to pass through data originating from a "downstream" Modbus device).

Log Inserter resolves the data from each of these downstream devices to the appropriate **measurement** (for example, the label "Vll ab" resolves to the measurement "Voltage Phases AB"). For data that cannot be resolved, Log Inserter creates measurements whose names are based on the ION register labels.

Log Inserter uses a logical naming scheme to assign names to the downstream devices. For example, "Modbus.34" is the name assigned to the downstream Modbus device with a slave address "34".

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Downstream Device Assistant Basics

Use Downstream Device Assistant to edit the names assigned to downstream devices or to assign the correct measurement label for a register that has an incorrect measurement mapping.

IMPORTANT: Before using the Downstream Device Assistant, make sure you save a copy of the ION_Network and ION_Data databases, in case you need to revert to the original configuration of these databases.

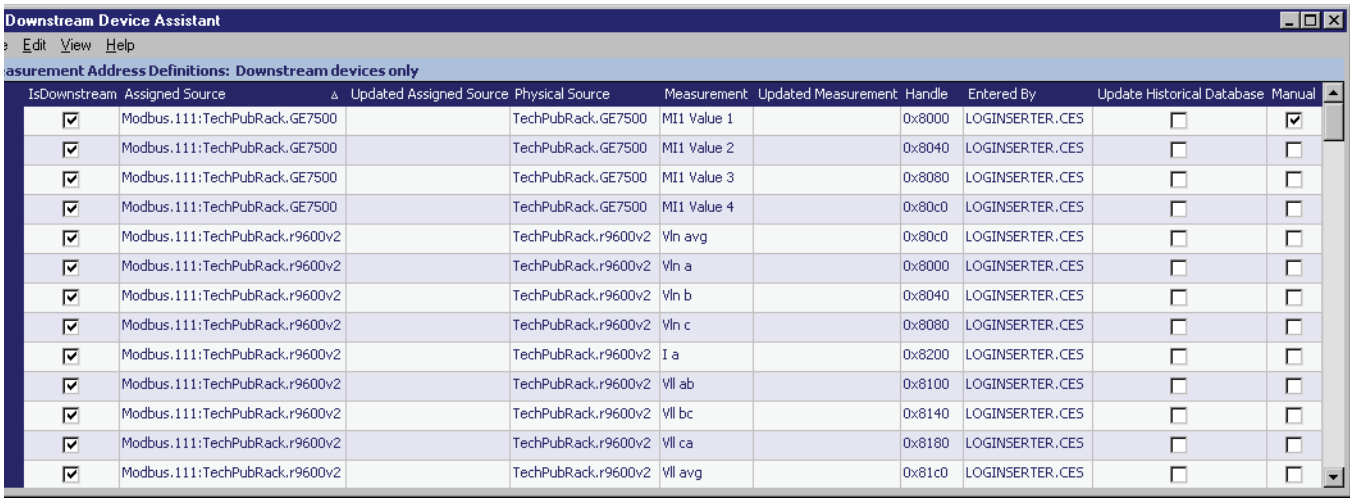
Starting the Downstream Device Assistant

1. Run the program named "DownstreamDevices.DownstreamAssistant.exe" in the ...\ION Enterprise\system\bin folder.
2. Log in using your ION Enterprise credentials.

   A message displays to remind you to back up your ION_Network and ION_Data databases. Click **OK** to continue.
3. Downstream Device Assistant opens in Basic view or Advanced view, depending on the last view it was in before it was closed. The first time Downstream Device Assistant is started, it opens in Basic view.

Basic View versus Advanced View

The view determines what columns are available as well as whether an action is global (applied to all rows containing a parameter) or specific to a row.



IsDownstream	Assigned Source	Updated Assigned Source	Physical Source	Measurement	Updated Measurement	Handle	Entered By	Update Historical Database	Manual
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.GE7500		TechPubRack.GE7500	MI1 Value 1		0x8000	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☑
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.GE7500		TechPubRack.GE7500	MI1 Value 2		0x8040	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.GE7500		TechPubRack.GE7500	MI1 Value 3		0x8080	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.GE7500		TechPubRack.GE7500	MI1 Value 4		0x80c0	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vln avg		0x80c0	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vln a		0x8000	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vln b		0x8040	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vln c		0x8080	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	I a		0x8200	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vll ab		0x8100	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vll bc		0x8140	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vll ca		0x8180	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐
☑	Modbus.111:TechPubRack.r9600v2		TechPubRack.r9600v2	Vll avg		0x81c0	LOGINSERTER.CES	☐	☐

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Columns Descriptions

Columns in Both Basic and Advanced View	
Column Name	**Description**
IsDownstream[1]	The **IsDownstream** column identifies which devices in the **Assigned Source** column are downstream devices. If **IsDownstream** is selected, it means that the device identified in the **Assigned Source** column is downstream to a physical device, whose name is indicated in the **Physical Source** column. If **IsDownstream** is cleared, this indicates that the device is a physical source. Note also that a physical source has the same **Assigned Source** name and **Physical Source** name, by default.
Assigned Source	This is the default name that Log Inserter assigned to a downstream or physical device. For example, "Modbus.109:MainFeed.PM7650" is the default name assigned for the downstream Modbus device with unit ID "109", whose measurements are being logged to a data recorder on a Modbus Master device named "PM7650" that is part of the "MainFeed" site (group).
Updated Assigned Source	This text field allows you change the current name under **Assigned Source**. In Basic view, all rows that contain the same **Assigned Source** name are automatically updated to the new name when you enter it in the **Updated Assigned Source** column. In Advanced view, you can select one or more rows and rename the source using the **Updated Assigned Source** column, while leaving the other rows unchanged. See "Renaming the Assigned Source" on page 321 for more details.
Physical Source[2]	This identifies the name of the physical device (e.g., a Modbus Master device or the Virtual Processor) that is performing the data logging for a downstream device.
Measurement	This column displays either the ION label (e.g., "Vln avg") or the descriptive name of the measurement (e.g., "Average Voltage Line-to-Neutral"), depending on the setting in the Options dialog box; see "Downstream Device Assistant Options" on page 318.
Additional Columns in Advanced View Only	
Updated Measurement	This lets you redefine what is currently assigned in the Measurement column. Click the cell to display the list of measurements to choose from. Depending on the setting in the Options dialog box, you can select from a list containing only the most common measurement definitions or from a complete list of all available measurements; see "Downstream Device Assistant Options" on page 318.
Handle	This column displays a measurement's register handle either in hexadecimal format or decimal format, depending on the setting in the Options dialog box; see "Downstream Device Assistant Options" on page 318.
Entered By	This identifies which user made a change to the source-measurement definition.
Update Historical Database	The **Update Historical Database** check box is automatically selected after entering changes in the **Updated Assigned Source** or **Updated Measurement** cell. This means that all historical database entries that contain the old **Assigned Source** name or **Measurement** will be updated with the new name or measurement. If you want to leave the existing data in the database unchanged, clear the **Update Historical Database** check box before saving the changes.
Manual (see Caution below)	By default, Log Inserter automatically associates the proper measurement to the appropriate piece of data in the data log. Normally, the **Manual** check box should remain cleared. However, if you want to specifically change the measurement or register handle associated with a particular address definition, select the **Manual** check box for that measurement. This manually overrides Log Inserter so that it uses this new address mapping from now on (i.e., Log Inserter does not attempt to resolve that address ever again).

[1] Do not change the value of "IsDownstream" when making changes to source/measurement definitions, as it is automatically set by the Downstream Device Assistant.

[2] Do not use the Physical Source column to modify the existing name of a valid physical device, as Log Inserter uses this name to perform proper data logging.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

It is **not** recommended that you select the Manual check box. This reserves the ION register for which Manual is checked for the selected measurement. This mapping remains in place even if the device is reconfigured such that this register is used in an entirely different context. This may cause unexpected problems in the ION_Data database. It should be used only if you are certain that the configuration you have chosen is permanent.

Basic View

To switch to Basic view, click **View > Options**. In the Advanced section of the **Options** dialog box, clear the **enable advanced features** check box. Click **OK**.

In Basic view, when you enter a new name in the **Updated Assigned Source** column, all rows that contain the same **Assigned Source** name are automatically filled in with the new name. Existing data in the historical database (ION_Data) is also automatically updated to reflect the change.

Advanced View

To switch to Advanced view, click **View** > **Options**. In the Advanced section of the **Options** dialog box, select the **enable advanced features** check box. Click **OK**.

In addition to the columns displayed in Basic view, Advanced view displays all the other columns for editing individual source-measurement definitions (i.e., Updated Measurement, Handle, Entered By, Update Historical Database, and Manual). In Advanced view, you can:

- Select and make changes to a specific row without affecting the other rows. For example, you may want to change the source name for one particular measurement while leaving the original source name unchanged for all the other measurements.
- Select a different measurement for one that is incorrectly mapped to a particular register handle.
- Select whether or not to update historical data for a changed source name or measurement definition, by selecting or clearing the **Update Historical Data** check box, respectively. Changing a name or definition automatically selects this check box.
- Select whether or not to allow Log Inserter to resolve the register handle to a particular source measurement, by clearing or selecting the **Manual** check box, respectively. The default setting is cleared (i.e., Log Inserter automatically resolves the register handle to the source measurement definition). If you want to force the change so Log Inserter does not resolve the handle to the new measurement, select the **Manual** check box.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Displaying Physical Sources

The default view for Downstream Device Assistant displays only the downstream devices. To display the physical sources as well:

1. Click **View > Select Physical Sources**.
2. Select the check box beside the physical sources you want to display. Select the **Select/Clear All** check box to select all physical sources or clear it to select none. Click **OK**.

NOTE

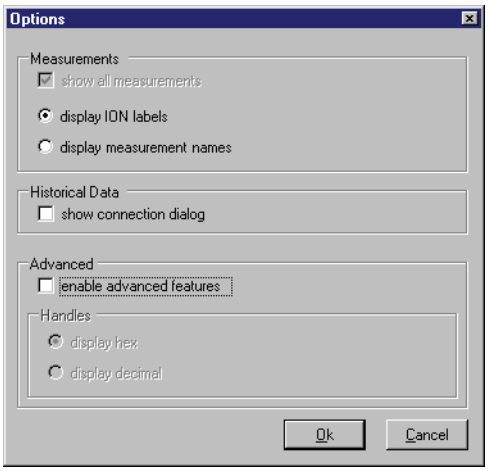
The Physical Sources are not displayed if you restart Downstream Device Assistant. By default, only downstream devices are displayed when Downstream Device Assistant is started.

Sorting Data

Click a column heading to sort the row entries in ascending or descending alphanumeric order, according to that column.

Downstream Device Assistant Options

Click **View > Options** to display the **Options** dialog box:



Certain options such as “show all measurements” and the “Handles” display options are disabled in Basic View. To enable them, switch to Advanced View first (see “Advanced” on page 320).

 © 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Measurements

This section allows you to select whether to display the default ION label (e.g., "Vln avg") in the Measurement column or to display the full descriptive name of the measurement (e.g., "Average Voltage Line-to-Neutral").

In Advanced view only, you can also select whether to display all available measurements or only the most common measurements in the list when picking a measurement in the Updated Measurement column.

Displaying ION labels versus measurement names

To change the setting:

1. Click **View > Options**.
2. In the Measurements section, select **display ION labels** to display the ION label or **display measurement names** to display the full name of the measurement.

NOTE

In some situations, if "display ION labels" is selected, the displayed label may not match the label on your meter (for example, if a custom label was used). Instead, it displays the known default label for that particular measurement.

Updated Measurement Column display

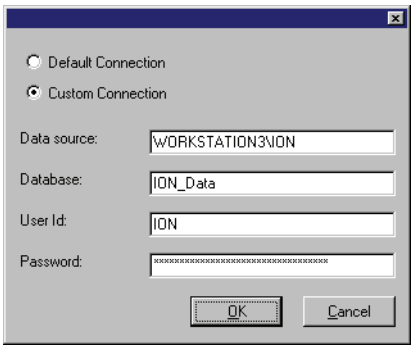
To change the setting:

1. Click **View > Options** and ensure Advanced is selected.
2. In the Measurements section, select the **show all measurements** check box to display all available measurements in the Updated Measurement column. To display only the most common measurements, clear the **show all measurements** check box.

Historical Data

If the **show connection dialog** check box is cleared, the ION_Data database is automatically set as the "Default Connection" (for historical data).

If you want to select a different database, select the **show connection dialog** box. With this setting enabled, the database connection dialog box is displayed every time you save your changes. When the dialog box displays, select **Custom Connection** and specify your database connection details.



© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Advanced

The **enable advanced features** check box sets the view to Basic View if it is cleared or Advanced View if it is selected.

Handle

Available in Advanced View only, this option specifies whether register handles are displayed as the hexadecimal value (with the "0x" prefix) or as the decimal value.

To change the setting:

1. Click **View > Options** and ensure the Advanced is selected.
2. In the Handles section, select **display hex** to display the register handle in hexadecimal format or **display decimal** to display it in decimal format.

If you want to manually resolve a register handle to a specific measurement, edit the value in the **Handle** cell, then select the **Manual** check box before saving the changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Downstream Device Assistant Functions

This section describes different functions you can perform using the Downstream Device Assistant.

Renaming the Assigned Source

One of the primary reasons for using the Downstream Device Assistant is to change the default name assigned to a downstream device by the Log Inserter. For instance, instead of "Modbus.34", you may want to rename that device to something more meaningful such as "SM_Bldg2_Boiler7".

Renaming an **Assigned Source** typically only applies to downstream devices.

Renaming the Assigned Source for ALL its Measurements

1. Switch to Basic View.
2. Find the source you want to rename. Enter the new name in the **Updated Assigned Source** column. All rows with measurements associated with the renamed source are automatically updated.

NOTE

If you do not want to assign the existing data in the database to the new source name, switch to Advanced View first, then clear the Update Historical Database check box for all appropriate rows.

3. Click **File > Save**.
4. A dialog box prompts you with a summary of the changes. Click **Yes** to continue. or **No** to cancel.
5. When the operation has completed, click **OK**, then **Close**.

Renaming the Assigned Source for one or more Measurements

1. Switch to Advanced View.
2. Select the row(s) you want to rename. To select a row, click the area just to the left of the first column. The row is highlighted to indicate that it is selected.
3. Click **Edit > Rename Source**.
4. In the **Source Rename** box, type the new name for the downstream source. Click **OK**.

NOTE

By default, the Update Historical Database check box is selected for all affected rows — this applies the change to existing data in the database. To make the change only to data going into the database from this point forward, clear the Update Historical Database check box for the affected rows.

5. Click **File > Save**. A dialog box prompts you with a summary of the changes.
6. Click **Yes** to continue or **No** to cancel.
7. When the operation has completed, click **OK**, then click **Close**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Cancelling Changes

1. To undo all unsaved changes:
   - Click **Edit > Reset**, or
   - Click **View > Refresh**.
2. Click **Yes** to confirm.

Changing the Measurement Mapping

Log Inserter automatically associates logged data with a measurement by searching for a mapping between the label and the measurement. However, in cases where no mapping exists, Log Inserter creates a "measurement" that is based on the register label. To manually change this measurement mapping:

1. Switch to Advanced View.
2. Click the **Updated Measurement** cell that you want to change, then select the new measurement you want to map from the list.
3. Select the **Manual** check box.
4. By default, the **Update Historical Database** check box is selected — this applies the change to existing data in the database (if, for example, the source and measurement mapping you are adding already exists). To make the change only to data going into the database from this point forward, clear the **Update Historical Database** check box.
5. Click **File > Save**. A dialog box prompts you with the changes. Click **Yes**.
6. If prompted, select which database to update. Click **OK**.

Adding a New Downstream Device Mapping

To add a new address mapping that associates the source and measurement to a specific logged quantity in the database:

1. Scroll down to the end of the table and click the last row (the one with the asterisk beside it).
2. Fill in the **Updated Assigned Source** and **Physical Source** columns. If the source is a physical device (i.e., not downstream), the same name must be entered exactly in both columns.
3. Click the **Updated Measurement** cell, then select the measurement from the list.
4. In the **Handle** cell, type the register handle for this measurement.
5. By default, the **Update Historical Database** check box is selected — this applies the change to existing data in the database (if, for example the source and measurement mapping you are adding already exists). To make the change only to data going into the database from this point forward, clear the **Update Historical Database** check box.
6. Click **File > Save**. A dialog box prompts you with the changes. Click **Yes**.
7. If prompted, select which database to update. Click **OK**.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Updating the Historical Data at a Later Time

When you save your changes using the Downstream Device Assistant, a record of changes to the source-measurement definitions is saved in the folder:

...\ION Enterprise\config\Diagnostic\Downstream Device Assistant\

with the following filename:

"Downstream Device DefinitionsYYYY-MM-DD_hh.mm.ss.csv"

where "YYYY-MM-DD_hh.mm.ss" means current YEAR-MONTH-DAY_hour.minute.second.

If you cleared the **Update Historical Database** check box when you saved your changes the first time, you can update the existing data in the database at a later time, through the use of this csv file.

How to use the Downstream Device Assistant .csv file

To update the existing data in the database with the source-measurement changes contained in the csv file:

1. Click **Edit > Historical Data**. The Update Historical Data window appears.
2. Click **File > Import CSV**.
3. Downstream Device Assistant opens the folder that contains the csv files. Select the Downstream Device Definitions file you want to use, then click **Open**.
4. Click **File > Update Historical Data**.
5. The Historical Data Update prompt displays how many source-measurement pairs will be updated. Click **Yes**.
6. Click **Yes** at the Historical Data Update prompt.
7. After the operation has completed, click **OK**, then **Close**.

You can update only one ION database at a time. To select a different database, first make sure the **show connection dialog** check box is selected under **View > Options**. You can then use the database connection dialog box to specify which database you want to update.

NOTE

If you update address definitions that affect multiple historical databases, only the first historical database you select is automatically updated. To update the remaining historical databases, you must import the address definitions to each one, using Select **Edit > Update Historical Data**.

Activity Log

All saved changes in the Downstream Device Assistant are stored in a log file named "Downstream Device Historical UpdatesYYYY-MM-DD_hh.mm.ss.txt", that contains a description of the activities carried out when Downstream Device Assistant was updating the source-measurement definitions.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Downstream Device Assistant Commands

The following summarizes the commands available in the Downstream Device Assistant:

- **File > Save**: Saves your changes. A copy of the changes are saved for future reference, in a comma-separated value (.csv) data file in the ...\config\Diagnostic\Downstream Device Assistant\ folder.
- **File > Exit**: Closes the Downstream Device Assistant.
- **Edit > Reset**: Clears all modifications made since the last save.
- **Edit > Delete**: Deletes the selected rows.
- **Edit > Rename Source**: Lets you change the name of an **Assigned Source**. See "Renaming the Assigned Source" on page 321.
- **Edit > Update Historical Data**: Opens the "Update Historical Data" window that allows you to open a previously-saved source-measurement definition data file (with a .csv file extension), for the purpose of updating existing data in the database. You can also manually add, edit or delete data entries. See "Updating the Historical Data at a Later Time" on page 323.
- **View > Refresh**: Loads the current downstream definitions from the database. Functionally the same as **Edit > Reset**, as this command clears all modifications made since the last save.
- **View > Options**: Displays the **Options** dialog box where you can change the settings that control what level of detail is displayed for the source-measurement definitions.
- **View > Select Physical Sources**: Displays the **Select Physical Sources** dialog box where you can select which physical devices you want displayed in the Downstream Device Assistant.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Appendix A: Reporter

Reporter is the legacy program from ION Enterprise version 5.6 and earlier that defined, generated and managed comprehensive reports, based on information contained in your database. Reporter processes selected data and generates a finished report in Microsoft Excel format.

NOTE

Microsoft Excel 2003 must be installed on your machine for Reporter to function. Microsoft Outlook 2003 must be installed if you require reports to be emailed.

For information on using Web Reporter (the replacement for Reporter), see "Web Reporter" on page 171.

In This Section

- "Introduction" on page 326
- "Creating a Report" on page 327
- "Generating a Report" on page 330
- "Modifying the Finished Report" on page 330
- "Types of Default Reports" on page 331
- "Creating a Report Without a Template" on page 335
- "Automatic Report Generation" on page 336
- "Using Reporter on Secondary Server or Client" on page 337
- "Troubleshooting" on page 338

Introduction

Reporter features a wizard that guides you through the report creation process. This involves selecting a report template and database, which then allows the wizard to display those sources in the ION Enterprise network that contain the type of data required to create the report.

When the report is generated, Reporter retrieves data from the ION_Data database, uses the report template to process the data, then creates a finished report in Microsoft Excel format.

Report templates are preconfigured for the most common reporting needs. The following report templates are supplied with ION Enterprise 5.6:

- "Energy and Demand"
- "Load Profile"
- "Power Quality"
- "EN50160_General"
- "EN50160_Summary"
- "EN50160_Mains_Signal"
- "IEC61000-4-30_10Min"
- "IEC61000-4-30_2Hr"
- "IEC61000-4-30_3Sec"

Starting Reporter

To start Reporter, navigate to the ../ION Enterprise/system/bin/ folder and double-click on RepGen.exe.

TIP

If you plan to use this program frequently, create a shortcut to the .exe file on your desktop.

Reporter opens with either "Manage Reports" or "Generate Reports" pre-selected, depending on whether or not any reports have already been created. You cannot generate reports until you have created at least one.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Creating a Report

1. Start Reporter.
2. Select **Manage Reports**, then click **New**. This starts the new report wizard.

Step 1: Select Template

1. Type the name of the report in the **Report Name** box.
2. Select the template you want to use in the **Report Template** list.
3. Click **Next**.

Step 2: Select Database and Sources

1. Specify your database (ION_Data is selected by default). To connect to a different database (e.g., an archived database), select it from the **Database** dropdown list, or click **More**.
2. Select the box beside each source name ("device") that you want to include in your report. Select the **Show Details** box if you want to see additional information for the devices.

NOTE

"Show Details" is only available when "Show only sources applicable to the template" is selected.

3. If the report template you are using requires a TOU schedule (such as "Energy and Demand"), the TOU Schedule section appears on the dialog box. Select a TOU schedule from the list or click **Manage** to create a new one.

TOU Schedules

A typical TOU schedule has On Peak, Off Peak and Shoulder Peak periods. The Energy and Demand report template requires a TOU schedule. If you do not want to use a TOU schedule, simply create a TOU schedule with a single Tariff period.

To create a new TOU schedule:

1. Click **Manage** in the TOU Schedule section of Step 2. The **TOU Schedules** dialog box appears.
2. Click **New**. The **TOU Schedule Properties** dialog box appears with a blank TOU schedule with a single tariff.

   Use the lefthand pane to select the item you want to edit, then use the righthand pane to enter, modify or set the values.

NOTE

If an existing (configured) TOU Schedule appears in the list, you can use it as a template to create a new one with similar On Peak/Off Peak periods. See "Copying an Existing TOU Schedule" on page 328.

3. Select "New TOU Schedule", then use the **TOU Schedule Name** box to rename it (for example, "2007 TOU Schedule").

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

4. Select "Tariff 1" to display the Tariff Details on the right pane, then use the **Name** box to type a name for it (for example, "Off Peak").

   Use the rate boxes (**$/kWh**, **$/kW,** etc.) to enter the tariff rates.

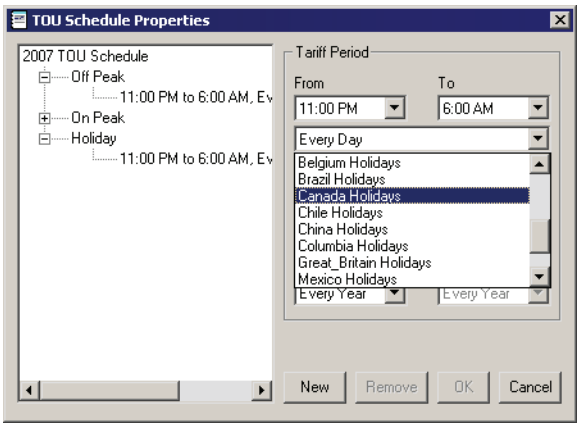
5. On the left pane, click the "+" beside the tariff to expand it. Select the text underneath it ("All Day, Every Day...") to display the Tariff Period fields. Use the **From** and **To** boxes to set a time range and a date range for the tariff period.

   To create another tariff period, select the tariff period you just configured, then click **New** to add a new tariff. Set the time range and date range for this new tariff period.

6. To create a new tariff (for example, "Off Peak"), select the tariff name, then click **New**. Repeat the above steps to rename the tariff, set the rates, and set the tariff periods.

Holidays

1. Select one of the "Off Peak" periods, then click **New**.
2. Rename the tariff (for example, Holidays) and click on the day and times underneath to configure the tariff period.



3. Select the appropriate country holidays from the list.
4. Add or remove individual holidays as required.

NOTE

Make sure there are no gaps or overlapping date or time ranges in the TOU Schedule.

Copying an Existing TOU Schedule

To create a TOU Schedule using an existing one as a template, select it then click **Copy**. Rename the copy and modify its properties as needed.

Step 3: Set Up the Report Options

The report options are organized in the different tabs of the window, named as follows: Date Range, Distribution, Validation, Display, and Notes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Date Range

Select the date range you want to use for your report:

- **Ask for Date Range when report is generated** prompts you to supply a date range when the report is run (interactive mode).
- **Pre-specified Date Range** lets you select a specific period. For example, select **Last Month** to set Reporter to run the report using data from the previous month. Select **Fixed Range** to specify a start and end time/date. Select **Custom Relative Range** to specify a date range relative to the current time and date.

NOTE

In applications where a report is generated based on a power quality system event or similar setpoint condition, specifying "Custom Relative Range" can include data that shows how the system was behaving before the event occurred.

Distribution

Select any or all of the **Distribution** options (you must select at least one):

- **Show report on screen** is selected by default; this displays the report on screen each time the report is generated. Clear this box to disable displaying of the report.
- **Save Excel report to folder** stores the report in the folder you specify using the **Browse** button.
- **Save HTML report to folder** saves an HTML version of the report in the folder you specify using the **Browse** button.

  Note that there are certain elements and behaviors in the HTML report that may appear differently from the original Excel report. This is due to the HTML conversion process in Excel. Search the Microsoft support knowledgebase for more information.
- **Send report to printer** prints the report each time it is generated. Select the printer you want to use from the list.
- **Email report to recipients** sends the report (in Excel format) to an email address, using Microsoft Outlook 2003. Click **New** to add a new email address or **Delete** to remove an existing one from the list.

Validation

Select **Report duplicate and missing entries** to enable error checking.

- Use the **Hours**, **Minutes** and **Seconds** boxes to specify an expected time interval between each record.
- Select **Remove duplicate records** to delete redundant records from the report.
- If you want Reporter to insert records automatically for ones that are missing, select **Replace missing records with:** then select **Values from the previous row, An empty row**, or **A zero value**.

Display

Select one of the options to control how Reporter handles raw data sheets in the report (**Show**, **Hide**, or **Delete**).

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

NOTE

The "Delete" (raw data sheets) option is useful when you want to reduce the report's file size (this particularly applies to those reports that contain a significantly large amount of data).

The **Display Options** grid lists other options you can turn on or off. Double-click the appropriate row to turn the option on or off.

Notes

Use the **Notes** tab to enter details about your report template, such as revision history. To insert a line break, hold down CTRL and press ENTER.

Previewing the Report

To see what the report will look like, without saving or distributing it, click **Preview**. Click **Back To Report Generator** button to return to the main **Reporter** window. Modify the settings, if necessary. Otherwise, click **Finish** to save your report and return to the main Reporter screen.

Generating a Report

1. On the main Reporter screen, select **Generate Reports**.
2. Select the name of the report you want to run. If you want to view its option settings, click **Summary**. Click **OK** to close the summary window.
3. Click **Generate**. A window displays the progress of the report generation.
4. Click **Close** to view the report.

Modifying the Finished Report

This describes how to edit the Microsoft Excel presentation sheet for your report:

1. On the main Reporter window, select the report you want to modify, then click **Preview**.
2. Use the Presentation Sheet to create references to elements in the data sheets that you want to include in the final report. Use Microsoft Excel's data analysis and charting tools to process the information in the data sheets, then add the appropriate references to the presentation sheet.

NOTE

The company name that appears in the report is the "Company" name entered when Microsoft Excel was installed on the computer.

3. Lay out and format the elements as you want them to appear in the report.
4. Save your changes.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Types of Default Reports

This section shows basic characteristics of the Microsoft Excel reports generated from the Reporter templates. The first tab in the workbook is created from the "Presentation sheet" of the report template. You can modify the look and functionality of a report by editing its presentation sheet. See "Modifying the Finished Report" on page 330 for details.

NOTE

The presentation sheet contains references that automatically update the data each time the report is generated. Be careful not to overwrite these references.

Energy and Demand

Use the Energy and Demand template to create a tabular report on energy consumption and peak demand levels over a period of time, categorized by time of use. TOU (Time Of Use) schedules are typically set up to match an energy provider's tariff schedule.

The Energy and Demand template uses quantities from the Energy and Demand log (kWh, kVARh, kVAh, kW Demand, kVAR Demand, kVA Demand) that is available on most ION devices.

TOU Schedule

Reporter requires a TOU schedule when creating a report using the Energy and Demand template. A sample TOU schedule is included — this allows you to define time periods that coincide with time periods in your energy provider's tariff schedule, such as On Peak and Off Peak times. If you do not need to use a TOU schedule, simply create a new TOU schedule with only one time period defined.

The Aggregate Energy & Demand tab contains a summary of the combined energy and demand values. Energy and demand information from different sources are stored in separate tabs in the workbook.

Load Profile

Use the Load Profile template to create a graphical representation of demand or load levels over a period of time. The profile shows peak loads — points on the graph where peak electricity demand is high. A load profile report can be used to analyze the electrical loads at the time of maximum demand. This information creates opportunities for developing strategies to improve energy management.

Similar to the Energy and Demand template, the Load Profile template uses data from the Energy and Demand log (kW Demand, kVAR Demand, kVA Demand), except it does not use a TOU schedule.

The Load tab contains a graphical representation of the power usage of your system over time (total load profile). Load profiles from different sources are stored in separate tabs in the workbook.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

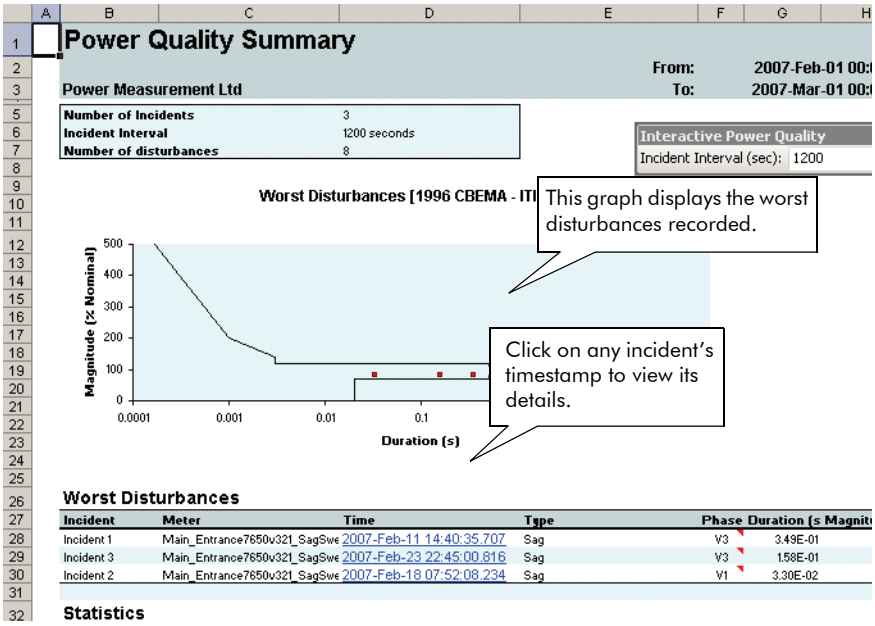
Power Quality

Use the Power Quality template to create a report that summarizes the number and severity of voltage sags, swells and transients over a period of time. The finished report also includes a graphical representation of the disturbances, and an interactive selection of group events.

The Power Quality template uses data from all three Power Quality log files that are found on devices with sag/swell and transient detection capabilities:

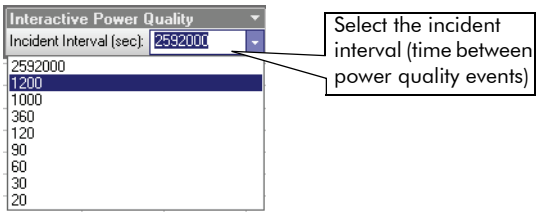
- Sag/Swell Log
- Transient Log
- Waveform Log

Sample Power Quality Report



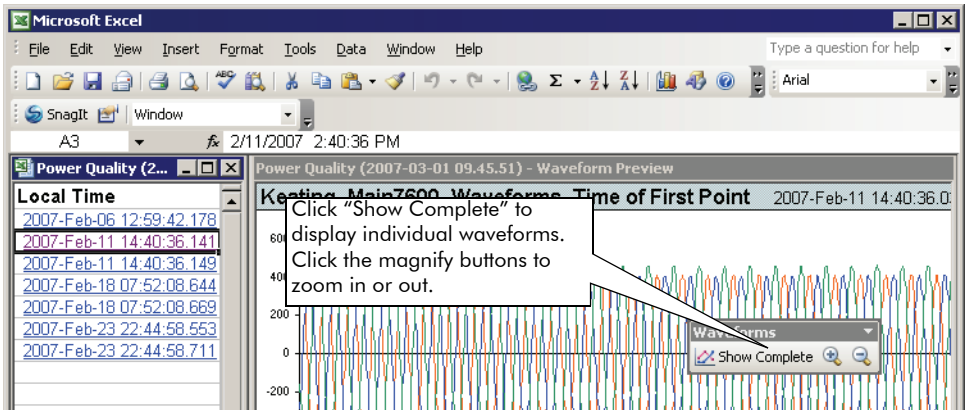
The Power Quality Summary tab displays a chart that identifies the worst line disturbances and a list of incidents linked to their details. An incident is made up of several disturbances.

The Power Quality report shows a system's line fluctuations for the specified date range. Use the Interactive Power Quality toolbar to change the time interval between incidents:



Click the timestamp of the incident in the Waveforms tab to view a graphical representation of the disturbance.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.



EN50160

EN50160 is a set of power quality standards used by energy suppliers and energy consumers in European countries. Three EN50160 templates are available in Reporter:

EN50160_General

Use the EN50160_General template to create a report containing detailed analysis of all EN50160 compliance data logged by a single meter. Data is recorded for each observation period. The worksheets contain percentages of non-compliant EN50160 measurements such as Power Frequency, Supply Voltage Magnitude, and Flicker.

The EN50160_General template uses data from these fourteen EN50160 log files:

- EN50160 Vlt Dp1 to EN50160 Vlt Dp5 (supply voltage dips)
- EN50160 Ovrvlt1 to EN50160 Ovrvlt3 (temporary overvoltages)
- EN50160 Vunbal (supply voltage unbalance)
- EN50160 Hrm Vlt (harmonic voltage)
- EN50160 Ihm Vlt (interharmonic voltage)
- EN50160 Frq/Mg (frequency and magnitude)
- EN50160 Flicker (flicker)
- EN50160 Intrp (short- and long-term interruptions)

EN50160_Summary

Use the EN50160_Summary template to create a report containing comprehensive analysis of all EN50160 compliance data logged by multiple meters. The compliance summary is based on the EN50160 limits for each observation period: each default EN50160 measurement indicates a pass or fail on the compliance test with a Y (yes) or N (no) respectively.

The EN50160_Summary template uses data from the same log files as the EN50160_General template.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

An observation sheet is generated for every observation period; however, it is hidden by default. You can access specific observation sheets by unhiding the specific sheet for the generated report in Microsoft Excel (Format > Sheet > Unhide > "observation sheet").

EN50160_Mains_Signal

Use the EN50160_Mains_Signal template to create a report for signal line frequency statistics for a single meter, for each observation period.

The EN50160_Mains_Signal template uses data from the EN50160 MSignal log.

IEC 61000-4-30

IEC 61000-4-30 are power quality standards that define measurement methods for 50 Hz and 60 Hz power quality instruments. Three IEC 61000-4-30 templates are available in Reporter:

IEC61000-4-30_10Min

Use this template to create the IEC 61000-4-30 report based on a 10-minute interval sampling period.

IEC61000-4-30_2Hr

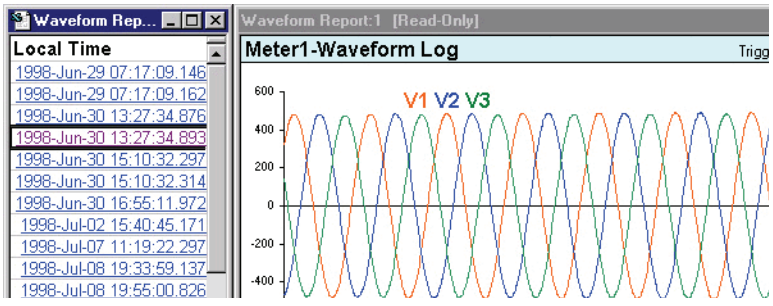
Use this template to create the IEC 61000-4-30 report based on a 2-hour interval sampling period.

IEC61000-4-30_3Sec

Use this template to create the IEC 61000-4-30 report based on a 3-second interval sampling period (i.e., 150 cycles for 50 Hz; 180 cycles for 60 Hz).

Waveforms

To generate a report from logs that contain voltage and current waveform data, select <no template> and set the Log to Waveforms. See "Creating a Report Without a Template" on page 335 for details.



After the report is generated, click the tab named for the waveform query to view.

The left pane contains timestamps that link to the waveform chart on the right pane. Click a timestamp to view the waveform.

To view the waveforms for each current and voltage phase, click **Show Complete** on the **Waveforms** toolbar. Use the magnifying glass icons to zoom in or zoom out.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Custom Templates

Contact Technical Support if you require other specialized report templates.

Creating a Report Without a Template

You can use Reporter to copy raw data from a database and paste it into Microsoft Excel:

1. In the main Reporter window, select **Manage Reports**, then click **New**.
2. Fill in the **Report Name** box, select **<No Template>**, then click **Next**.
3. Click **New** to create a source/log query for the report. Set the **Query Properties**:
   - **Name**: New queries are automatically named in a sequential manner, but you can also rename them as required.
   - **Source:** Select the source of the query (e.g., power meter).
   - **Log:** Choose the data log that you want to copy raw data from.
   - **Database**: ION_Data<SQL> is the default setting. To change the database source, select one from the list, or click **More**.

   If a TOU schedule is required, select **Apply TOU Schedule to database queries**, then select one from the list, or click **Manage** to create one.
4. To add another query, click **New**, then set the query properties as described above.
5. When you have added and configured all your queries, click **Next**.
6. Configure the report options as described in the section, "Step 3: Set Up the Report Options" on page 328.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Automatic Report Generation

You can use the Windows **Scheduled Tasks** utility to generate reports on a set schedule:

1. Click **Start > Settings > Control Panel**. Double-click **Scheduled Tasks**.
2. Double-click **Add Scheduled Task**. Use the wizard to select Reporter from the list of programs.
3. Assign a name for this new scheduled task and specify how often this task should be performed.
4. Set the start time and other relevant data for your schedule. Click **Next**.
5. When prompted, enter your user name and password (and confirm the password). Click **Next**.
6. A summary screen of your schedule appears. Select **Open advanced properties for this task when I click Finish**, then click **Finish**.
7. The Properties screen of your task opens. The **Task** tab displays the command line to run Reporter. Add a space at the end of the command line and append "-r<**ReportName**>" (where "ReportName" is the name of the report you want to schedule for automatic generation -- note that spaces in the report name are not supported):

   ...\system\bin\repgen.exe **-r<ReportName>**

   Reporter also supports multiple report generation. Separate the report names with a comma. For example, if you have reports named "Rep1" and "Rep2", the command line might look like this:

   D:\Schneider Electric\ION Enterprise\system\bin\repgen.exe -rRep1, Rep2
8. Verify your schedule settings in the **Schedule** tab. To create more schedules, select the **Show multiple schedules** check box. Click **New** to create a new schedule.
9. Click **OK**.

NOTE

Check the properties of your report to make sure you have specified a valid Date Range for your report and that the "Show Report on screen" option is cleared.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Using Reporter on Secondary Server or Client

When Database Manager archives ION_Data, it creates a registry key export file that includes the DSN (data source name) it created. The registry file is called **ION_DsnKeys.reg**, and is stored on the primary server in this folder:

...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg\

If you want an ION Enterprise secondary server or client installation to report on the ION Enterprise SQL database using Reporter, import this registry key to the secondary server or client before generating the reports.

Importing the registry key export file

1. Locate the primary server's ION-Ent share (typically \\ComputerName\ION-Ent, where "ComputerName" is the computer name of the Primary Server) on your network and navigate to the ...\ION Enterprise\config\cfg folder.
2. Double-click the file named ION_DsnKeys.reg to import it into your registry.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Troubleshooting

Excel file does not open when you double-click its icon

This might occur when a Microsoft Excel process hangs. To fix this, start Excel and open a file (or create a new one). Click **Tools > Options**, then in the **General** tab, clear **Ignore other applications**. Close and exit Excel.

If this does not work, try rebooting the computer.

© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.

Index

A

add
- connection schedule 39
- Ethernet device 35
- modem 36
- network component 33
- OPC device 35
- serial device 34
- server 33

advanced security (access meters with) 38
alarm
- acknowledge (Vista) 105
- silence (Vista) 106

alarm options 144
alert monitor 308
- configuration file 309
- setup 309

annunciation options 144

C

CBEMA 125
configuring multiple devices 48
connection schedule 39
control object
- action options 143
- display options 141

control object (Vista) 129

D

data
- copy data to another application 101
- filter data 24
- plot 101, 108
- real-time 98
- sort 24
- stale data settings (Vista) 96, 159
- view logged data 100

data log viewer 100
- diagram object 128
- link to data source 147

database 18
- access via 3rd-party application 275
- ION (ION_Data) 18
- network configuration (ION_Network) 18
- system events (ION_SystemLog) 18

database management
- alarm configuration 260
- archive 261, 268
- attach 262
- backup 262, 271
- create new database 264
- defragment 262
- detach 262
- export registry setting 263
- manual 260
- modify login 263
- optimize query time 273
- restore 264
- scheduled 267
- scheduled maintenance 270
- SQL editor 265
- trim 265, 270
- update statistics 266
- upgrade database 266

Designer
- clone a node 237
- ION modules toolbox 209
- node diagram 198
- window configuration 206

Designer.See ION modules, see node diagram 207
device
- Ethernet 32
- serial 32

diagnostics
- communications 68
- server 67

diagram object 93
- caption options 134
- preview pane 133

direct site
- add serial device 34

display
- adjust column width 23
- arrange columns 23
- customize interface 22
- dock (pin) pane 22
- filter data in column 24
- grid tables 23
- group table data by column 24
- hide (unpin) pane 22
- resizing panes 22
- select columns to display 23
- sort data in column 24

downstream device 314
downstream device assistant
- add new device mapping 322
- basic versus advanced view 315
- change measurement mapping 322
- columns 316
- display physical sources 318
- options 318
- rename assigned source 321
- update historical data after changes

323
duplicating a device 45

E

Ethernet device 32
  add 35
Ethernet gateway
  add device 34
event log viewer 100, 102
  diagram object 129
  display 103
  link to data source 147
event watcher 62
  add event watcher 64
  create template 63
exit a component 19

G

global event log viewer 100, 102
  add 104
  display 103
grouping object (Vista) 93, 128
  display options 140
grouping window (Vista) 93
groups (of users)
  add/edit 58

H

harmonics analysis 115
  calculate using more than one cycle 115

I

ION module 207, 281
  configure 224
  core versus standard module 208
  online versus offline module 207
  output register 207
  parent module 227
  persistent module 208
  programmed versus pending 208
  setup register 207
  view as text 213
ION tree 220, 278

L

large system setup 43
log inserter
  fast-link option 229
log into a component 19
log off from a component 19
log view plotter 108
  add data from another application 120
  add data from data log viewer 119
  add events 119
  calculations window 110
  customize 121
  de-index parameters 114
  display curve data in table 111
  graph options 110
  harmonics analysis tab 115
  legend 109
  overlay curves 125
  phasor diagram tab 116
  plot display tab 112
  remove parameters 125
  specify y-offsets 114
  symmetrical components 117
  X-parameter 149

M

management applications 14
Management Console
  customize the display 29
manager 281
Modbus
  add device type 278
  configure advanced device functions 301
  configure advanced functions 290
  default device types 278
  edit register 291
  map file 278
Modbus gateway
  add device 34
modem
  add 36
  dial-out 32
  remote modem setup 74
  WinModem 36
monitoring applications 14

N

navigating
  tree structures 22
network component 31
  add 33
  delete 37
  edit 36
network diagram
  generate 94
node diagram 198
  add module 210
  add text box 215
  configure module 224
  copy module 230
    to framework 231
  create shortcut to module 236
  custom labels 227
  default versus custom labels 204
  delete links between modules 222

display/edit mode 200
find dependent modules 211
icons 201
link modules 217, 220
link modules across nodes 219
linking modules 217
locate existing ION module 210
paste module 232
free paste or lock paste 235
from framework 232
reset module 228
shortcut to module 214
view as text 213
view input information 240
view output register information 239
view setup register information 240
numeric object 98, 128
display options 136
numeric object (Vista)
flags 98, 138

O

OPC device 32
OPC Server 15
OPC site
add device 35

P

phasor diagram 116
power factor, display in Vista 114
PQDIF Exporter 15
programming applications 15

Q

query database, Vista 148
query server 148
querying database
query wizard 150

R

register 281
Reporter 325
reports
100 ms report 175
administration 187
default definitions 175
EN50160 report 175
energy cost report 176
energy period-over-period comparison report 176
energy usage by shift report 176
event log report 176
export 186
generate 180
IEC 61000-4-30 report 176
inputs 180
load profile report 177
power quality report 177
print 185
save 185
share 187
subscription 188
subscription configuration 61, 172
system configuration report 178
tabular report 179
trend report 179
upload reports/report packs 191

S

selecting multiple items 22
serial device 32
add 34
server 31
add server 33
services, Windows 16
site
direct site 31
Ethernet gateway site 31
modem site 31
OPC site 32
SQL Server 18
SQL Server instance 256
start a component 19
status object 99, 128
display options 139
subscription
event watcher 62
Web Reporter 188
symmetrical components 117
system log events 41

T

text box object (Vista) 128
Time of Use (Designer)
advanced configuration 241
time of use (Designer) 241
time of use (Web Reporter) 80

U

upgrade device 71
user diagram 93
add diagram object 128, 129
background color 155
background image 156
communication errors 97
copy/paste diagram objects 129
create new 127
customize 127
customize diagram object 133
default 94
default action for window 158

default node 158
default query server 157
diagram objects, types 128
edit/display mode 92
enable undo option 128
font 155
layout 131
navigate 95
save 127
specify for particular user 95
stale data 96, 159
users
add/edit 56
user groups 58

V

virtual processor (VIP)
common applications 250
Modbus communications 248
modify global parameters 79
set global parameters 252
setup 75
Vista
customizing diagram window 155
framework 130
generate network diagram 94
navigate 95
plot data 101
query wizard 150
view diagrams online (WebReach) 163
view logged data 100
view real-time data 98
Vista diagram object
action options 142
alarming options 144
annunciation options 144
box options 143
display options 136
edit text options 135
link options 135
link to data source 146
query server options 136
text options 134

W

waveforms
plot 118
Web Reporter
default report definitions 175
display 174
export report 186
generate report 180
inputs 174, 180
navigation 174
print report 185
report administration 187
report subscription 188
save report 185
share report 187
subscription configuration 61, 172
upload reports/report packs 191
WebReach
access WebReach 163
advanced configuration 168
communication errors 167
network diagram 163
RMS waveform plotting 165
stale data 167
troubleshooting 170
view events 166
view global events 166
view historical data 164
WinModem 36

PowerLogic ION Enterprise

User guide

For further assistance please contact us at:

Schneider Electric
Power Monitoring and Control
2195 Keating Cross Road
Saanichton, BC
Canada V8M 2A5
Tel: 1-250-652-7100

295 Tech Park Drive, Suite 100
Lavergne, TN 37086
USA
Tel: 1-615-287-3400

Electropole (38 EQI)
31, rue Pierre Mendès France
F - 38050 Grenoble Cédex 9
Tel : + 33 (0) 4 76 57 60 60

Getting technical support:
Contact your local Schneider Electric sales representative for assistance or go to the www.powerlogic.com website.

ION, ION Enterprise, Modbus, Modicon, Power Measurement, PowerLogic and Schneider Electric are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Schneider Electric in France, the USA and other countries. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

Electrical equipment should be installed, operated, serviced, and maintained only by qualified personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Schneider Electric for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.

70002-0298-00
© 2009 Schneider Electric. All rights reserved.
06/2009